

*History of*  
**SOUTH CAROLINA**

---

*Simms*



Sim

olina

C

Class F269

5c

Excha

Book S58

During

V  
V  
A

Copyright N<sup>o</sup> 1918

5c  
5c  
5c

**COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT**

*Exch*

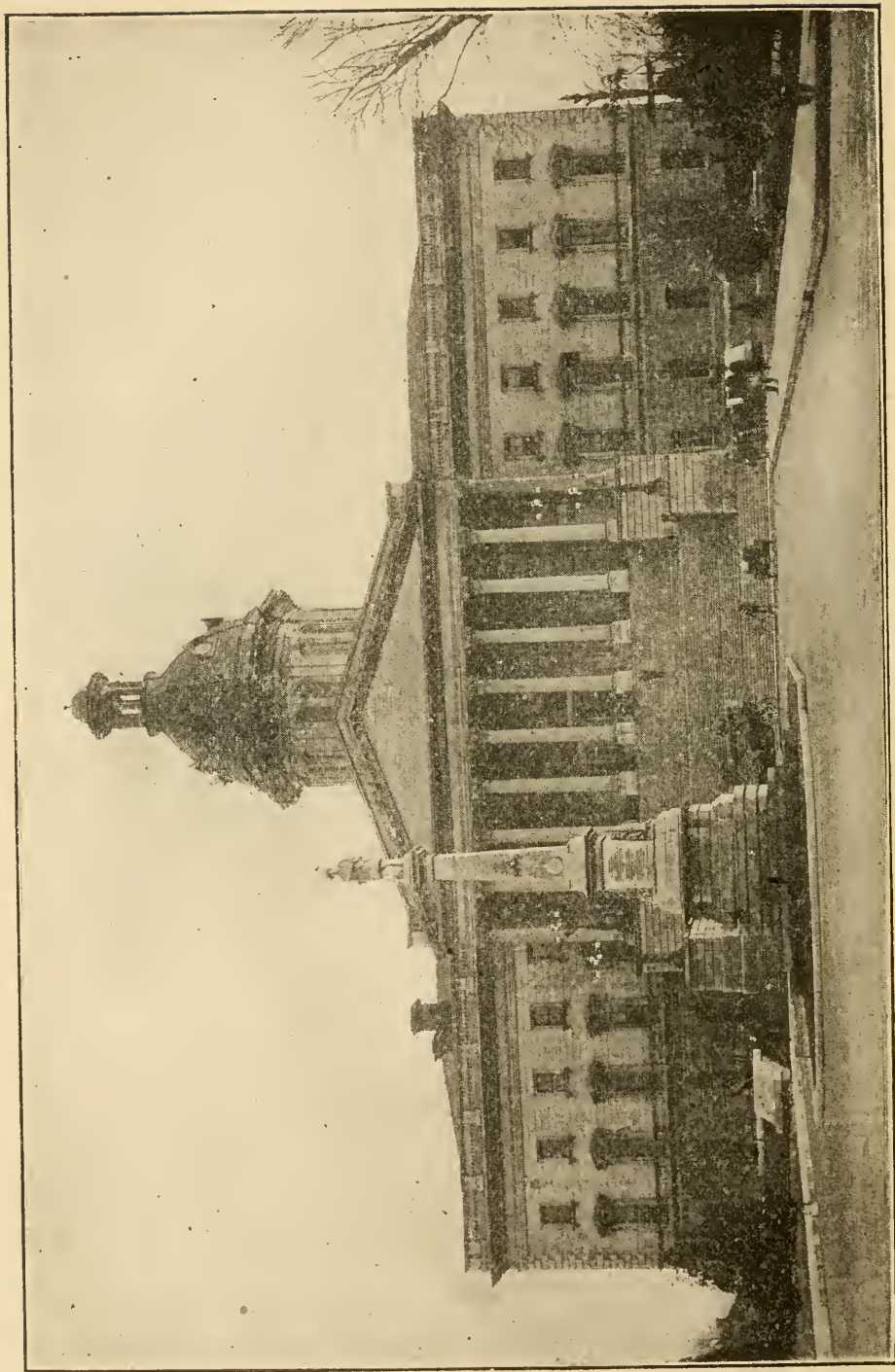
1918







# THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA



STATE HOUSE AT COLUMBIA

# THE HISTORY OF SOUTH CAROLINA

BY  
WILLIAM GILMORE SIMMS

REVISED BY  
MARY C. SIMMS OLIPHANT  
(WITH SUPPLEMENTARY CHAPTERS)

MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

ADAPTED FOR USE IN THE SCHOOLS

1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10



COLUMBIA, S. C.  
THE STATE COMPANY, PRINTERS  
1918

F269  
S58  
1918

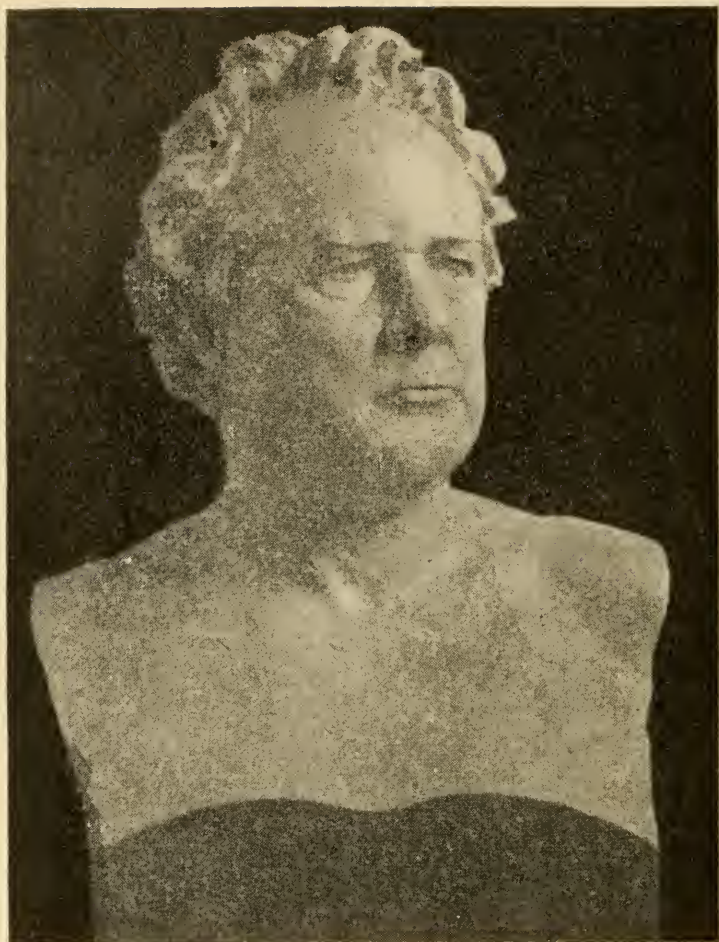
COPYRIGHT, 1917  
BY  
MARY C. SIMMS OLIPHANT



DEC 28 1918

©CL.A508756

**TO MY FATHER**  
**1843-1912**



William Lumsden



## PREFACE

William Gilmore Simms, the editor's grandfather, wrote in 1840 for his children and for use in the schools "The History of South Carolina from Its First European Discovery to Its Erection into a Republic." In 1860 the third edition of the history was published in which Simms brought the narrative down to that date. The editor offers in the present volume a revised and enlarged edition of the third edition of the work, intended primarily for use as a textbook in the schools of South Carolina.

Since William Gilmore Simms gave his history of the State to the public, the researches of historians have brought to light many new facts about South Carolina's stirring past. In consequence, the editor has been obliged to make numerous changes in many places in the original text to bring it into accord with views accepted comparatively recently but of unquestioned soundness. Other changes have seemed desirable and have been made in the interests of clarity of style and simplicity of diction. The editor trusts that these deviations from the text have not marred its graphic force nor sacrificed its virile interest.

On the other hand, in this edition of Simms' "History of South Carolina," the editor has tried to preserve faithfully certain aims set forth by the author in his preface to his second edition. Chief among these the author said was to present such a history, "suited to the unprepared understanding and the ardent temper of the young" . . . "as will enable them to satisfy their own curiosity and the inquiries of others." It is as lamentable now as when Simms observed it in 1860 "to perceive the degree of ignorance in which our people live with regard to those events which made their ancestors famous, and which have given them

equal station and security." It is the editor's earnest hope that this book may in some degree remove this reproach by imparting a knowledge of South Carolina's history to the rising generation of its citizens.

The narrative of the State's development has been divided into seven periods, the first six of which culminate in momentous changes in South Carolina and the last of which gives important events in our own day. Chapters have been revised and written to cover specific events and stages in South Carolina's history without arbitrary effort to make them uniform in length. Therefore, the editor suggests that teachers who use this book will find that the numbering of the sections in the chapters will aid in assigning lessons equal in length to the pupils' ability.

The editor has spared no pains to make the text accurate. In this connection, she acknowledges her debt to practically all of the major historians who have written of South Carolina, as well as to a small host of pamphleteers and writers of historical articles. The editor lays no claim to settling in this little volume points in dispute about South Carolina's history. She has studied both sides of questions on which divisions of opinion exist and made the text conform to the view best supported by the weight of evidence.

In conclusion, the editor wishes to render her thanks gratefully to Mr. A. S. Salley, Jr., Secretary of the Historical Commission of South Carolina, for his invaluable aid in the preparation of the first three periods of this edition of Simms' "History of South Carolina," which he graciously read while they were yet in manuscript. Likewise, the editor's thanks are rendered to Professor A. G. Holmes, assistant professor of history at Clemson College; to Dr. Yates Snowden, professor of history at the University of South Carolina; to Mrs. Robert S. Bailey, teacher in the Barnwell Graded School; and to Mr. William Watts Ball of Columbia—each



of whom read parts of the book in manuscript. Their suggestions and criticisms were most valuable. The editor is also grateful to Mrs. Thomas J. Fickling of Columbia, formerly professor of history at the College for Women, for her aid and constructive criticism, and to Dr. D. D. Wallace, head of the department of history and economics at Wofford College, for advice about the format of the book. The editor owes to many other friends a debt of gratitude for their encouragement and assistance in the preparation of this modest volume.

*Columbia, S. C., May, 1917.*

M. C. S. O.



# CONTENTS

## I. SOUTH CAROLINA UNDER THE PROPRIETORS

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Page</i>
I. Discovery and Settlement of Carolina.....	15
II. English Colony on the Ashley.....	24
III. Expansion of the Province.....	33
IV. Quarrels Between Proprietors and People.....	38
V. Wars in the Province.....	48
VI. Overthrow of the Proprietors.....	60

## II. SOUTH CAROLINA UNDER THE ROYAL GOVERNMENT.

VII. Expansion Under the Rule of the King.....	67
VIII. Slavery and Colonization.....	75
IX. The Cherokee War.....	85
X. Provincial Life.....	92
XI. Royal Restrictions of Provincial Trade.....	102
XII. Breach Widens Between King and Carolina	109
XIII. The Province Becomes a State.....	118

## III. SOUTH CAROLINA DURING THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

XIV. Opening of Hostilities with England.....	129
XV. The Fall of Charles Town.....	139
XVI. Rising of the Partisans.....	150
XVII. The Partisans Turn the Tide.....	166
XVIII. The Partisans Capture British Posts.....	175
XIX. The Partisans Drive British Coastward.....	185
XX. Victory for the Partisans.....	193

#### IV. SOUTH CAROLINA AS A STATE IN THE UNITED STATES.

<i>Chapter</i>	<i>Page</i>
XXI. South Carolina Enters Union of States.....	203
XXII. Economic Development.....	212
XXIII. South Carolina in the War of 1812.....	220
XXIV. States' Rights Movement.....	229
XXV. The Palmetto Regiment in the Mexican War	243
XXVI. War Between the Sections Inevitable.....	252

#### V. SOUTH CAROLINA AS A STATE IN THE CONFEDERACY.

XXVII. Outbreak of Hostilities.....	265
XXVIII. Progress of the War—1862-63.....	275
XXIX. Progress of the War—1863-64.....	286
XXX. Downfall of the Confederacy.....	298

#### VI. SOUTH CAROLINA DURING RECONSTRUCTION.

XXXI. South Carolina Under Radical Government..	309
XXXII. Overthrow of Radical Government.....	320

#### VII. SOUTH CAROLINA IN RECENT YEARS.

XXXIII. Retrenchment and Reform.....	335
XXXIV. Rebuilding the State.....	343
XXXV. Development: Political and Agricultural....	347
XXXVI. Development: Social and Industrial.....	359
XXXVII. The World War.....	366

**I.**  
**SOUTH CAROLINA UNDER THE**  
**PROPRIETORS**



## CHAPTER I.

### DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT OF CAROLINA.

**1. Carolina.** The territory which came to be known as Carolina stretched along the Atlantic coast of North America as far north as Virginia and as far south as the Gulf of Mexico. Westward the territory reached for hundreds of miles into the forested interior of the continent.

**2. The Indians.** The first European visitors to this section of the North American continent found it peopled by the Indians, a race of red men, "well formed in limb; having great and black eyes, with a cheerful and steady look; not strong of body, yet sharp-witted; nimble, and exceeding great runners." The Indians lived in log houses, covered with matting so as to be proof against rain and cold. They had boats, some of which were twenty feet in length, hollowed by flint and fire from mighty trees.

**3. European Claims to Carolina.** Three great nations of Europe contended on grounds of nearly equal justice for the right to the possession of this section of North America.

England laid claim, according to one group of writers, by virtue of a grant from the Pope. Another group of writers hold that her right to possess it was founded upon a supposed discovery of its shores in 1497-1498 by John Cabot and his son Sebastian—Italian sea captains, who were in the service of England.

Spain claimed this territory on the ground that Juan Ponce de Leon, under its commission, discovered, in 1512, a neighboring territory to which he gave the name of Florida. This name was made to cover a region of measureless extent. De Leon was beaten by the Indians and driven from the country. In 1520, Vasquez de Ayllon made the shores of this territory at the mouth of a river to which he gave the

name of the Jordan. Here he was received, at first, by the natives with great timidity, the natural result of their wonder at the strange ships and strangely clothed visitors. Their fear soon subsided, and kindness took its place. They treated the strangers with good nature and hospitality. The country they called Chiquola. The Spaniards easily persuaded the Indians to visit the ships. Watching the moment when the decks were most crowded, the treacherous Spaniards suddenly sailed away, carrying nearly 200 of the red men to sell as slaves.

The claim of France rested upon the discoveries of John Verazzano, who reached the coast of what is now North Carolina, in 1524. Here he found the country to his liking. The forests were noble. The yellow sands seemed to him to promise gold, which was the chief thing he came to find. Verazzano describes the natives as "gentle and courteous in their manners; of sweet and pleasant manners and comely to behold." They treated the European strangers with kindness. One of the crew of Verazzano, attempting to swim ashore, was so much injured in passing through the surf, that he lay senseless on the beach. The Indians ran to his relief, rescued him from the waves, rubbed his limbs, gave him food, and returned him in safety to the vessel.

**4. The Influence of These Nations on Carolina.** Thus it appears that England, France and Spain based their claims to this territory, later to be called Carolina, on the ground that certain of their subjects had visited its shores. In studying the early history of Carolina we must keep in mind the fact that to a great extent the history of these three European nations made Carolina's history. England, France, and Spain in time succeeded in establishing colonies in various parts of America, and whenever war occurred in Europe among these nations it was also fought in America by their colonies.



The settlements in Carolina were made either by Europeans in search of adventure or money, or by persons who had been troubled in their native lands because of their religion. These settlers did not cut themselves off entirely from their mother countries, so, naturally they felt every disturbance in their European homes. We will find Carolina often torn, too, by quarrels among her citizens, due to difference in their nationalities, as well as by disturbances in Europe. Thus, early Carolina history will in many phases be but a reflection, colored by its own local problems, of the history of the nations across the Atlantic Ocean.

**5. Jean Ribault's Expedition.** In 1561, Coligny, admiral of France, obtained from Charles IX, the French king, permission to plant a colony in Florida, one of the several names by which Carolina was then known. This was to be a place of refuge for the Huguenots, or French Protestants, who were being persecuted on account of their religion. The expedition was entrusted to Jean Ribault, an experienced sea captain, a brave soldier, and a good Protestant. With two ships Ribault set sail from France with a party of Huguenots, and one day in the spring of the year anchored in a magnificent bay. To this bay, "because of the fairness and largeness thereof," Ribault gave the name of Port Royal.

The delighted Huguenots landed upon the northern shore of the entrance to Port Royal. The mighty oaks, and the "infinite store of cedars" drew their eyes, and as they passed through the woods they saw "turkey cocks flying in the forests, partridges, gray and red, little different from ours but chiefly in bigness." Being delighted with the place, "they set themselves to fishing with nets, and caught such a number of fish that it was wonderful."

**6. The Meeting with the Indians.** Having refreshed themselves with the fruits, the flesh, and the fish of Port Royal,



Map of "French Florida," Which Territory Included Carolina. Drawn by Geographer to Charles IX of France and Based on Voyages of Ribault and Other French Sea Captains.

the Huguenots went up the river about fifteen leagues, in their small boats, until they saw a group of red men, who, at their approach, "fled into the woods, leaving behind them a young lucerne (wild-cat), which they were turning upon a spit; for which cause the place was called Cape Lucerne."

Going farther, Ribault came to an arm of the river, which he entered. "A little while after, they began to espy divers other Indians, both men and women, half hidden within the woods"; these "were dismayed at first, but soon after emboldened, for the captain caused stores of merchandise to be showed them openly, whereby they knew that we meant nothing but well unto them, and then they made a sign that we should come on land, which we would not refuse." The savages saluted Ribault after their simple fashion, and brought skins, baskets made of palm leaves, and a few pearls, which they freely gave to the strangers. They even began to build shelter to protect their visitors from the sun; but the Huguenots would not stay.

**7. Fort Charles.** On an island, subsequently owned by Colonel Alexander Parris, and now known as Parris Island, and where there are still the remains of a fortress which corresponds, in form and size, with the structure raised by the French, Ribault built a fortress, "in length but a sixteen fathom, and thirteen in breadth, with flanks according to the proportion thereof," in which he placed provisions and powder, and to which he gave the name of Arx Carolina (Fort Charles), in honor of the reigning monarch of France. At the persuasion of Ribault, twenty-six of his men consented to garrison this fort, and when he had provided, as he supposed, sufficiently for their safety, he set sail for France, leaving Captain Albert in command of the post.

**8. The Life at Fort Charles.** The twenty-six Frenchmen left at Fort Charles were lazy and thriftless, and instead of



planting enough grain to supply their needs, they depended on their Indian neighbors for food. Audusta, a powerful chief, was in particular their friend. He invited them to his country and furnished them with provisions, but before long his supply failed and he was able to help the Frenchmen no longer. Then they turned to King Couexis and his brother, Ovade, who generously gave them a supply of corn, meal, and beans. King Ovade received the French



Port Royal Harbor Into Which Ribault Sailed.

“in a house hanged about with tapestry feathers of divers colors.” He commanded their boats to be filled with provisions, and presented them with six coverlets like the one which decorated his own couch. The French had scarcely returned from their visit to King Ovade when their barracks were destroyed by fire and all their provisions lost. The kindly Indians hurried to help them rebuild the fort and to supply them again with food.

**9. Troubles Among the French.** The Indians, thriftless themselves, had planted barely enough corn to last the season. Their generosity to the white men had exhausted their stock and they were forced to live upon roots until harvest time. While the colonists were thus hard pressed for food, other troubles arose. These began about a common soldier, a drummer who was hung without trial, by the orders of Captain Albert. This commander seems to have been of a stern and overbearing temper. His treatment of his men was usually harsh and irritating. While they were yet angry at the hanging of the drummer, Captain Albert aroused them still further by his treatment of another soldier, a favorite of the men, named La Chere. This man he banished to an island about nine miles from the fort and left him there to starve.

The result was mutiny. The colonists conspired together, rose suddenly and killed Captain Albert. This done, they brought the banished La Chere back from the island, where they found him almost dead for want of food.

**10. Desertion of Fort Charles.** By this time the French were in dire need of food. Hearing nothing from France, hope sickened within them, and they yearned to return to their homes. They resolved, finally, to leave the wilderness in which, however hospitable had been the natives, they had found little besides suffering and privation. Though without workmen of any kind, they commenced building a small boat. The boat rose rapidly under their hands. The great pines around them yielded resin and moss for calking. The Indians brought them cord for tackle; and their own shirts and bed linen furnished the sails. The little ship was soon ready for sea, and, a fair wind offering, the adventurers departed.

**11. Sailing for France.** For a time fortune smiled upon their voyage. They had sailed, without mishap, a full third

of their way, when they were becalmed. For three weeks they made but twenty-five leagues; and, to add to their trials, their supplies failed them. Twelve grains of corn daily were made to answer the cravings of their hunger; and even this amount lasted but a little while. Their shoes and leather jackets became their only remaining food, and



The Rough Boat Built by Ribault's Men for Their Homeward Voyage from Port Royal.—*From a Descriptive Drawing.*

death appeared among them, relieving their misery by thinning their numbers.

**12. The Sacrifice of La Chere.** To add to their troubles, the boat began to leak. The men had to work day and night bailing the water out. During all this suffering the man named La Chere, who had been exiled by Captain Albert



and rescued by the soldiers, encouraged them by saying that in three days they would make land. At the end of this time there was no sight of land, and there remained no food. They were in despair. Then La Chere proposed that one of their number should die to save the rest. The lot fell to himself; and without a struggle or show of reluctance, he bared his neck to the stroke. His starving comrades greedily drank of his blood and distributed his flesh among them. La Chere's sacrifice enabled them to live until they were picked up by an English vessel.

**13. Fort Caroline.** The little garrison which Ribault had left at Fort Charles had not been heard of in France, so three ships, under the command of Rene Laudonniere were dispatched to its aid. Laudonniere reached America in 1564, and finding that Fort Charles had been abandoned, he proceeded to Florida, where he built a fort on what is now the St. John's River. This fort he called Fort Caroline, and the surrounding country was known as La Caroline.

This colony met a disastrous end. Spaniards, under a fierce captain named Menendez, had made a settlement, which later they called St. Augustine. The Spaniards claimed this territory under the general name of Florida, and regarded the French as trespassers. Menendez was a fanatical Roman Catholic, and as Fort Caroline was a Protestant settlement, he fell upon it and massacred its entire population. The story goes that beneath the trees on whose branches Menendez hung the French he placed an inscription, "We do this not to Frenchmen, but to heretics." This massacre was avenged by the Chevalier de Gourges, who sailed from France with an expedition raised at his own expense for this purpose. He hung the Spaniards, to the same trees, and changed the inscription to read, "I do this not to Spaniards, or Catholics; but to traitors, robbers and murderers."

Thus ended the first attempts to plant a colony in Carolina.

## CHAPTER II.

### ENGLISH COLONY ON THE ASHLEY.

**14. The English Lords Proprietors.** With the disaster at Fort Caroline, the French gave up their claim to Carolina, and it was more than a hundred years after their abandonment before another settlement was made in this section. In the meantime, England had successfully planted colonies in Virginia and Massachusetts, and Dutch settlements had been made in New Amsterdam and elsewhere. Claiming that the explorations of Sebastian Cabot, in 1497-1498, gave Great Britain sway over that portion of America lying between the 31st and 36th degrees of north latitude, Charles I, on October 30, 1629, granted it to his attorney general, Sir Robert Heath, for the founding of a province to be known as Carolina. Sir Robert did nothing toward settling his province, and, on March 20, 1663, Charles II, by letters-patent, granted the territory between the same parallels of latitude, from the Atlantic to the Pacific, to eight of his political supporters—the Earl of Clarendon; the Duke of Albemarle; William, Earl of Craven; Anthony, Lord Ashley; John, Lord Berkeley; Sir George Carteret; Sir William Berkeley; and Sir John Colleton.

These noblemen formed a company known as the Lords Proprietors. The settling of Carolina was to be a simple business scheme with them, from which they hoped to make money. The grant which they obtained comprised a territory out of which subsequently the several provinces (now States) of South Carolina, North Carolina, and Georgia were formed. Of this immense region King Charles made them absolute lords and proprietors, reserving to himself simply sovereignty of the country.

**15. The Fundamental Constitutions.** Before sending a



colony out to settle in Carolina, the Lords Proprietors in London framed a system of laws for its government. John Locke, a great English philosopher, who was employed as secretary by Lord Ashley, prepared a code of laws called the Fundamental Constitutions, the most striking feature of which was the provision for the creation of a nobility in Carolina. Besides the proprietors, the nobility was to consist of Landgraves and Cassiques, the title of Cassique being derived from that of the Indian chiefs. A stated amount of land was to go with each title. Each Landgrave was to have four baronies and each Cassique two baronies. A barony consisted of 12,000 acres. The titles were to be conferred upon such inhabitants of the province as the Proprietors saw fit.

Among other things, the Constitutions provided for the establishment of eight Supreme Courts, and for the calling of a Parliament. No laws were to be passed without the consent of the colonists, and entire freedom of religion was to be allowed.

**16. A Colony Sent Out by the Lords Proprietors.** In 1665 an attempt was made by the Proprietors to plant a colony at Cape Fear, in what is now North Carolina. This colony was sent out from Barbadoes, with Sir John Yeamans as its governor, and proved wholly unsuccessful. In 1669, they made a second attempt. They fitted out a fleet of three ships for a settlement at Port Royal, and gave the command of it to Joseph West. He was directed to go first to Barbadoes to Sir John Yeamans, and to take further orders from him. At Barbadoes Sir John joined the expedition, went with it as far as Bermuda, and there leaving it, appointed William Sayle as governor. Arriving at Port Royal, Sayle was met by an Indian Chief, the Cassique of Kiawah, who told him that Port Royal was harried by the fierce Westo Indians, whom he described as cannibals, and persuaded

the expedition to go to his country to settle. The colony landed in April on the western bank of the Kiawah, which



Charles II, the English King, Who Granted the Territory Named "Carolina" to Eight of His Political Supporters in 1663.

river we know as the Ashley, and called the place Charles Town in compliment to the King.

**17. The Life of the Colonists.** The colonists, with the aid of negro slaves which they brought with them, immediately began to erect fortifications, to lay out streets and town lots, and to build houses. The country proved good beyond their expectations. Deer, turkeys, rabbits, turtles, and fish were abundant. However, new settlers in all coun-

tries are subjected to terrible hardships. They had to cut down forests, build houses, and clear the ground for raising crops. In this low, flat country the sultry climate proved a great burden. The Europeans also suffered from the fatigue of unaccustomed labors under a hot sun.

**18. Foes to the Colonists.** The Kiawahs, whose chief had welcomed the English to the country, were always friendly to them, but they were not strong enough to protect them from other warlike tribes who were daily becoming more jealous of their white neighbors. Carolina is said to have been occupied at this time by twenty-eight Indian tribes. United, they could bring 50,000 warriors into the field. To

this infant colony in Carolina, these savages suggested constant alarm and danger. The Westo and Stono tribes, as they were nearest, were the most troublesome. Their attacks were doubly dangerous and annoying, as it was found difficult to provide against them. The superiority of the musket over the bow and arrow, in a dense and primitive forest, was very small. Concealed in the thicket, the Indian launched his shaft before the European had dreamed of the presence of an enemy.

Thus surrounded by these unfriendly Indian neighbors, the Carolinians were compelled to stand always ready to fight. While one party slept, an equal number watched. He who felled a tree in the forest, was protected by another, who stood ready with his musket in the shade; and so persevering were the Indians, that the settler dared not lay aside his weapon, even while gathering oysters on the shores of the creeks. From the woods the settlers were almost wholly excluded by reason of the red skins who infested them; and, but for the fish from the rivers, the colonists would have perished of famine. Their scanty crops were raised, not only by the sweat of their brows, but at the peril of their lives; and, when raised, were exposed to the plundering of the Indians. A single night frequently lost to the farmer the dearly bought products of a year of toil.

**19. The Temporary Laws.** It was soon found that the Fundamental Constitutions were too elaborate in their provisions for so simple a colony as that which came to Carolina. For a settlement of not more than 200 inhabitants, the Constitutions had proposed to maintain a grand council, parliament, courts and many high offices. Realizing the impossibility of these requirements, the Lords Proprietors sent out a set of Temporary Laws to meet the demands of the colony.



**20. The Death of the First Governor.** Governor Sayle had shared in all the hardships of his fellow adventurers, and had encouraged them in every way in his power. From hard work and exposure, his health failed and he died. His commission had given him the right to choose a successor,

and he had nominated Joseph West governor of the colony until the Proprietors should send some one to succeed him.



Anthony, Lord Ashley, the Lord Proprietor for Whom the Indian River, Kiawah, Was Re-named.

**21. The Kussoes.**

The chief trouble during Governor West's brief term arose with the tribe of Kussoe Indians who were influenced by the Spaniards against the English. It must be remembered that the Spaniards in Florida claimed all of Carolina under the name of Florida, and resenting the settlement of the Eng-

lish on the Ashley, were continually urging the Indians to fight them. The English colonists were in constant state of defense, and at last the Kussoes became so insolent and bold that Governor West declared war against them. Invading the Indian country, the colonists took many of them captive and subdued the tribe.

**22. Removal to Oyster Point.** The Proprietors had not commissioned Joseph West as governor, and in 1672 they sent out a commission to Sir John Yeamans who had re-

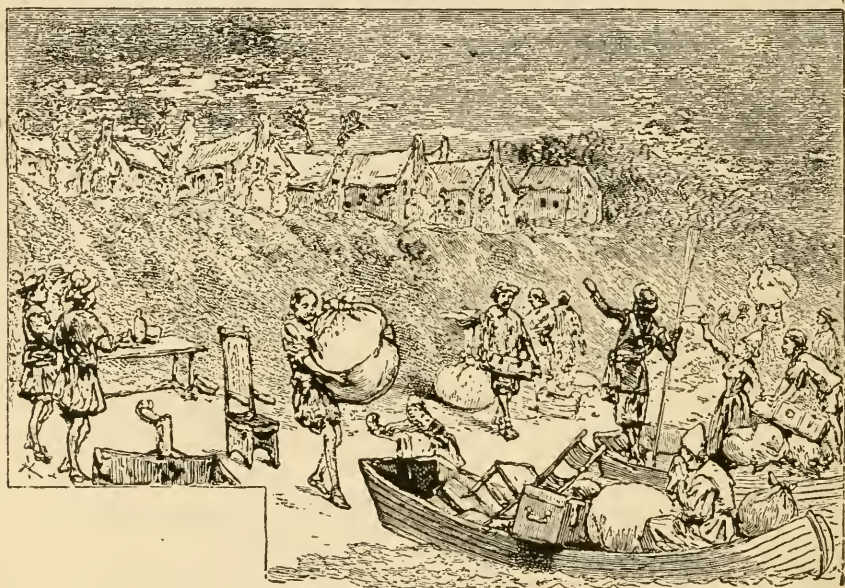
cently come to Carolina from Barbadoes. The first act of his administration was to lay off, at the command of the Proprietors, a new town on the Ashley to which the seat of government was to be transferred. The site then occupied was too low and unhealthy, and could not be approached by large vessels at low tide. A neck of land called Oyster Point was chosen, at the confluence of two broad and deep rivers, the Kiawah and the Etiwan, which in compliment to Lord Ashley had been called after him, the Ashley and Cooper. The new site on Oyster Point they also named Charles Town.

**23. Needs of the Colonists.** The miserly Proprietors quarreled with Governor Yeamans because of a debt of several thousand pounds which he incurred at the beginning of his administration. He placed the colony in a state of security against invasion, mounted cannon, armed the inhabitants, and enrolled six companies of soldiers. The Proprietors wished to be repaid for the money they had put into the settling of the colony. The needy colonists, who were struggling for a living, were asked to repay the Proprietors by sending them cargoes of timber. Unless the colonists did so, they threatened that they would send them no more ammunition and provisions. The colonists were largely dependent on England for provisions because of the difficulty of clearing enough land to plant, and often their little fields were robbed of their crops by the Indians.

**24. The O'Sullivan Riot.** Failing to receive supplies from England, the colonists were in despair. When a people are discontented there will not long be wanting some unruly spirit to take advantage of their sufferings; and Florence O'Sullivan, to whom the island at the entrance of the harbor, which now bears his name, had then been entrusted for defense, deserted his post and joined the malcontents in Charles Town. A riot followed which threatened the ruin

of the colony. The prudence and firmness of Governor Yeamans, however, prevented violence. O'Sullivan was arrested, the people quieted, and vessels were dispatched to Barbadoes and Virginia for supplies. A timely ship from England, bringing provisions and new settlers, revived the spirits of the people and cheered them to renewed efforts.

**25. The Spaniards.** While these events were in progress, a new enemy started up, to add to the many dangers and



Moving from Old Charles Town to Charles Town.

annoyances of the Carolinians. The Spaniards, at St. Augustine, had long looked upon the settlement of the English at Ashley and Cooper rivers as an encroachment upon the dominions of their monarch. They had watched the colony of the English with a keen disquiet.

Having obtained a knowledge of the miserable condition of the Carolinians, and the discontent among them, the Spaniards advanced with a well-armed party to destroy the settlement. They reached St. Helena, where they were



joined by Brian Fitzpatrick, a worthless traitor, who had deserted the colony in the moment of its distress, and who now told the invaders of its weaknesses. The Spaniards continued to advance under his guidance; but, in the meantime, the English vessel, bringing supplies of men and powder, fortunately arrived in Ashley River.

This re-enforcement enabled Governor Yeamans to assume the offensive. He dispatched with his ship 50 volunteers, under Colonel John Godfrey, to meet the Spaniards; but they did not await his attack. Instead, they fled at his approach, deserting St. Helena Island, of which they had obtained full possession, and retreated, with all haste, to St. Augustine. This attempt of the Spaniards, though conducted with little spirit and marked by no battle, was the beginning of a long succession of conflicts between the two colonies.

**26. Fundamental Constitutions Proclaimed.** In 1674, under the administration of Sir John Yeamans, the Fundamental Constitutions were formally proclaimed to the people. Hitherto, the colony had been living under a temporary government, but now the population having, it was thought, sufficiently increased and expanded, the more elaborate system was put in force. The people were assembled and the Constitutions declared to them. Under their authority the province was divided into four counties, called Berkeley, Colleton, Craven and Carteret.

**27. Retirement of Sir John.** This duty done, Sir John left the province and went to Barbadoes, where he soon died. He was about to be removed by the Proprietors, although he was ignorant of this. Rumors were afloat that the scarcity of provisions had been due to his exporting of grain to Barbadoes while the colonists were in dire need. It seems, though, that there was no starvation in the colony. There was difficulty at first in finding the grains best suited

to the soil, but there was abundance of fish, oysters, and game, and the land produced Indian corn and peas so easily that the settlers were secured from any danger of starvation. The hardships lay rather with the thefts of the Indians, and more especially with the niggardliness of the Proprietors who would not provide the colonists with sufficient supplies to tide them over the first few years of adjustment to the new conditions.



## CHAPTER III.

### EXPANSION OF THE PROVINCE.

**28. A Wise Governor.** Governor Yeamans was succeeded by Joseph West, whose previous term had been only under nomination by Governor Sayle. West was now regularly made governor by the Proprietors, and his administration, which lasted eight years, was marked by prudence and good government which went far towards putting the province on firm foundations.

**29. Disturbing Elements.** From the beginning there were disturbing elements in Carolina. In the first place, there was always trouble on account of the Fundamental Constitutions which the Proprietors regarded or disregarded at their pleasure. In the province there were two parties—one headed by the governor and council, who were themselves sworn to obey the Lords Proprietors, and the other made up of people who, realizing the impracticability of the Constitutions, wished to follow them only in so far as they met their needs. These parties were continually in conflict with each other.

Another disturbing element lay in the religious differences of the colonists. It might have been expected that colonies composed of men with common interests to promote and the same enemies to fear would have been particularly zealous to maintain harmony among themselves. Unhappily, such was not the case. Charles Town was established as a Church of England settlement, but there were numbers of dissenters from the Church of England among the colonists. The dissenters were a sober people, who frowned down amusements. They denounced the cavaliers, who were of the Church of England, for their frivolities and freedom of deportment. The cavaliers in their turn ridiculed the dis-

senters with reckless and unsparing wit and tried to expose them to public derision and contempt. The council was composed mainly of cavaliers, who were strict adherents to the Constitutions. The dissenters were continually protesting against its injustice and neglect of their interests.



George Monck, Duke of Albemarle, One of the Lords Proprietors.

Briefly, all the struggles of the old world were renewed in Carolina.

### 30. Acquiring Land.

For centuries the Indians had lived in Carolina and looked upon the country as their own. The Proprietors regarded themselves, because of the grant from King Charles II, as sole owners of this territory, and forbade the colonists to purchase land from the Indians, expecting them to take it and drive the Indians off, if necessary. Later, Lord Ashley, the Earl of Shaftsbury,

who was the oldest Lord Proprietor, proposed to revoke this order and to provide for the purchase of land from the Indians. This proposal was not a fair one because it was intended to give the Indians trinkets and ribbons—things of no value—in return for their land.

**31. Arrival of Immigrant Parties.** Immigrants began to arrive in small parties from Barbadoes, other West Indian settlements, and England about this time. The Proprietors

encouraged immigration by offering various inducements, especially to colonists who would come in sufficient numbers to form a town. A number of French Protestants were granted tracts of land, the Proprietors expecting from them the introduction of the manufacture of silk, and the culture of the olive and the grape.

**32. The Growth of Charles Town.** At this time there were about a hundred houses in Charles Town and more were building. The land near the town was sold for some twenty shillings an acre. There were 16 vessels which came to trade with the people of the town who numbered between 1,000 and 1,200 souls. This population was being steadily increased by the arrival of new immigrants. The first church built in Charles Town was called the English Church. It stood on the present site of St. Michael's church and was built about 1682.

**33. Natural Advantages.** The health of the colonists was good. The soil was fertile, producing with little cultivation rice, wheat, rye, oats and peas. Crops of Indian corn were harvested twice a year. From the corn the colonists made bread, beer, and strong brandy. There was a great increase in the number of cattle, hogs and sheep which had been brought to Carolina. Because of its mildness, the climate suited the negroes, who were now quite numerous, as many settlers from the West Indies ever since the beginning had brought their slaves with them. The hunting was good, and all of the big planters employed Indian hunters to supply their tables with venison and game. It was easy to make a living in Carolina.

**34. Trading with the Indians.** The first fortunes in Carolina were made by trading with the Indians. From the beginning, the Proprietors tried to carry on this trade through private agents so that they, instead of the colonists, would profit. However, they were unable to prevent the people



of Carolina from engaging in this profitable business. The colonists exported to England skins and furs for which they had given the Indians guns, trinkets and beads. In addition, they sent pitch, resin, and food stuffs to Barbadoes and Jamaica, obtaining from these islands in return for their products sugar, rum, molasses and ginger. The Indian



William, First Earl of Craven, One of  
the Lords Proprietors.

trade in these early days produced far more wealth than planting.

**35. Indian and Negro Slaves.** The Proprietors had given the colonists permission to sell captive Indians into slavery. The settlers, finding this an easy and profitable way to rid themselves of their red-skin enemies, sent many of them to the West Indies. In return for the Indian slaves, they bought negro slaves from the Indies to work in Carolina.

The colonists were untroubled by any thought of wrongdoing in this matter as by the rules of war then in force captives were looked upon as the absolute property of the captors, to do with as they chose.

**36. Parliament Meets—Governor West Removed.** A Parliament was held in Carolina at the close of 1682, when laws were enacted for the establishment of a militia system; for building roads through the forests; for repressing drunken-

ness and swearing; and for otherwise promoting morality among the people.

Although the Lords Proprietors themselves had given the settlers permission to engage in the Indian slave trade, they used the existence of this practice as an excuse for removing Governor West, who had served the colonists well for eight years. Joseph Morton was appointed governor in place of West by the Proprietors.



## CHAPTER IV.

### QUARRELS BETWEEN PROPRIETORS AND PEOPLE.

**37. Election Troubles.** The Proprietors were continually sending out modifications and new sets of the Constitutions and requiring the Carolinians to subscribe to them, although the original Constitutions had expressly stated that no laws could be enacted without the consent of the people. The first act of Governor Morton's administration displeased the Proprietors. According to their orders the province had been divided into the three counties of Berkeley, Craven and Colleton. Berkeley comprised the territory around Charles Town; Craven, lay to the north of it; and Colleton to the South, contained Port Royal, and the islands in its vicinity. Of the twenty members of whom the parliament was to be composed the Proprietors desired that ten should be elected by each of the counties of Berkeley and Colleton. The population of Craven was still deemed too small to merit any representation. The election being held at Charles Town, the inhabitants of Berkeley excluded Colleton and returned the whole twenty members. This enraged the Proprietors, and they ordered the Parliament dissolved.

**38. Acts of the Parliament.** Several important acts had been passed before Governor Morton had been compelled by the Proprietors to dissolve the Parliament. Among these was one which suspended all prosecutions for foreign debts, this meaning that the people would not be held liable for debts which they had previously contracted in England. The Proprietors were more incensed by this than by the manner of electing the Parliament, declaring that the enactment obstructed the course of justice and was contrary to the King's honor.

**39. Coming of the Scots to Port Royal.** Governor Morton's administration was marked by the coming of a colony of Scots under Lord Cardross, a Scotch nobleman who left his country because freedom in religion was denied him. The Scotch colony secured grants from the Proprietors for large tracts of land around Port Royal because they had heard glowing reports of "the largeness and fairness" of its harbor. Unhappily, in selecting Port Royal, they disregarded the fact that the Spaniards would be near and hostile neighbors, ready to pounce upon any new settlers of the Carolina territory.

**40. Removal of Governor Morton.** Governor Morton's administration became more and more difficult because the interests of the struggling colonists were in direct conflict with those of the Proprietors from whom he received his instructions. Then, too, in the province itself the two parties, one composed of adherents of the Proprietors, and the other, of defenders of the liberties of the people, were continually at odds. Governor Morton was between two fires. After two years, the Proprietors, disappointed because he had not carried out their instructions to their liking, removed him from office. Sir Richard Kyrle of Ireland was appointed his successor. The Proprietors believed that Sir Richard, who had never been in the province and who had no interests there, would follow their instructions to the letter without being influenced by the demands of the people.

**41. Kyrle's Death—Appointment of West.** Sir Richard died soon after his arrival in the province and the Council elected Joseph West to succeed him, the choice being confirmed by the Proprietors in March, 1685. West had held office twice and had done more for the province by his faithfulness, prudence, and wisdom than any other of the Proprietary governors. Yet he had been set aside twice by

the Proprietors for no reason but to make place for men of more prominence and wealth. He now entered upon his third administration as governor. This term lasted less than a year. The differences between the Proprietors and the people were rapidly becoming so great that it was hard for any governor to hold office long. From the beginning of his term West had trouble in attempting to adjust these differences. The Proprietors first demanded of him that he make the people pay to them rents in money and not in provisions. Money was very scarce in the province and the people protested against this demand. Along with this order for the payment of rents in money, the Proprietors sent out a new set of instructions which repealed all previous laws. Governor West, harrassed by the strife among the people, resigned his office and retired from the province in the summer of 1685. The Council chose Robert Quarry to succeed him. Quarry served but two or three months, as the Proprietors appointed Joseph Norton governor in place of West.

**42. Pirates.** When the English settled Carolina, Charles II encouraged piracy because the lawless men who followed this life could be of service to him in plundering the Spanish colony in Florida. They proved such useful allies that King Charles regularly commissioned them as privateers and actually conferred knighthood upon Henry Morgan, one of the band of pirates. The hostility of the Spaniards seemed to justify this course. With the King openly favoring the pirates the colonists frequently availed themselves of the assistance which these sea robbers could render them against their mortal foes, the Spaniards.

**43. The Pirates Become Too Bold.** The harboring of pirates by some of the colonists would probably have continued indefinitely had the buccaneers confined themselves to plundering Spanish vessels, but in their greed they at-

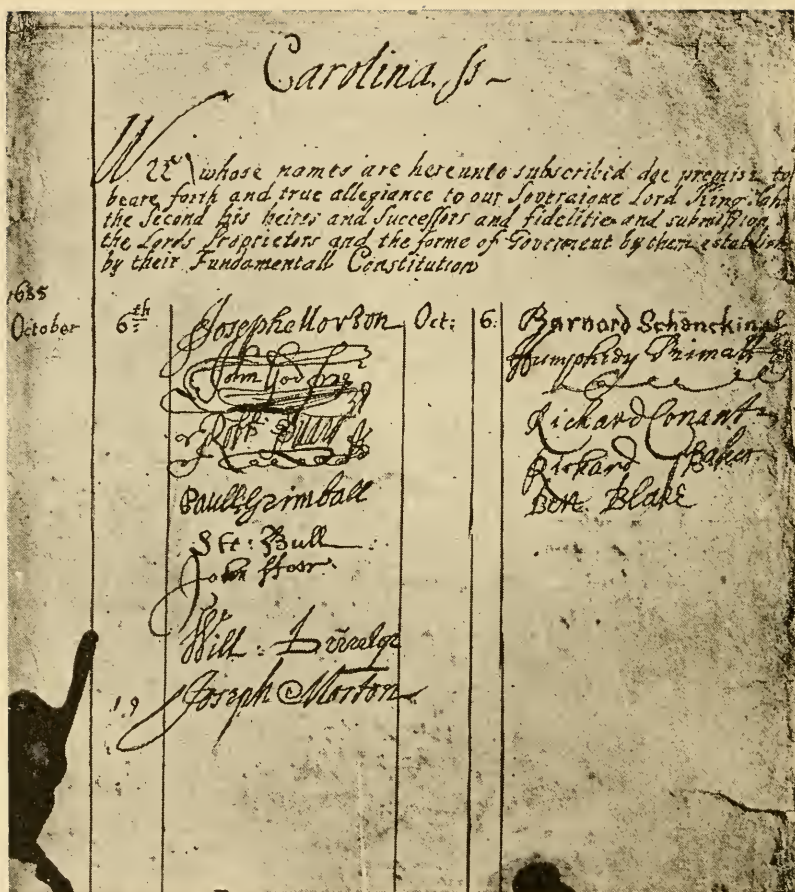
tacked merchant ships of all nations, inflicting so much damage that the English board of trade protested to the Proprietors that the colonists were encouraging the pirates in their plundering.

**44. Troubles in Provincial Parliament.** Charles II had died in the meantime and James I, his brother, succeeded to the throne of England. In Carolina, after Joseph Morton, who had held the office of Governor once before, was appointed by the Proprietors to succeed West, a Parliament was called and the members requested to subscribe to the new set of instructions which the Proprietors had sent out. Almost two-thirds of the members refused. These were asked to resign and the session was continued by the members who complied with the requirements of the Proprietors. The discharged members went home in anger, their protests against the injustice of their treatment sowing seeds of discontent.

**45. The King's Revenue Officer.** King James sent out at this time George Muschamp as first Collector of the King's Revenue. His instructions demanded the enforcement of laws prohibiting the importation and exportation of goods save in English ships or ships owned by English colonies, and manned largely by English sailors. These laws prohibited the selling of certain stated commodities, among which were cotton, indigo and sugar (later rice was added) to any but English ports or to the ports of English colonies. The Carolinians, however, paid no attention to the Collector and carried on their business as they had before his arrival. The Collector complained of this independent spirit of the Carolinians, prophesying that in time it would bring about rebellion.

**46. The Spaniards Destroy the Scotch Colony.** In 1686 the Spaniards from St. Augustine, descending suddenly upon Port Royal, massacred a great number of the Scotch colonists





Oath of Allegiance Taken by Officials of South Carolina in 1685, Promising "Faith and True Allegiance" to King James II and "Fidelitie and Submission" to the Lords Proprietors.—From a Photograph.



whom Lord Cardross had settled there in 1683 and took others captive. A few escaped to Charles Town. The Spaniards, laying waste as they went, also landed on Edisto Island, plundered and burned the plantations of Governor Morton, Secretary Grimball, and others, but hastily retired before men could be mustered to fight them.

**47. The Expedition Against the Spaniards.** The spirit of the colonists, whom continual fighting had made a warlike people, was at once aroused by this attack on the Scotch. They resolved to carry their arms into the enemy's country. An expedition was formed and preparations were begun for an invasion of Florida. In the midst of these preparations, in November, 1686, Governor Morton died. About this time James Colleton arrived from Barbadoes with a commission as governor of the province. The new governor stopped the expedition, threatening to hang any one who defied him. The Proprietors wrote voicing their approval of Colleton's action. The colonists were indignant, feeling that in not avenging the attack of the Spaniards they were pursuing a dishonorable course.

**48. Proprietors Concerned About Charter.** The real reason for the stoppage of the expedition was that the King of England was at that time friendly with Spain, and the Proprietors were fearful of incurring his displeasure if they permitted the Carolinians to fight the Spanish settlers in Florida. The Proprietors were aware of the fact that King James was considering revoking their charter, and they were careful not to anger him in any way.

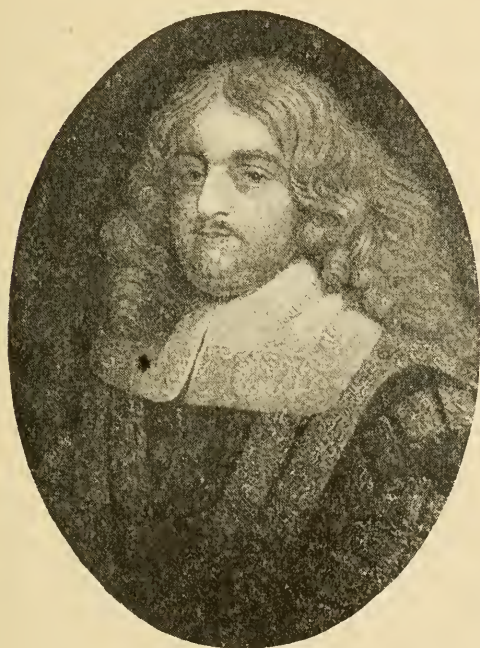
There was further trouble between the King and the Proprietors because of the refusal of the colonists to obey the instructions of the King's revenue officer. Thus, the Proprietors were beginning to feel that their hold on the province was becoming very uncertain indeed.

**49. Resentment Against Governor Colleton.** The people bore Colleton ill will because of his treatment of them in stopping the expedition into Florida. This resentment increased as he endeavored to carry out to the letter the instructions of the Proprietors. He held the people rigidly to the payment of rents and displayed an arrogance which was highly irritating to them. The spirit of the people became more turbulent with every new show of authority. There was some rioting. Governor Colleton attempted to call out the militia. The people were so enraged at this that the province was almost in a state of rebellion.

**50. Seth Sothell.** At this time, Seth Sothell, who had bought the share of the Earl of Clarendon, arrived in the province and took the reins of government on the ground that he was a Proprietor. It was claimed that in the governor's chair he enriched himself at the colonists' expense. He was recalled to England for investigation of these charges and Colonel Philip Ludwell, of Virginia, was appointed to succeed him as governor.

**51. Trouble Over the French Huguenots.** Trouble now arose because of the French Huguenots who had settled in Craven County. Ludwell was instructed by the Proprietors to admit the Huguenots to the same political privileges with the English colonists. Of the twenty members of the Commons House, six were Frenchmen returned from Craven County. The English protested against this, feeling it to be unjust for these new settlers of alien birth and different language to have so large a part in making laws for the province. The dispute which arose out of this was productive of ill-feeling toward Ludwell. Both the Proprietors and the people were displeased with his administration. Ludwell appeared to yield to the wishes of the people. Consequently, the Proprietors deprived him of office, appointing Thomas Smith governor in his place.

**52. Medley of Settlers.** It was natural that there should be conflicts among the people as South Carolina was settled by many different classes of immigrants. The Church of England immigrants, as we have seen, were the first to form a permanent settlement, colonizing the country around the banks of the Ashley and the Cooper. Having been the first to come, they naturally took the leadership into their hands. English dissenters settled on the Edisto and elsewhere.



The Earl of Clarendon, the Lord Proprietor for Whom Clarendon County is named.

French Huguenots settled in Charles Town, at the Orange Quarter, in Berkeley County, and on the Santee in Craven County. It is not surprising that there should have been difficulty in governing such a mixed body of people as that which made up South Carolina—people of different nationality, speech, temperament, and religion. An act was passed consolidating Berkeley and Craven Counties in electing representatives to the Com-

mons House. This gave the English control of the elections and thereafter very few Frenchmen were sent to the Assembly.

**53. Province in a State of Discontent.** The province was in a state of discontent. Smith found it impossible to relieve the radical differences between the Proprietors and the people. In utter despair, at last, Smith wrote to the

Proprietors, praying to be released from a charge which brought him nothing but annoyance, and in which he could hope to do no good. He declared, in his letter, that he despaired ever to unite the people; and that, weary of the disturbances among them, he, and many others, were resolved upon leaving the province, unless they sent out one of their own number, with full power to redress grievances and amend the laws. Nothing else, it was his conviction, would bring the settlers to a condition of tranquility. At the end of 1694, Governor Smith died and the Council chose Joseph Blake to succeed him.

**54. A Lull in the Discontent.** The Proprietors adopted the suggestions of Smith and sent John Archdale, a Quaker, and one of their number, to Carolina to assume the Government. Archdale's administration seems to have been a wise one. It was not distinguished by any incident of importance; it was peaceable, and received, as it merited, at its termination, the thanks of the province, for the first time given to any of its governors. He improved the militia system, opened friendly communications with the Indians and Spaniards, discouraged the inhumanities of the former so effectually, as to induce them to stop the inhuman practice of plundering shipwrecked vessels and murdering their crews. He combined the firmness necessary to govern with the Quaker gentleness and simple benevolence.

Archdale retired toward the end of 1696, amid a general flood of congratulations and good will, but his administration was merely a lull in the growing discontent. The real differences between the Proprietors and the people had not by any means been settled.

**55. Complaints of the King's Revenue Officer.** Joseph Blake was next commissioned governor. Edward Randolph, the King's collector of customs in the province at this time, urged His Majesty to overthrow the Proprietary charter and



take the government of the province upon the crown. He complained that the South Carolinians ignored him completely, trading where they pleased, without regard to His Majesty's instructions. He also complained of the way in which the people were harboring pirates, stating that they were the favored guests of the planters and that it was almost impossible, on account of this friendliness, to convict a man of piracy. Many convictions were secured, however.

During this period South Carolina was overtaken by many disasters. A dreadful hurricane threatened the destruction of Charles Town. The swollen sea was driven in upon the shores with such force that several persons were drowned. Much property and many lives were swept away. This disaster was followed by a fire, which nearly reduced the town to ashes. Smallpox succeeded the fire and spread death and desolation through the province.

Scarcely had the Carolinians begun to breathe from these evils, when a pestilence (so called, but no doubt yellow fever) broke out among them, and swept off, among numerous other victims, nearly all of the public officers and one-half of the Assembly. Few families escaped a share in these calamities. The people were in despair, and many among the survivors began to think of abandoning a province which Providence seemed to have marked for every sort of calamity.

In September, 1700, Governor Blake died.



## CHAPTER V.

### WARS IN THE PROVINCE.

**56. Expeditions Against Spaniards.** Blake was succeeded as governor by James Moore, a man of considerable talent and military enterprise. He prepared to punish the Spaniards at St. Augustine for the frequent attacks which they had made upon South Carolina. A rupture of the friendly relations between England and Spain made this possible now, although a few years before when these countries were at peace the Proprietors had stopped a similar undertaking. Moore quieted the domestic quarrels of the Carolinians by the suggestion of this favorite expedition. His eloquence was successful, as well in the Assembly as among the people. His proposition was adopted by a great majority, in spite of the earnest opposition of a prudent few, who could not be deceived by the brilliant picture of success which had been held up to the imagination of all. Two thousand pounds sterling were voted for the service; 600 provincial militia raised, out of a population of about 7,000 white persons; an equal number of Indians were armed; schooners and merchant vessels were taken as transports to carry the forces; and, in the month of September, 1702, Governor Moore sailed from Port Royal upon an enterprise conceived in rashness and conducted without caution.

**57. Defeat of the Carolinians.** The Spaniards were permitted to know all that was going on, and were preparing for defence with quite as much industry as the Carolinians were preparing for attack. They had laid up four months' provisions in the castle at St. Augustine, which was also strongly fortified, and had sent timely dispatches to the West India islands for the aid of the Spanish fleet.

Colonel Robert Daniell, a South Carolina officer of great

spirit, with a party of militia and Indians, made a descent upon the town of St. Augustine by land, while Governor Moore came by sea. Daniell's arrangements were made with equal secrecy and promptitude. He attacked, took the town, and plundered it, before the fleet of Moore appeared in sight.

Upon Moore's arrival, the castle was surrounded, but without success. The cannon of the Carolinians made no impression, and Colonel Daniell was despatched in a sloop to Jamaica for supplies of bombs and larger cannon.

But, during his absence, a Spanish vessel appeared at the mouth of the harbor, and Governor Moore was compelled to raise the siege of the castle. Abandoning his ships, he retreated by land to Charles Town. Daniell, on his return, to his great surprise, found the siege raised, and narrowly escaped being made captive by the enemy. This fruitless expedition entailed a debt of six thousand pounds upon the province.

**58. Expedition Against Appalachians.** Moore had never been commissioned governor by the Proprietors, so he lost the office when Sir Nathaniel Johnson arrived with a commission as governor of Carolina. By this time the terms North Carolina and South Carolina had come into general use for the two governments of the province of Carolina. Moore, the former governor, restless to redeem the unhappy result of the Florida expedition, was resolved upon more fighting and Governor Johnson allowed him to invade the Appalachian territory.

The Appalachian Indians had been stimulated by the Spaniards to hostilities against the province. Determined to chastise them, Moore raised a force of South Carolinians and Indians, and marched into the very heart of their settlements. Wherever he went, he carried fire and sword, and struck terror into the souls of the savages. The Appalachian

towns, between the Savannah and Altamaha, were laid in ashes, the country was ravaged, the people made captives, 800 of them slain, and the most hidden settlements devastated. Appalachia became afterwards the province of Georgia.

**59. The French Attack Charles Town.** A war, at this time waging between the great European powers of England,



Colonel William Rhett, Who Captured  
Pirates.

France, and Spain, necessarily involved the fortunes and interests of their separate colonies. A plan was set on foot by the joint forces of France and Spain to invade Charles Town, and the Carolinians were summoned to arms. Fortifications were pushed forward with rapidity, ammunition procured, provisions stored; and the settlements at Ashley River were soon put in a tolerable state of defence. Fort Johnson was erected on James Island to meet this emer-

gency; redoubts raised at White Point, now the site of a charming promenade—the Battery—and, having completed their preparations, the Carolinians awaited the appearance of the foe.

The invasion took place in August, 1706, while yellow fever was raging in Charles Town and when its principal inhabitants had left the place for their plantations. A French fleet, under Monsieur Le Feboure, appeared before

the harbor. Five separate smokes, which were raised by a corps of observation, at Sullivan's Island, announced the number of vessels in the invading armament.

The inhabitants of the town were at once put under arms, by William Rhett, the colonel in command. Dispatches were sent to the captains of militia, in the country, and Governor Johnson, arriving from his plantation, proclaimed martial law at the head of the militia.

His presence, as a military man of known capacity and valor, inspired the citizens with confidence. He summoned the friendly Indians, stationed his troops judiciously, gave his commands with calmness and resolve, and, as the troops came in from the country, assigned them their places and duties. The neighboring troops came to the defence of the city in numbers and willingly. At this period, the whole population of the province was estimated at about 15,000 souls; of whom 8,000 were negro and Indian slaves. The militia mustered about 1,500 men. Some cannon were put on board such ships as happened to be in the harbor, and the sailors were thus employed in their own way to assist in the defence of the city. The command of the little fleet was given to Colonel William Rhett.

**60. The French Demand Surrender.** Meanwhile, the enemy having passed the bar, came to anchor a little above Sullivan's Island, and sent up a flag to the governor, demanding his surrender. The messenger was received blindfold, and conducted into the forts, where Johnson had drawn up his forces so as to display them to the best advantage.

By transferring his troops from fort to fort by short routes, Johnson led the Frenchman to quadruple in his estimate the real numbers of the defenders. Having demanded the surrender of the town and country to the arms of France, the messenger concluded by declaring that his orders allowed him but a single hour in which to receive an answer.



Johnson answered promptly that he did not need a minute.

"I hold this country for the queen of England," said he. "I am ready to die, but not to deliver up my trust. My men will shed the last drop of their blood to defend the country from the invader."

This answer, with the report of the messenger, seemed to lessen the spirit of Le Feboure. His fleet remained stationary; and instead of attacking the city, he contented himself with making small incursions on the neighboring islands.

Meanwhile, Colonel Rhett, having got his little fleet in readiness, weighed anchor and moved down the river to where the enemy lay. But the French did not await his attack. They escaped by swifter sailing, and put to sea without an exchange of shots.

**61. Trouble Between Gibbes and Broughton.** Governor Johnson was succeeded in 1710 by Governor Edward Tynte, who died shortly after his arrival in the province.

At his death, a controversy arose in the Council about the succession, which almost produced civil war. One party declared for Robert Gibbes, the other for Thomas Broughton.

Broughton drew together an armed force at his plantation with which he marched upon the town. There he encountered a similar array under the command of Gibbes, who manned the walls with the militia, and closed the gates against him. Aided by some of the inhabitants, who let down the drawbridge, Broughton forced a passage and entered the city. After blows were exchanged, and wounds given, the party of Broughton prevailed, and marched toward the watch-house in Broad Street. There two companies of militia were posted. The prudence of some of the leaders interposed to prevent the bloody consequences of an issue; and, after vainly endeavoring to make himself heard in the clamor of drum and trumpet, Broughton led his men off to another quarter.



Broughton was persuaded to withdraw his party, and it was agreed between himself and Gibbes that their claims to the office of governor should be left to the Proprietors for arbitration, Gibbes holding the office until the decision should come.

**62. War with the Tuscaroras.** During the year 1711, several of the Indian nations of North Carolina became un-



Colonel Barnwell Leads His Expedition Against the Tuscaroras.

*From Descriptive Drawing.*

ruly and murdered a number of whites. About this time John Lawson, Surveyor General of North Carolina, who had travelled extensively in Carolina and had published a journal of his travels and explorations, and Baron deGraffenreid, who had brought a colony of Swiss settlers to North Carolina, made a journey among the Indians and were taken

prisoners. Lawson, with whom certain chiefs had quarrelled, was killed, but deGraffenreid was released. The massacres continuing, the government of South Carolina was appealed to for help. Col. John Barnwell, with a force of 33 white men and 495 Indians, was sent to their aid.

**63. Colonel Barnwell's Expedition.** Wild, indeed, was the wilderness at this time through which Barnwell was compelled to march. Unbroken forests, unopened swamps, deep waters, and tangled thickets lay in his path. Without roads, he could employ neither carriages nor horses, and yet the utmost despatch was necessary in order to save the North Carolinians from their bloody enemies. In spite of every difficulty, Barnwell rapidly made his way until he came up with the Tuscaroras. He attacked them with boldness and success, slew 300 men, and made captives of 100.

The Tuscaroras he found to the number of 600 more in one of their towns on the Neuse river. They were sheltered by a wooden breastwork. Having surrounded them, and slain a considerable number, he compelled the rest to sue for peace.

**64. Second Expedition into North Carolina.** A second demand was made upon South Carolina by the northern province, and a second force, under the command of Colonel James Moore, son of the former governor, was despatched to meet the enemy. Moore found the Indians on the Tau river, about fifty miles from its mouth, where they had thrown up entrenchments. They were well provided with small arms, but were soon taught the folly of standing a siege. Moore defeated them, entered their works, and made 800 prisoners. The military strength of the Tuscaroras was annihilated in these conflicts.

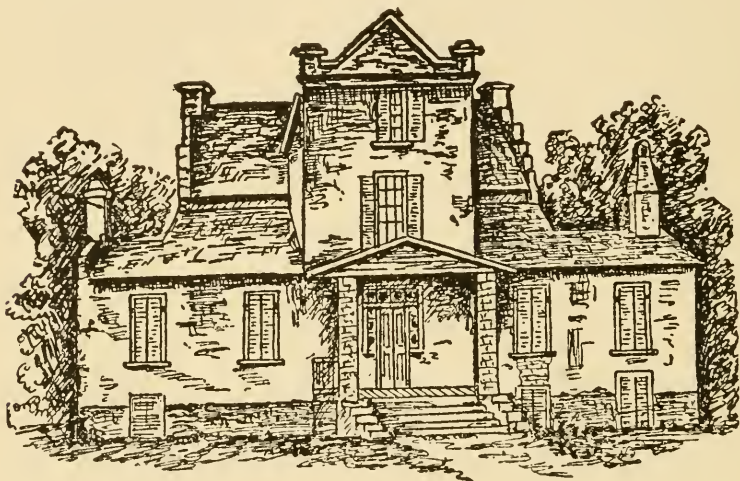
**65. War with the Yemassees.** Word had come from the Proprietors that neither Gibbes nor Broughton should hold the office of governor, but Charles Craven was appointed

to govern Carolina. The chief event of his administration was the Yemassee War, which threatened the very existence of South Carolina. The powerful and numerous Yemassees, possessing a large territory in the neighborhood of Port Royal, had long been friendly to the Carolinians. They had engaged, as allies, in most of the wars against the Spaniards, the French, and Indian tribes. They had done good service and had always proved faithful, but of late there had been friction between the whites and the Yemassees. They resented the encroachments of the settlers upon their land and the abuses of the traders among the Indians. This resentment was encouraged by the Spaniards at St. Augustine, who were angered at this time by the settlement of the English at Beaufort; they incited the Yemassees, who appeared in arms in 1715. With so much secrecy had their proceedings been conducted, that, at their first foray, above ninety persons fell, under their hatchets, on the plantations, near Pocotaligo. Joined with the Creeks and Appalachians, they advanced along the southern frontier, spreading desolation where they came. Dividing into parties, they attacked Port Royal and St. Bartholomew's Parish. The Indians, of the southern division, mustered more than 6,000 warriors; those of the northern were near 1,000 more. Reports came to the colonists that from Florida to Cape Fear, they were banded together, and marching forward from several quarters to the destruction of the settlements at Ashley River.

Craven proved himself equal to the emergency. He proclaimed martial law, laid an embargo on all ships, to prevent either men or provisions from leaving the province, seized upon arms and ammunition wherever they were to be found, and armed a force of trusty negroes, to co-operate with the white militia. With 250 men, at first, and, subsequently, 1,200, he marched to meet the enemy.



The Indians, meanwhile, continued to advance, plundering and murdering, without mercy, as they came. Thomas Barker, a captain of militia, with a small force, encountered them, and was slain, with many of his men. At Goose Creek, a force of 400 savages surrounded a little stockade which contained 70 white men and 40 negroes. These maintained themselves stoutly for a while, but, listening im-



Landgrave Smith's Back River House Built During the Proprietary Period.

prudently to overtures of peace, they admitted the savages within their defenses, and were all butchered.

**66. Craven Appeals to the King.** Governor Craven now appealed to the King for aid, begging ships and men, as he feared that the entire province would be wiped out by the Indians. At the same time the Lords Proprietors, hearing of the desperate condition of the South Carolinians, appealed to the Board of Trade, representing that the annihilation of such a thriving possession would be a great loss to England. The King and the Board of Trade took the position that if the Lords Proprietors were not able to protect their own pro-

vince they had no right to it. Accordingly, no help was sent and the people were left to fight their battles unaided.

**67. Carolinians Conquer the Yemassees.** Unassisted by the King, the Board of Trade, or the Proprietors, the Carolinians conquered the Yemassees. Governor Craven asked assistance of Virginia and North Carolina and sent to the New England colonists for ammunition. The fate of the whole province depended upon him.

Fortunately, the Carolinians had long been accustomed to Indian modes of warfare. The war whoop had become a familiar sound and, going into the thickets and deep swamps, they met the Indian on his own ground.

The Yemassees fought desperately, but were defeated. Driven from their camp, they maintained a running fight. Craven kept his men close at the heels of the enemy until step by step they drove them from the country. The Yemassees found shelter in the walls of St. Augustine. They took refuge in the everglades and it is supposed that they are the ancestors of the Seminole Indians of later years. With the expulsion of the Yemassees South Carolina gained a vast amount of valuable land for new settlements.

**68. Governor Craven Departs.** Having assured the safety of the province against the Yemassees, Governor Craven, after a very successful administration, returned to England, leaving Robert Daniell as deputy governor. The General Assembly met and decided to appeal to the King to take over the province of Carolina from the Proprietors, and let it come under his majesty's direct protection. It described the distress of the province. There was still grave danger from the Indians, although the Yemassees had been expelled. Many of the people had been killed in the war, and, besides this, they were in great debt which they saw no means of paying.



**69. Governor Daniell Captures Pirates.** Along with the Indian outbreak the pirates now commenced preying upon the ships. The Proprietors could offer no assistance. Governor Daniell, however, succeeded in capturing a party of them who were tried and hanged.

**70. Robert Johnson Becomes Governor.** The Proprietors now sent out Robert Johnson as governor of South Carolina. It was inevitable though that his administration should be difficult because he had come to represent the Proprietors whose interests were still in conflict with those of the people. Before much dissension could begin, however, pirates appeared on the coast and all eyes were turned to this new danger.

**71. King James Promises Amnesty to Pirates.** King James had issued a proclamation pardoning all pirates who would give themselves up within the twelve-month. This proclamation he published throughout the American colonies. Some of the buccaneers availed themselves of the pardon, but others continued to pursue their lawless career. Having been expelled from the New England coast, they hied themselves to the coves and bays of the Carolinas, preying upon the rice shipping. Governor Johnson sent to the Proprietors for aid, writing that, "Hardly a ship goes to sea but falls into the hands of pirates." The Proprietors sent no assistance. Once the pirates captured a vessel with some prominent Charles Town citizens aboard. Among these were Samuel Wragg, a member of the Assembly. The pirates were out of provisions and sent into Charles Town messengers demanding that the city supply their needs and threatening to take the lives of the men they had captured if the provisions were not forthcoming. Governor Johnson complied with their demands and the captive citizens were released. Scarcely a day passed but what some ship was taken by these sea robbers.

**72. Pirate Captains.** The worst of the pirates were Steed Bonnet and Richard Worley. Bonnet had been a wealthy and educated gentleman of Barbadoes who became a pirate because of the adventure the life offered. He fitted out a ship with seventy men and began his career as a buccaneer. Richard Worley had been a terror for years to the whole coast.

**73. Rhett Captures Steed Bonnet.** Word came to Charles Town that there were pirates harboring in Cape Fear River. It was determined that Colonel William Rhett should with two ships seek them out and destroy them. As Rhett entered the mouth of Cape Fear River he saw three pirate vessels. A desperate battle ensued which ended in victory for the South Carolinians. Steed Bonnet with a crew of thirty men was captured and carried to Charles Town for trial. At the trial, Bonnet lost his courage and falling on his knees begged for his life. Judge Trott was firm, however, and Bonnet and his men were hanged.

**74. Governor Johnson Captures Worley's Ship.** Soon after Rhett's successful expedition, a pirate vessel dropped anchor off the bar near Charles Town to lie in wait for merchant vessels. Governor Johnson realized that the Proprietors would send no aid and that the province must rid itself of the pirates without help. A little fleet was raised, volunteers called for, and Governor Johnson himself decided to lead the expedition. The fleet sailed down the harbor toward the pirate vessel. The pirates, thinking them merchant ships, called on them to surrender. At this, the fleet opened fire. The pirates tried to escape, but failed in their attempt. After the battle it was found that the captain of the pirates had been killed and that he was the famous Richard Worley. The pirate ship was crowded with women, who, on their way to settle in Carolina, had been captured by these pirates. Twenty-three of the buccaneers were found guilty and put to death.

## CHAPTER VI.

### OVERTHROW OF THE PROPRIETORS.

**75. Carolinians, Proprietors, and Royal Government.** At this time the relations of South Carolina with the Proprietors and the Crown were very vaguely defined. The province had agents in London to look after its interests with the Proprietors and also its agents in London to make its appeals to the Crown. The King had an agent in South Carolina to attend to his trading interests and the Proprietors kept in touch with it through private sources as well as through the governor and his council. While the Carolinians were appealing to the King to oust the Proprietors and let them come under the royal government, the Proprietors were urging in every way in their power that they be allowed to continue in charge of the province. These were the anomalous conditions existing in the year 1719.

**76. The Colonists Govern Themselves.** In the meantime, the South Carolinians were governing themselves as they saw fit. Laws were enacted encouraging white servants to come to the country so that they would have a greater white force to protect them from the Indians. They made provisions for taking care of their poor and laid a tax on the importation of liquors and merchandise to raise money for their needs.

**77. The Proprietors Dissolve the Assembly.** Governor Johnson had been so successful and so courageous in his expedition against the pirates that the people, in their gratitude, made a serious effort to adjust their differences with the Proprietors whom he represented. The Assembly voted to pay back quit rents. It revised the election laws of the province and provided for the paying of the debts incurred in the pirate expeditions.

In the midst of this legislation an arbitrary order came from the Proprietors to repeal all laws that had been passed by the Assembly and to dissolve it. Governor Johnson realized that this would be the wrong time to dissolve the Assembly because in repealing the laws that it had passed, the debts would be left unpaid. He decided to send a messenger to England to lay the case before the Proprietors and ask them not to dissolve the Assembly at this time. The messenger was also to tell them that the people were friendlier than they had ever been in their attitude towards the Proprietors.

**78. Reception of the Messenger.** The messenger was received with scant courtesy by the Proprietors. They wrote Governor Johnson reprimanding him for not obeying their orders and demanding that he dissolve the Assembly at once and call a new one.

**79. Indignation of Colonists.** In dissolving the Assembly so arbitrarily the Proprietors had pulled down the last prop of their government. The people were justly enraged. From continual fighting and hardship they had become so independent and self-reliant that they had no fear of the Proprietors who had governed them selfishly and indifferently for fifty years. Few promises had been kept; their laws had been unreasonably repealed, and no assistance had been given them when they needed it most. The South Carolinians had been left to protect themselves against their enemies, and now they felt that they were strong enough to protect themselves against the unjust exactions of the Proprietors.

**80. Action of the New Assembly.** It was found that the new Assembly was quite as indignant against the Proprietors as the old. It refused to recognize the repeal of the laws passed by the old Assembly and wrote a letter to the Governor in which he was told that the people as a whole had







decided to throw off the oppressive yoke of the Proprietors and come under the protection of the King. Because of the love and affection they bore him they then asked Governor Johnson to continue governing them in the name of the King.

**81. Governor Johnson Refuses to Become a Royal Governor.** In reply to this letter from the Assembly, Governor Johnson informed the members that as he held office under a commission from the Proprietors he could not countenance any movement for their overthrow, and further stated that he would do all in his power to uphold their authority.

**82. People Proclaim Their Own Governor.** The Assembly resolved itself into a convention, renounced allegiance to the Proprietors, declared allegiance to the crown, and proclaimed James Moore governor of South Carolina. They elected their own officers and then sent Colonel John Barnwell to England to tell the King of their action and to beg him to take the province under his protection.

The Lords Proprietors were now taught a lesson that a people removed three thousand miles from the presence of their rulers, can neither be protected by their care nor long enfeebled by their exactions. No longer able to protect them nor enforce obedience from them, the Proprietors sold their shares in Carolina to the King and thereupon South Carolina became a Royal Province.

**83. The Making of South Carolina.** The fifty years during which the Proprietors ruled the English province represent South Carolina in the making. The three ships with barely 200 passengers which had sailed up the Ashley in 1670, depositing their little group of settlers on the edge of a dense forest inhabited by savage Indians, had brought such a courageous and hardy group of colonizers that fifty years later we find South Carolina a prosperous province of nearly 20,000 people.

The Carolinians had fought continually with the Spaniards; had subdued the Indians and driven the pirates from the coast without outside assistance. Furthermore, they had been unbearably hampered in their home affairs by unreasonable interference of the Proprietors. In spite of all these drawbacks, the people had built churches, schools, and libraries in Charles Town, and had made settlements all over the lower part of the province. Out of the 10,000 white inhabitants they had a militia force of over 1,000. They had built ships and had developed a lucrative trade with many parts of the globe. They raised the best rice in the world with their slave labor, and besides rice, which was their chief agricultural export, they exported deer skins, pork, beef, butter, lumber, pitch, tar, turpentine, and a little silk. During these fifty years the Carolinians had built up a system of laws for their government and had become so confident in their strength that by the year 1719 they were able to overthrow the rule of the Proprietors. We may no longer think of them as a struggling, helpless band of pioneers, for with the beginning of the Royal government, they have become a sturdy, independent people, a small nation in itself with separate ties and interests of its own—a valiant little people whom we speak of now not as colonists but as South Carolinians.

**II.**  
**SOUTH CAROLINA UNDER THE**  
**ROYAL GOVERNMENT**



## CHAPTER VII.

### EXPANSION UNDER THE RULE OF THE KING.

**84. Arrival of the First Royal Governor.** In 1721, two years after the people of South Carolina sent John Barnwell to inform King George I that they wished South Carolina to be made a royal province, directly under the Crown's government, General Francis Nicholson was sent out by the Crown as the first royal governor. He was received by the people with extravagant expressions of joy. Political unrest in the province was at an end for a time. All felt that with the royal protection discords would cease and prosperity would ensue. Governor Nicholson called a new Assembly which set itself to passing laws for the well-being of the province. Election laws were revised, the courts reorganized, trade with the Indians and slave trade regulated, agents sent to London to lay certain petitions before the King for the betterment of the province, and a fort built on the Altamaha river for protection from hostile Indians.

**85. The New Government.** The change from the proprietary to the royal government produced its natural effects, in temporarily harmonizing the several parties in the province. These had all substantially arisen from the popular impatience at a foreign control which did not recognize their claims as citizens competent to manage their own affairs.

The government now conferred on South Carolina was modeled on that of the British constitution. It consisted of a governor, a Council, and a Commons House, with the power of making their own laws. The King appointed the governor and delegated to him his constitutional authority. The Council, also appointed by the King, was to advise with the governor, and assist in legislation, while the Commons



House of Assembly like the English House of Commons was elected by the people, and constituted the guardian of their rights, liberties, lives, and property. The governor could convene, prorogue, or dissolve the Assembly, and had a veto on the Acts of the Assembly with other powers. But even after acts had received his assent, they must be transmitted to Great Britain, for the King's approval, though still obligatory as laws until his decision was made known.

This new government was a vast improvement upon the old. The people were satisfied with it. They were not yet prepared for anything more liberal; not yet ready to quarrel with a government which, though still foreign, had proved so satisfactory to their ancestors and brethren in Great Britain.

**86. More Trouble with the Yemassees.** After three years Governor Nicholson retired, and, following royal instructions, Mr. Arthur Middleton, the President of the Council, took his place. During his administration much trouble with the Indians occurred. The fort on the Altamaha was burned and the southern frontier of South Carolina left open to the Yemassees, who, incited by the Spaniards, the ancient enemies of the South Carolinians, were continually making raids into the province from Florida, stealing, scalping, and running off slaves, and then retiring as quickly as they had come. These raids caused so much damage that Governor Middleton sent an expedition of 300 men into Florida. The Carolinians marched down the peninsula, burning and destroying everything in their path. This put an end for a time to the Yemassee depredations.

**87. Danger from the French.** Although the French had never again attempted since the time of Ribault's settlement to establish a colony in South Carolina they had made settlements on the Mississippi River. The French were hostile to the English and, from their settlements in the

west, were constantly inciting the Indians against them. The great Cherokee nation which lived in the upper part of South Carolina was friendly to the English. The French, accordingly, made great efforts to alienate it, as well as many other Indian tribes, from this affection. Governor Middleton sent agents to live among the Cherokees to counteract this French influence and to discover and guard against any schemes and plottings set going by the French. The middle and upper parts of the province were in possession of the redskins who were restless, capricious and jealous, prowling about the white settlements continually, thus making it very necessary that friendly relations with them should be preserved.

**88. Political Turmoil.** Meanwhile all was not at peace in Charles Town. The Council, the Commons House, and the Governor could not agree. Trouble arose over issuing more paper money. Old party feeling, sunk for a time in the rejoicing at the overthrow of the Proprietors, again appeared. Governor Middleton dissolved the Commons House six times, calling new sittings. The mass of the people were behind the Commons House whose will finally prevailed. In this, the first issue joined by the people and the royal government, the will of the former prevailed. The peace which the King's rule had promised at first had not been stronger than the old dissensions of proprietary days.

**89. Disasters in the Province.** The summer of 1728 was marked by disasters in Charles Town, the growing metropolis of South Carolina. The season had been one of extreme drouth, followed by a dreadful hurricane in August, which threatened, for a time, the destruction of the town. The streets were inundated; the inhabitants found refuge in their upper stories. Twenty-three ships were driven ashore, most of which were destroyed. The storm was followed by pestilence. Yellow fever swept off multitudes. All fled who



The Chiefs of the Cherokee Indians Sent to the English Court from South Carolina.



could. The planters sent no supplies to town, and there was imminent danger of death from famine, as well as from the disease. So great was the mortality that it was not always found easy to procure the ordinary assistance for the burial of the dead.

Disasters so terrible and frequent might well have discouraged the hope and enterprise of the city, but the people of those days were possessed of an admirable elasticity of character, and, after each shock, they shook themselves free of its terrors, and resumed their toil with the vigor which had so often saved them from even harder fortune.

**90. The Cherokee Country.** Beyond the settlements which had been made on the Ashley, the Edisto and the Savannah rivers and beyond other little settlements dotted along the Low-Country was a vast territory—a country of mountains and plains, forests and cane-brakes—over which a great nation of Indians, the Cherokees, held sway. The Cherokees were the most powerful of the Indian tribes in the province. In stature, these Indians were only of medium size, but strong and well made. They wore a small tuft of hair on the tops of their heads, and dressed principally in skins of animals. They were eager and untiring in their hunting and ceaselessly roamed the woods in their wars.

**91. The Pioneers of the Back Country.** Into this wild territory which the Low-Country settlers called the “Back Country”, three classes of men had penetrated. During the first years of the settlement on the Ashley, hunters had made their way through the Cherokee lands and while they did not settle they made friends with the Indian tribes and thus opened the way for the settlement of the country now known as the Piedmont section. The most romantic class of pioneers into this country were the Indian traders, shrewd, fearless men who carried their packs through the mountains, established regular routes of trade with the Indians and,



creating a desire among them for the luxuries of civilization, made them dependent upon the English. These traders learned the language of the Indians, intermarried with them and settled among them, some having as many as seventy children and grandchildren. In the wake of the hunters and traders came the cattle drivers. These established cow pens all through the wilderness. First they built a great pen for the stock and then around the pen erected log huts for their own use. These little openings in the forests formed the nuclei for later settlements. An instance of this is the establishment of a cow pen in 1740 six miles from the present site of Winnsboro.

**92. Embassy to the Cherokees.** In 1730 an interesting embassy was taken to the mountain country of the Cherokees. At the head of this expedition was Sir Alexander Cumming.

Three hundred miles from Charles Town, in the chief town of Keowee, they met their principal warriors and head men; were well received, and assisted at the installation of some of their chiefs. Six of the leading men of the Indians, among whom was the young chief Attakullakulla (Little Carpenter), who was ever after to remain friendly to the South Carolinians, accompanied him to England, where they proved to be objects of the most curious interest to both court and people. The King told them that "he took it kindly that the great nation of Cherokees had sent them so far to brighten the chain of friendship between his and theirs."

The treaty which followed this interview was pronounced, by both parties, to be one which should endure while the rivers continued to run, the mountains to stand, and the sun to shine. The Cherokee orator, made a reply to the King in the figurative language of his people.

"We are come hither," he said, "from a mountainous

place, where all is darkness; we are now in a place where all is light. We love the great King; we look upon him as the sun. He is our father; we are his children. Though you are white and we are red, our hearts and hands are joined together. In war we shall be one with you. Your enemies shall be ours; your people and ours shall be one, and shall live together; your white people shall build their houses beside us. We shall not do them hurt, for we are children of one father."

He laid down a bunch of eagle feathers, adding: "These stand for our words; they are the same to us as letters in a book to you. To your beloved men we deliver these feathers to stand for all that we have said."

**93. The Second Royal Governor.** In 1730, Robert Johnson, who, it will be remembered, was the last of the governors under the regime of the Proprietors, was invested with the royal commission for the executive office of the province. He had been faithfully tenacious of the rights and claims of the Proprietors, and this in opposition to the people; but these latter found no fault with him now for his fidelity to his previous employers. He brought with him the Cherokee chiefs who had been carried to England.

**94. Plan for Encouraging Immigration.** Growth in population was still, however, the great object of the British government. The increase, though large and rapid in South Carolina, was yet only relatively so. The settlements were still very small and far between. One plan adopted by the King's advisers for more speedily filling up the vacant places in the province, was to establish townships, each of 20,000 acres, in square plats, along the banks of rivers—the land being divided into shares of fifty acres for each new settler—man, woman or child. Eleven of these townships, on this plan, were thus established by the Assembly in 1730; two on the Altamaha, two on the Savannah, and one on each of

the rivers Peedee, Santee, Edisto, Black, Waccamaw, Congaree, and Wateree.

In consequence of contracts made by the British government with John Peter Purry, an enterprising Swiss gentleman, several settlements were made in the lower part of the province. A colony of Swiss established the town and township of Purrysburgh on the Savannah river in 1732. Another colony of Swiss settled the town and township of Orangeburgh on the Edisto river in 1735. To these were later added a few settlers from the Palatinate of Germany. An Irish colony arrived and was given the township of Williamsburgh on the Black river in 1732. About the same time a party of Welsh from Pennsylvania settled in the country watered by the Peedee river and some Scotch in other parts of the territory. Emigrants from Virginia settled in various parts of the middle country of the province.

**95. Prosperous Times.** Governor Johnson was an excellent and competent officer. He knew the wants of the province, the character of the people, the resources of the country, and the influences which might endanger its peace. His measures were all taken with moderation and wisdom. New privileges were conferred upon the people, calculated to encourage agriculture and enlarge the fields of trade. Old restraints upon rice and shipping were taken off. A discount was allowed upon hemp. The arrears of quit-rents were remitted by the crown. Bills of credit were issued to the amount of £77,000, and seventy pieces of cannon were sent by the King for various forts. An independent company of foot was allowed for the defence of the province and ships of war were stationed along the coast. These benefits and privileges were gratifying to the popular mind and increased the general prosperity.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### SLAVERY AND COLONIZATION.

**96. Slavery and the Fundamental Constitutions.** Before the first English colony had set foot on Carolina soil, John Locke, the philosopher and secretary to Lord Ashley, had incorporated into the Fundamental Constitutions a provision regarding slavery in the new province. "Every free-man of Carolina," he wrote, "shall have absolute power and authority over his negro slaves, of what opinion or religion soever." There was thus no question as to the introduction of slavery into South Carolina. William Sayle, the first governor, had brought slaves with him in coming to the province, and the clearing of the forests and the first planting of the crops, it will be remembered, had been accomplished with the aid of slave labor.

Negro slaves at this time were regarded merely as merchandise. Their status was decided by the courts of England. In the early stages of the Royal Government, an Act was passed granting to his Majesty, King George, a duty on "negroes, liquors, and other goods and merchandise," thus showing that the status of the slave was that of any article of merchandise.

**97. The Church of England and Slavery.** A question arose about converting the negro slaves to Christianity. It was argued by some that baptism of slaves would mean freedom. Much controversy ensued. The Church of England settled the matter in 1727 by declaring that the freedom which baptism gave meant a freedom from the bondage of sin, and did not affect a slave's condition of servitude. This decision gave fresh impetus to the importation of slaves into South Carolina.

**98. English Merchants Encourage Slavery.** The mer-



chants of London, Bristol and Liverpool looked lovingly upon the brisk and flourishing settlement between the Ashley and the Cooper, because it represented a great source of wealth to them. These merchants poured in hundreds of African slaves into the province for cultivating the fields and shipped cargoes of manufactures for supplying the plantations. This vast increase of slaves opened great areas for cultivation. In 1724, in exchange for 439 slaves and £500,000 worth of goods and manufactures, the English merchants received from South Carolina 18,000 barrels of rice, 52,000 barrels of pitch, tar and turpentine, beside great quantities of furs, deerskins, and silk. Between 1724 and 1735 about 17,000 negro slaves were imported. As these arrived, lands in the province greatly increased in value.

**99. Influx of Negroes Causes Anxiety.** As early as 1714, this great increase of negroes in the province in proportion to the whites was remarked with anxiety. With the recollection of a sporadic negro uprising under the Proprietors fresh in their minds, it was considered so unsafe that an Act was passed in the Assembly placing a duty on slave importation. This was intended to act as a prohibition. In 1724, however, in spite of this prohibitory legislation, the slave population numbered 32,000 and the white only 14,000. The negroes were trebling and the whites not doubling. Encouraged by the English merchants, the South Carolinians were running into debt to buy slaves, induced by the prospect of wealth which their labor represented. The slaves were paid for with rice on easy terms.

**100. Negro Uprising of 1739.** It was soon found that the fears regarding the large negro population were not groundless. A negro uprising occurred which filled the whites with consternation. The Spaniards in Florida had for a long time kept emissaries in the province of South Carolina for

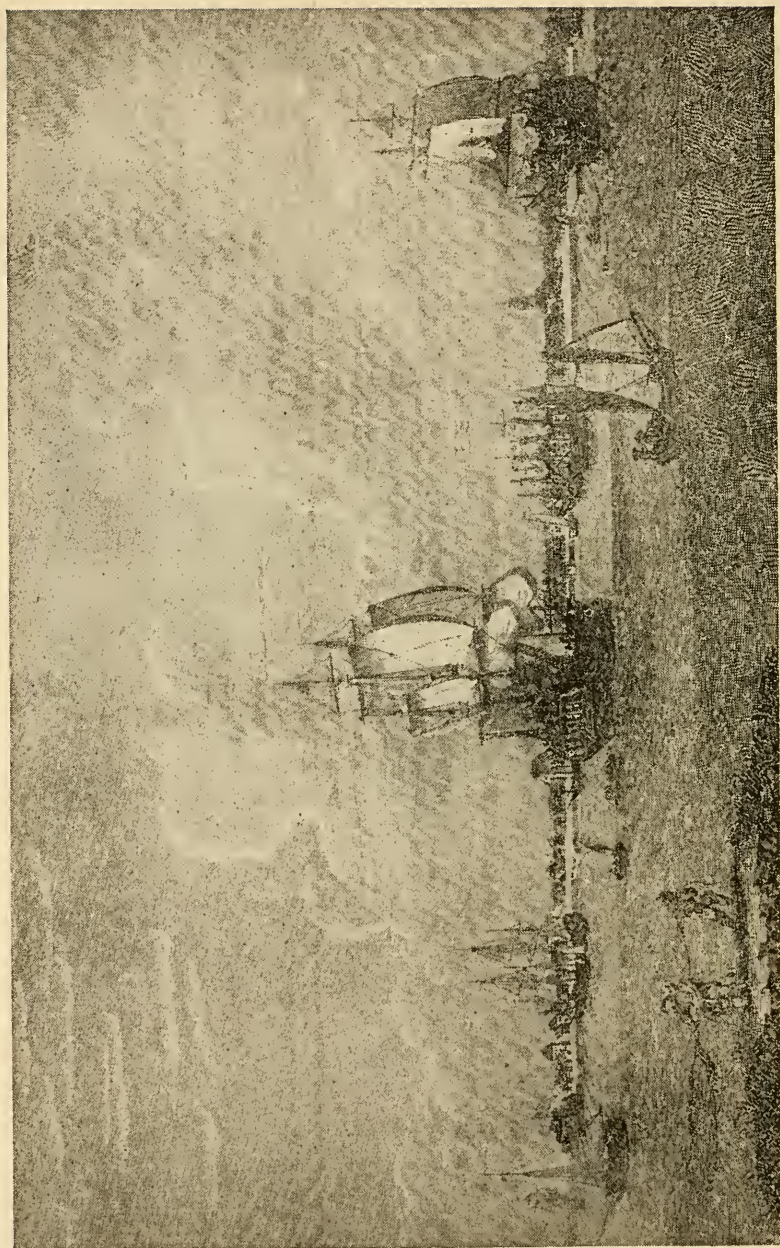
the purpose of inducing negro slaves and Indians to join the ranks of the Spanish army. In 1739, the blacks, instigated by these emissaries, assembled at Stono, and rose in revolt against the whites. Marching in the direction of Florida, they plundered, burned and massacred as they went, and compelled all negroes at the plantations on the way to fall into their ranks.

Governor Bull met the negro squads without being seen himself. He rode into the thickets and by a wide circuit eluded them. He spread alarm as he went and hastened to muster his forces.

The report reached the Willtown Church (Presbyterian), when a numerous congregation was assembled for public worship. It was, fortunately, the custom of the planters—a custom counselled by experience and enforced by law—to carry their arms with them, on all such occasions.

The congregation, accordingly, was easily organized from a company of worshipers into a stout band of rangers and riflemen. Leaving their women and children in the church, the men sallied forth, under the conduct of Captain Bee, and took the direct route to the revolted slaves. They found no difficulty in tracking them to their camp; and came upon the miserable negroes carousing over the liquors which they had found by the way. They had halted in an open field, singing and dancing.

In this condition, to overcome them was an easy task. Dividing his force into two squads, Bee attacked with one, while the other closed the avenues of escape. Cato, the leader of the slaves, and a number more were killed outright; the rest, dispersed in the woods, endeavored to steal back to the plantations which they had deserted. The surviving ringleaders suffered death, while the greater number received mercy.



Charles Town in 1742, Showing the Shipping in the Harbor With the City in the Background.



**101. The Slave Code Revised.** The slave code of South Carolina had been taken from the Barbadian statute and had been several times revised. As we have seen, duties had been laid upon the importation of negro slaves so as to discourage the bringing of them into the province, the fact that they so outnumbered the whites being deemed a menace. After the black uprising of 1739 the slave code was again revised. The new laws were not made more severe on account of the recent revolt. To the contrary, they ameliorated the condition of the slaves. Penalties were imposed upon any person requiring his slaves to work on Sunday; the selling of whiskey to them was forbidden; proper food and clothing were required to be provided for them; and cruelty to them was prohibited. Also, importation of slaves was again discouraged by the placing of duties upon them.

**102. Christianizing the Slaves.** A large number of the negro slaves were Africans just emerging from the savage state. They were uncivilized, full of idolatry and superstition, and it was found exceedingly difficult to Christianize them. The Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in Foreign Parts, in England, made strenuous efforts through their missionaries to spread the Gospel among the slaves, even going so far as to purchase slaves and instruct them that they might in their turn teach others of their race. This society reported that the mistresses of the large plantations in South Carolina as early as 1711 instructed their servants as well as their children in the principles of religion.

**103. Colonizing of Georgia.** It had been long planned to put a barrier between South Carolina and Florida by establishing a colony in what is now the State of Georgia. It will be remembered that this country was peopled by the Apalachian Indians who had been subdued under the Proprietary government by James Moore. James Edward Oglethorpe, a member of the English Parliament, much



interested in reform, at this time petitioned the King for a grant of land in America for the purpose of establishing a refuge for the debtors and criminals of England. The territory which had been occupied by the Apalachians was granted to him. In 1733, Oglethorpe arrived in Charles Town with his little colony. Colonel William Bull accompanied him to Port Royal and from there across the Savannah river where they selected a site for a town which they named Savannah. Slaves were lent by the Carolinians for the building of the town; rice for planting, horses, cattle, sheep, and hogs were donated, and liberal assistance was given the new colony in every way. Governor Johnson himself presented the colony with seven horses.

**104. Death of Governor Johnson.** Upon the death of Governor Johnson, Lieutenant Governor Thomas Broughton succeeded to the administration of the government. During his administration there was growing trouble between the Commons House and the Council. The Commons House declared itself to possess the same prerogatives as the Commons of England. The Council called itself the House of Lords, at which assumption the Commons House jeered and refused to regard it save as an advisory board to the governor. While the Commons House was composed entirely of provincials, the Council had a majority of Englishmen who had bought their places, it was said. This was naturally productive of much ill will and dissatisfaction in the province.

**105. Expedition to St. Augustine.** Upon Broughton's death, William Bull, senior member of the Council, took over the administration of the government. During his term of office hostilities again broke out with the Spaniards in Florida who had begun to harry the new settlement at Savannah. White and Indian troops were raised in South Carolina to join an expedition under General Oglethorpe. These troops were despatched to St Augustine. Through

poor management and ill luck, however, General Oglethorpe failed to capture the town, and the expedition proved wholly fruitless.

**106. Fire in Charles Town.** In 1740, a desolating fire broke out in Charles Town in which fully one-half of the city was destroyed. 300 houses were burnt; several lives were lost, and numerous families utterly ruined. The loss was immense in foreign goods and provincial commodities. The British Parliament voted £20,000 for the relief of the city.

And here, it may be well to say that, thus far, England had showed herself a nobly nursing mother of the province. Under the two first Georges, indeed, the colonists had little of which to complain—much for which to be grateful. Lands were granted at cheap rates; there were no tithes to be paid, and taxation was nominal. England was sufficiently compensated by the colonial trade and produce. British manufactures were obtained at moderate rates. Arms and ammunition, men and money, were provided for the public defense; and, in all respects, no contrast could be more complete, no difference more grateful, to the people themselves, than that between the government of the Proprietary lords, and that of the English crown.

**107. The Third Royal Governor Arrives.** In 1743, James Glen arrived in the province with his royal commission as governor. He had received his commission five years before, but delayed his coming to Carolina. Soon after his arrival, he wrote back to England that he was concerned at finding such an independent spirit prevalent in the province and that he could not but believe that conditions would be happier if the South Carolinians were more dependent on the mother country. Governor Glen had come out with expectations of possessing great authority and was disappointed with the discovery that the people were governing

themselves and that the office of governor did not confer upon its possessor the unlimited power for which he had hoped. The high offices, it was true, were filled by appointees of the crown who came out from England—never by natives of the province—but the Commons House, composed of South Carolinians, either had, or assumed, the power to hold these royal placemen in check.

**108. Cyclone in Charles Town.** It was during Governor Glen's administration that Charles Town, twelve years after the great fire, was nearly destroyed by a hurricane (1752). The city was only saved from being utterly swallowed up in the seas by a providential change of wind. Within ten minutes after the wind had shifted, the water fell five feet. But for this merciful dispensation, every inhabitant of Charles Town might have perished. Many were drowned; many more hurt or endangered; the wharves and fortifications were demolished; the crops growing in the fields were destroyed; vast numbers of cattle perished, and the trees and gardens of the town were ruined. The city emerged from the waters a wreck, which it required a long time of prosperity to repair.

This event, as a matter of course, seriously retarded the growth of the city.

**109. The Geography of South Carolina.** By this time the boundaries of South Carolina had been definitely fixed. One of the most potent influences in the history of South Carolina was her geography and physical characteristics. Within her area of 30,000 square miles the inhabitants could pass from the low, swampy, coastal section through her rising uplands to the mountainous regions of the Southern Appalachian highlands. Lying between the 32 and 35 north latitudes the healthiness of her temperate climate was noted even by the early settlers on the coast. South Carolina is shaped like an isosceles triangle—the equal sides

being on the north, the boundary line of North Carolina, and on the south and west, the Savannah river separating it from Georgia. The apex of the triangle rests upon the summit of the Blue Ridge Mountains at their extreme southern end, while the base, sweeping with a gentle shaped curve from the southwest to northeast, forms a part of the Atlantic shore line of America.

According to its topography, South Carolina has several distinct physical divisions. The coast extends for one hundred and ninety miles and is intersected by numerous inlets, creeks, and marshes, dividing this *coastal region* into numbers of islands. Gradually rising from the fringe of islands comes the *lower pine belt*, about fifty miles wide, with an elevation of about 130 feet. Here we find the fertile rice fields, turpentine farms, cattle ranges, and the picturesque grey moss. In the *upper pine belt*, from twenty to fifty miles wide, with an elevation of from 130 to 250 feet, grows the long leaf pine, mixed with oak and hickory. Next comes the *red hill region* from 300 to 600 feet high, with its soil of red clay and sand and its heavy growth of oak and hickory. Rising to an elevation of 700 feet, comes the remarkable chain of sand hills. This big and healthy *sand hill region* forms the lower border of crystalline rocks. Beyond these, what is known now as the Piedmont Section, with its various clay and sandy soils, reaches a maximum elevation of 800 feet, and extends to the extreme northwest boundary of South Carolina, where it culminates in a small *Alpine region*, more broken and mountainous in character and greater in elevation, ranging from 900 to 3,430 feet.

The belt of crystalline rocks divides South Carolina into what became generally known as the "Low-Country" and the "Up-Country"—a distinction which affected the settlement, development and even the language of the people. From the Up-Country four river systems flow toward the



ocean—the Peedee, the Santee, the Edisto, and the Savannah. The first three are deflected by the crystalline rocks into a sharp southeasterly course, and furnish abundant water power for industries in the Up-Country. Below the sand hills they are usually navigable, grow broader and more leisurely as they reach the ocean. It was at the mouths of these rivers that the first settlements were made.

**110. The Peopling of the Up-Country.** Soon after the middle of the eighteenth century many people from Virginia and other provinces to the northward emigrated to South Carolina. Most of them came from Virginia, but Pennsylvania, Maryland, Jersey, New York, and even New England, contributed settlers. There was also a large influx from across the water. In 1764, a Prussian officer named Stumpel induced several hundred Germans, called Palatines, to leave their country and settle in South Carolina. After getting them as far as England he deserted the colony, leaving them penniless and helpless in a strange country. Public subscriptions were taken up, the King granted them permission to settle in South Carolina, and two vessels were provided for their transportation. Orders were sent to Governor Boone to provide for them. Governor Boone, at odds with the General Assembly, was able to do nothing, but after his departure for England, Lieutenant Governor Bull again assumed the reins of government and provision was immediately made for the Germans. They made a settlement on Hard Labor Creek, in what is now Abbeville County.

An Irish colony settled Hillsborough Township on Stevens Creek in the present Edgefield County and a French Protestant colony settled New Bordeaux, in the present Abbeville County, in 1764. One of the earliest settlements was made on Long Cane Creek in the present Abbeville County by the Calhoun family, from Augusta County, Virginia, in February, 1756.

## CHAPTER IX.

### THE CHEROKEE WAR.

**111. Forts in the Cherokee Country.** The South Carolinians were at peace with the Cherokees after the treaty made with them by Sir Alexander Cumming in 1730. Every effort was made to keep this peace, as the Cherokees, with their several thousand gunmen, constituted a very formidable enemy when aroused. This nation had for several years prior to 1753 been urging Governor Glen to erect a fort near their principal town, Keowee, as a protection to the Indian trade. In October, 1753, Governor Glen made a trip to the Cherokee Nation and purchased a tract of several thousand acres of land on the Keowee river opposite the town, upon which he immediately erected a fort which was called Fort Prince George. Later, another fort, named Fort Loudoun, was built on the Tennessee river, about 500 miles from Charles Town. These strongholds were garrisoned by regular troops.

**112. Cherokees Resentful.** At this time France and England were at war. This meant that the war was fought in America as well as in Europe. The fighting had been carried on for three years in the north, and South Carolina sent troops in 1758 to assist the English. Among these troops were some Indian chiefs from the Cherokee Nation. Attakullakulla, the chief who had accompanied Sir Alexander Cumming to England in 1730, was one of the number. With the fickleness of the Indian, he and nine other warriors deserted the expedition on the way and were making their way homeward when they were arrested, disarmed and brought back. They showed no open resentment at their capture. Another party of Cherokees deserted the expedition some time later and on their return trip through

North Carolina committed murders and reached their towns of Settiquo and Telliquo with twenty-two scalps. A third party of Cherokees, having lost their horses, stole a number of horses from whites as they passed through the back parts of Virginia. These men pursued the Indians and killed ten or twelve of them. This treatment aroused the bitterest resentment among the Cherokees, which resentment, fomented by the French emissaries who were always ready to make capital out of any ill feeling against the English, brought on a massacre of the whites along the border settlements.

**113. Governor Lyttelton's Bad Policy.** Governor Glen was succeeded in 1756 by William Henry Lyttelton, a man of very little tact and judgment, who became the means of bringing South Carolina into a terrible war with the powerful Cherokees. Upon hearing of the massacres by the Indians, Governor Lyttelton demanded that the murderers should be delivered up to be put to death. The commander of Fort Loudoun called for the surrender of the chiefs of Settiquo and Telliquo, and the commander at Fort Prince George intercepted ammunition which was on its way to the Cherokees. The old men of the Cherokees, among whom was Attakullakulla opposed war, but the young men grasped the tomahawk, "the warriors spoke much together concerning Telliquo and Settiquo, and hostile speeches were sent around."

So many of the Cherokee chiefs were anxious to avoid war that through the Governor of Georgia a "talk" was arranged between them and Governor Lyttelton. About thirty chiefs, among whom was Oconostota, who had also gone to England in 1730, went to Charles Town. The Indian chiefs wished to tell the Governor that it was only the young Indians, the "red sticks", who had committed the murders and who wished for war. Governor Lyttelton, it

seemed, was determined to have war. He refused to hear the chiefs and treated them with great indignity. William Bull and other members of the Council, who were more familiar with Indian affairs than the governor and who understood better the Indian nature, urged Governor Lyttelton to hear the chiefs, but he was obdurate. The chiefs were of course indignant at this treatment.

**113. Governor Lyttelton's Expedition.** In October, 1759, Governor Lyttelton, accompanied by the returning chiefs, whom he promised safe conduct to the Cherokee country, set out upon his expedition against the Cherokees. A rendezvous was appointed at the Congarees, near the present site of Columbia, and here gathered many prominent men of the province. Among these were Christopher Gadsden, William Moultrie and Francis Marion, whom we shall hear of in subsequent chapters. About 1,500 men gathered at the Congarees. After leaving the Congarees the Indian chiefs, though they had been promised safe conduct, were treated as prisoners and carefully guarded. Upon arriving at Fort Prince George, they were imprisoned in a miserable little hut which was not large enough for half their number.

By this time Governor Lyttelton realized that his small, untrained force was not sufficient to begin a war with the Cherokees. He sent a messenger to Attakullakulla to meet him at Fort Prince George, whereupon he informed the old chief that he would carry on the war if the Indian murderers were not given up. Oconostota was released to help Attakullakulla bring in the murderers. Several of the offenders were surrendered, but the chiefs found it impossible to surrender all of them. In December, 1759, a treaty was made signed by Attakullakulla, Oconostota and four others. By this treaty it was agreed that the Indian chiefs who were imprisoned at Fort Prince George should be held until an equal number of Indian murderers should be given up.



Lyttelton returned to Charles Town in January, 1760. His conduct with the Indians was most dishonorable. He had broken his word after promising the chiefs safe conduct. A treaty of peace had been made by which war was averted, but the peace was not for long.

**115. Cherokees on War Path.** Soon after Governor Lyttelton's return to Charles Town fourteen South Carolinians were killed by the Cherokees within a mile of Fort



Grave of Mrs. Catherine Calhoun, Grandmother of John C. Calhoun, at the Site of the Indian Massacre at Long Canes on February 1, 1760.

Prince George. Fort Prince George was next besieged by a large force under Oconostota, who, by the governor's treatment, had become an implacable enemy of the province. The commander of the fort was enticed outside on the pretense of a conference and killed, and the two lieutenants who were with him were wounded. The garrison in retaliation fell upon the Indian hostages and butchered them. This meant war. There were few men of the Cherokee Nation who had not lost a friend or relative by the massacre

of the hostages. They seized the hatchet, singing their songs of war, and, burning for revenge, they rushed down upon the frontiers of the province. Men, women, and children fell victims to their merciless fury. The family of Calhouns, in attempting to escape with a party of friends, were set upon in the Long Canes section and killed. The Indians fell upon them while they were making their camp for the night. In the darkness a few escaped, but most of the party were murdered. Afterwards numbers of children were found wandering in the woods, some fearfully cut and others lying on the ground scalped but still living. Patrick Calhoun, returning to bury the dead, found twenty bodies in the woods, his mother's among them, all horribly mutilated by the Cherokees.

**116. Expedition Against the Cherokees.** In February, 1760, the General Assembly of South Carolina convened and authorized the raising of seven companies of rangers for the protection of the "Back Country." Governor Lyttelton, humiliated at the failure of his treaty of peace, left the province, and Lieutenant Governor Bull, son of the former lieutenant governor of the same name, took over the administration of the government. Governor Bull called upon Virginia and North Carolina for assistance in the war and at this time seven vessels arrived in the harbor of Charles Town with about 1,200 troops aboard under the command of Colonel Montgomery. In May, these troops, together with the provincial companies, rendezvoused at the Congarees. With this force Colonel Montgomery moved to Ninety Six and from there to the Cherokee towns, killing all the Indians in their path and burning every house upon the way. The Indians fled to the mountains where they were seen gazing upon their homes in flames. At Fort Prince George, Colonel Montgomery summoned the upper and middle towns to make peace. They paid no attention

to his demand, so he marched through the upper towns into North Carolina. At one narrow pass in North Carolina the Indians lay in ambush for the army. A bloody fight ensued in which the Indians were defeated, but Montgomery decided to retire and returned to Fort Prince George in July. He was then recalled to take part in the war which was still raging in the northern provinces, so he returned to Charles Town, from whence he sailed to New York, leaving a force of 400 men at the Congarees for the protection of the "Back Country."

**117. The Capture of Fort Loudoun.** During this time the Cherokees had been beseiging Fort Loudoun, on the Tennessee river. With the withdrawal of Montgomery the garrison surrendered to the Indians on the condition that they be allowed to return to their homes. On the next day the garrison was overtaken and the commander and twenty-six others were murdered. The rest of the garrison were taken prisoners. Among these was Captain John Stuart, of the South Carolina provincial regiment. It happened that Captain Stuart was a close friend of Attakulla-kulla, who bought him from the Indian who had captured him and helped him to escape. Captain Stuart reported to Governor Bull that the Indians were planning an attack upon Fort Prince George.

**118. Conquering the Cherokees.** Fort Prince George was immediately reinforced with men and supplies and an appeal for help was made to the British forces in the north. Lieutenant Colonel James Grant with about 1,200 men was sent to the aid of South Carolina. Again the regular and the provincial troops rendezvoused at the Congarees, and in May, 1761, marched in the direction of Fort Prince George. The expedition, which numbered about 2,600 men entered the Cherokee country. On the 10th of June they were attacked by the Indians. They darted fearlessly forward



to close combat with knife and tomahawk. At the end of three hours of fierce fighting the Cherokees were driven from the field. They fled fighting—grimly delivering their fire from every shelter in their retreat.

The Indians were not allowed to reunite in force. The victory opened the way to the nation. Estatoe, one of their largest towns, was burned and about fifteen other towns shared the same fate. Their granaries and cornfields were destroyed. The wretched families were driven to the shelter of the barren mountains which yielded them little food. They are said to have perished in large numbers. For thirty days the army marched into the heart of the Cherokee country and then returned to Fort Prince George.

**119. Peace with the Cherokees.** It was not long before Attakullakulla and other chiefs of the Cherokee Nation appeared at Fort Prince George to sue for peace. They were given a safe conduct to Charles Town to talk with Governor Bull, who met the party at Ashley Ferry and received them with great kindness. A fire was kindled and for a long while they all smoked together in silence. At last Attakullakulla began a speech, in which he sued with great pathos for peace for his nation. It is said that he told Governor Bull that he had come to see what could be done for his people, that they were in great distress and that they asked for forgiveness. "I believe that it has been decreed by the Great Master, who is above," he said. "He is the father of red men and white. We all live in one land—let us live as one people."

Governor Bull, satisfied that the Cherokees were sufficiently humbled, granted the old chief's plea. A peace was made which ended the war.



## CHAPTER X.

### PROVINCIAL LIFE.

**120. Arrival of Royal Governor.** In December, 1761, Thomas Boone arrived in the province with his commission as fifth royal governor of South Carolina. His administration seemed characterized by little tact. Immediately upon his arrival in Charles Town he objected to the manner of electing the Commons House, and, dissolving it, called another. In the new election he incurred the enmity of Christopher Gadsden, a prominent and popular citizen, who was to have a large share in the making of the history of South Carolina, by refusing to administer the oath to him as member of the Commons House on the ground that he was not properly elected. The Commons House, irritated by this action of the governor, retaliated by refusing to appropriate money for salaries for the chief executive and other officers or to pass a tax bill. Through their agent, whom they still kept in London, the South Carolinians complained to the King of Governor Boone's arbitrary proceedings. Permission was sent to Governor Boone to come to England to lay his case before the Board of Trade.

**121. Growing Power of the Assembly.** It is important to note the growing power of the Commons House which had claimed the prerogatives of the English House of Commons. The office of governor, except in the temporary absence of a royal appointee, and the majority of the places in the Council were not open to natives of the province, but in the Commons House the people took upon themselves the necessary authority to hold these royal officers in check.

**122. The Church in Carolina.** At this time there were twenty parishes in the province, most of which were supplied with rectors or ministers. The government of South Caro-

lina had been from the first bound up with the life of the church. The immigrants to South Carolina had been usually of a religious character—a great portion of whom had left their homes that they might not be forced to sacrifice the tenets of their religion. In Charles Town, St. Philip's, the Episcopal church, had been the center of the growth of the town. In Orangeburgh there were Lutheran and Episcopal churches. In Abbeville there were the Huguenot churches.



Charles Town in 1760 When the City Took Rank Second to None in America in Importance.

Presbyterian churches formed the nuclei of numerous settlements dotted over the "Back Country."

**123. Prosperity.** From the period of the Cherokee war we may date the true prosperity of South Carolina. Relieved from the fears of savage raids by the Cherokees and from plottings of the Spaniards and the French, its "Back Country" began to fill up with settlers. Immigrants from many parts of Europe flocked to the interior and planted their little colonies on the slopes of its hills. Scarcely a ship sailed for any of the plantations which did not bring a quota of settlers to the warm and fertile region of South Carolina.

**124. Expansion.** In the year 1766 the number of white inhabitants in Charles Town was between five and six thousand; of negroes, between seven and eight thousand. The population of the province was but 40,000 whites; the whole number capable of bearing arms between seven and eight thousand. The negro population was between eighty and ninety thousand. The harbor of Charles Town was feebly fortified. On the Cooper River line there were several batteries. Fort Johnson, on James Island, was a slight work, with barracks for fifty men. The guns were mounted, in tolerable numbers, on all these forts; but, there had been but little science shown in their erection, and neither fort nor town could have long stood bombardment. Outside of Charles Town, the towns were mere hamlets of the smallest size. Beaufort, Purrysburgh, Jacksonborough, Dorchester, Camden, Orangeburgh, and Georgetown, were inconsiderable villages, not one exceeding forty dwellings, and most of them having about twenty or thirty.

**125. At Charles Town.** But, Charles Town, in that day, took rank, second to none, with the largest and most prosperous cities of North America. The people in its precincts were opulent, gay, showy, and hospitable. Their sons had been sent to England and France for education. They brought back taste and refinement, as well as extravagant habits. Fashions in dress and ornament were rapidly transferred from Europe. Luxury had found its way into the wilderness. Nearly every Charles Town family kept single horse chaises, and most of the principal planters carriages, drawn by teams of four. The horses were imported from Europe of good blooded stocks. The people drank fine wines of Madeira, and used freely, also, French, Spanish, and Portuguese wines. These were commonly displayed at dinner parties. Tea, coffee, and chocolate were among the breakfast beverages, and the drink through the day was punch.



The citizens of Charles Town displayed good taste in the polite arts, such as music, drawing, fencing, and dancing. They were affable in their manners and exceedingly hospitable to strangers. It was said that there were few poor people in the province except the idle and the unfortunate, and that there were more people possessed of between five and ten



Grappling With the Deer.—From Elliott's *"Carolina Sports"*.

thousand pounds sterling in the province than were to be found anywhere in America in the same number of people. The city resembled a bee hive, with its flourishing trade and commerce. The amusements in Charles Town were concerts, balls, and assemblies which "were attended in companies almost equally brilliant as those of any town in Europe of the same size." There were also theatres where the leading players in America performed. In the country



the sports of the field were enjoyed on a bolder and more adventurous scale than in Great Britain. The planters had the best dogs and horses, were great riders and good shots, and there were foxes to be hunted and deer and bear abounded in great numbers.

At this time there were more college-bred men in Charles Town and the Low-Country of the province of South Caro-



Catching the Devil Fish.—From Elliott's "*Carolina Sports*".

lina than in all New England. The Charles Town bar was the most accomplished in America. The literature of the province was distinctively imitative of that of England. The statesmen of South Carolina found their models among the parliamentary orators of the mother country. We find, among South Carolina's great orators, the Rutledges, Draytons, Laurenses, Pinckneys, and Christopher Gadsden. In this period we also find South Carolina rich in historians,

among the most prominent of whom were Francis Yonge, Henry Laurens, William Henry Drayton, David Ramsay, Arthur Middleton, John Laurens, and William Moultrie.

There were three weekly newspapers in Charles Town at this time, the oldest of which had been founded in 1732. There were also in the city good bookstores and a library which was furnished with all new British publications of value.

**126. Deep Affection for the Mother Country.** The Carolinians looked with affection upon the mother country. South Carolina was a great source of wealth to England, which had a monopoly of its trade, and in turn the province received protection from enemies and financial aid in times of stress. It became the fashion for wealthy natives to affect English manners and customs. They sent to England for their horses and coaches, and the ladies sent "home" for their millinery and finery.

**127. English Manners.** The South Carolina household was modeled as nearly as possible on the English household. The negro slaves coveted three positions in the master's family; butler, who had charge of the household—usually an ancient cotton-head darkey who aped the manners of his master; coachman, who had charge of the stable and who on state occasions drove the family coach; and patroon, who had charge of the boats. All the old houses of the province had been built on the river fronts and each of the planters had his little fleet of boats under the management of a patroon for his private use and for carrying on the work of the plantation. These estates, according to the English custom of primogeniture, were handed down to the eldest son.

Each plantation was a little community in itself. In the household were numerous maids and seamstresses. In the fields were hundreds of slaves who tended the rice and indigo, which products were shipped to many parts of the





Mrs. Roger Smith, Sister of John Rutledge, and Her Little Son, from a  
Portrait Painted by Romney While They Were in England.

world. Each plantation was sufficient unto itself. On it were carpenters, blacksmiths, tailors, and shoemakers—a happy, well cared for, busy little community. The owners lived in great luxury. They had their town houses in Charles Town from which they were able to enjoy the advantages of city life and to keep in touch with the political trend of the day.

At this period the society of Charles Town was in a more developed state than that of any city in America—unless it was that of Philadelphia. Edmund Burke described St. Philip's Church, built in 1724, as exceeding any church in America; and said that the first theatre in America was in Charles Town; that the music of the St. Cecilia Society was the finest to be heard; that the first attempt at a public library was in Charles Town; that the first fire insurance company in America was the Friendly Society, organized in Charles Town in 1735; that the Fellowship Society was but the second attempt in America to make provision for lunatics; that there was a Chamber of Commerce in the town as early as 1774; and that there were more newspapers in South Carolina in proportion to the population than in any other province. Charles Town, it was said, of all American towns, approached more nearly to the social refinement of a great European capital.

**128. Contrast of the "Back Country".** These bright descriptions of the refinement and well developed state of civilization in South Carolina were only true of Charles Town and the Low-Country. The upper part of South Carolina, or the "Back Country", as it was then called, was in a wild and primitive state. The small communities formed in this territory were merely clearings in the wilderness. While the inhabitants of Charles Town were living in brick houses, copying English manners and amusing themselves with horse racing, listening to the singers and pianists of the





Mr. and Mrs. Ralph Izard of Charles Town, from a Portrait Painted in Rome by Copley in the Winter of 1774-5.

St. Cecilia and entertaining European visitors in style and elegance, the people of the "Back Country" were living in log houses, struggling to make the simplest kind of living and ever on the alert to guard their families from the tomahawks of the savage Indians. These country settlers were meeting the same hardships that the first colony on the coast had to encounter about ninety years previously when they had landed on the banks of the Ashley under Governor Sayle.

Along with other hardships this "Back Country" came gradually to be infested with gangs of ruffian wanderers, who lived by preying upon the property of the settlers of these regions. Cattle, hog, and horse stealing were their regular occupations. Burglaries and murders naturally followed horse stealing, and there was no redress as the only court of justice in the province was in Charles Town, a great many miles distant.

At last, tormented beyond endurance, the settlers of the "Back Country" took justice into their own hands. They organized a band of rangers, styling themselves Regulators. They hunted the horse thief and the burglar. When caught they tied him to a tree and administered a flogging. When released, the criminal was warned to disappear from the country within a given number of days. Thus, the hardy frontiersmen of the "Back Country" meted out summary justice.

## CHAPTER XI.

### ROYAL RESTRICTIONS OF PROVINCIAL TRADE.

**129. Early Trade Restrictions Hurtful.** During the Proprietary government Edward Randolph had been sent out by the King to look after his Majesty's customs in the American colonies, and to enforce certain instructions regarding trade. Among these articles the shipment of which was restricted, were rice and indigo, the two principal exports of South Carolina. By these restrictions the people of the province were only permitted to sell their rice and indigo in England or in the English plantations, and having few ships of their own, they were compelled to use English vessels, or vessels belonging to English colonies. The New England colonists were largely devoted to shipbuilding, instead of to agriculture, so the trade restrictions favored them while falling heavily on South Carolina.

**130. Later Restrictions Injure New England.** About the beginning of the eighteenth century the New England ship building industry had grown so flourishing that England, wishing her own shipyards to have a monopoly, forbade the New Englanders to manufacture any of the necessities for ship building and marked all the trees large enough for masts with the King's arrow, which reserved them for the use of the crown. New England was also beginning to manufacture woolen goods and to make hats to such an extent as to curtail England's sales of these commodities. To remedy this the mother country placed a restriction which forbade the shipping of woolen cloth or hats abroad or even selling of these articles to the colonies in America. This trade restriction on manufactures was much heavier on New England than was the shipping restriction on rice and indigo in South Carolina, as the latter was at least allowed to sell



her products to the other English colonies as well as to England. This was but the beginning of New England's burdens, however. Every industry she established called forth a restricting order from the British government. This naturally led to grave discontent in the northern colonies. Under George II South Carolina was treated as a favorite province of the crown. The shipping restriction on rice was lifted, allowing South Carolina to sell this article to any part of Europe southward of Cape Finisterre. South Carolina had no complaint to make now of the British government, as having no ship building and wool industry, she did not feel the restrictions which fell so heavily on the northern colonies. She was withal satisfied with and loyal to the royal government.

**131. Cause of Dissatisfaction in South Carolina.** The fact that the high offices in the government were not within the reach of young South Carolinians, who, educated in England and fresh from their courses at Temple Bar and eminently fitted to hold office, returned to the province to find that the high places were filled with incompetent men sent from England whose only motive in coming was to secure the salary which went with the office, was a cause of great dissatisfaction. Governor Boone's unfortunate administration naturally increased the resentment which the people of the province felt toward these placemen.

**132. England's Position in Regard to Colonies.** It must be understood that England felt perfectly justified in placing these restrictions upon trade. The English provinces in America had been planted solely for the benefit which would accrue to England therefrom. Slavery had been encouraged because it meant wealth to the merchants of England. The colonies were mere business ventures carried on along commercial lines with the idea of making them pay the greatest possible profits. England furnished the requisite capital for



their establishment and in turn intended getting full reimbursement from the industries which the colonies developed, reserving the power of placing whatever restrictions were thought fit and proper upon the trade of these colonies.

**133. The First Direct Taxation.** The English colonies in America never questioned the right of England to place these restrictions upon trade, but the fact that they burdened the colonies so heavily financially aroused deep resentment and discontent as we have seen. This discontent was crystalized into a definite and justifiable grievance by the news that they were to be taxed directly in addition to paying duties on certain products. England had gone to great expense to keep troops in America to protect the colonies from the French and Indians. In the Cherokee war South Carolina had received aid from the British troops in conquering her foes. England now proposed that the colonies should pay a small tax to defray partly the expense of these troops. The tax was known as the Stamp Act because it required that all instruments of writing should be executed on stamped paper which was to be bought at a small price from royal agents in each province.

The colonies were unanimous in their opposition to the Stamp Act. It was not that it imposed an exorbitant or unreasonable burden, but that they denied the right of England to tax them when they were not represented in the English Parliament. Also they felt that England was being sufficiently reimbursed for the expense she had been put to in the establishment of the colonies by the advantages resulting from the trade with them. The tax would establish a precedent which would lay them liable to dangerous and unfair taxation and they immediately entered protest. The Assembly of Massachusetts declared that Massachusetts would not be taxed except by its own Assembly and called a meeting in New York of representatives of all the

provinces to discuss the subject. The General Assembly of South Carolina declared that South Carolina would not be taxed without her consent, and elected Thomas Lynch,

Christopher Gadsden, and John Rutledge to represent her in the Congress which was to be held in New York in October, 1765. This was the first concerted action of the English provinces in America.

**134. Arrival of Stamped Paper in Charles Town.** In October, 1765, the first stamped paper arrived in Charles Town on the ship Planter's Adventure from London. The next morning in the central part of the town appeared an enormous gallows from which a figure was suspended supposed to represent a distributor of stamped paper.

"Liberty and no Stamp

Act" was written on the gallows, and on the figure was attached a label which ran "Whosoever shall dare pull down these effigies had better have been born with a millstone about his neck and cast into the sea." No one attempted to take the figure from the gallows.



Statue of William Pitt, the English Statesman, Who Urged the Repeal of the Stamp Act. In Washington Square, Charleston.

In the days that followed a great procession, estimated to consist of 2,000 persons, entered several houses in the town in which they thought the stamped paper had been stored. The courts were unable to transact business as all refused to use stamped paper. Finally, the distributors agreed to hold the paper until word could come from England in reply to the protest made by the colonies.

**135. At the American Congress.** In the Congress which was being held in New York in 1765, at the time that the stamped paper was arriving in Charles Town, the three South Carolinians, Lynch, Gadsden, and Rutledge, took prominent part. One historian has written: "Be it remembered that the blessing of Union is due to the warm-heartedness of South Carolina." The Congress presented petitions to the Crown, the House of Lords, and the House of Commons, in which they stated the grounds of their objections to the Stamp Act. These petitions set forth in almost the same words the resolutions which the General Assembly of South Carolina had adopted on receiving the news of the Stamp Act. The Congress adopted a non-importation and non-exportation agreement.

**136. Repeal of the Stamp Act.** In London, William Pitt took the side of the colonies and argued for the repeal of the Stamp Act. For this service a statue was erected in Charles Town, which stands there today. In June, 1766, the Stamp Act was repealed. The news of the repeal was received in Charles Town with extravagant expressions of joy. In their gladness a celebration was announced to show their loyalty and gratitude to the crown.

**137. Montagu Arrives in the Province.** In the same month of the repeal of the Stamp Act Lord Charles Greville Montagu arrived in Charles Town as royal governor, displacing Lieutenant Governor William Bull, who had administered the government since the retirement of Governor Boone.

The citizens received Governor Montagu cordially and celebrated his arrival with brilliant entertainments and many demonstrations of loyalty to England. But the exultations of the people were shortlived as duties were soon imposed on glass, lead, tea, and painter's colors.

**138. The Liberty Tree.** In Charles Town there was a great oak tree, under which it grew to be the habit for men to gather to discuss the unjust exactions of the mother country. Christopher Gadsden often addressed gatherings under its branches and here a pledge was made to resist any aggressions of England. These gatherings formed a nucleus for an enthusiastic Liberty party, and the tree was subsequently known as the Liberty Tree.

**139. Justice in the "Back Country".** In 1768, Governor Montagu embarked with his wife for a visit to Philadelphia, and Lieutenant Governor Bull again assumed the administration of the government. The "Back Country" was then in a turmoil. On his return, Governor Montagu immediately set himself to remedying the conditions there. Many complaints had come, mostly, it was found later, from those whose sympathies were with the horse thieves, of the high-handed proceedings of the Regulators. Governor Montagu appointed a man named Cofill, a ruffian who was utterly unfit for such a position, to suppress the Regulators. Cofill collected a force of rough men around him, probably drawn from the horse thieves, and seized Regulators wherever he found them. Drunk with power he committed many outrages. At last the settlers arose to put down the Cofillites, but an order from Governor Montagu, who realized his mistake, arrived dismissing Cofill in time to prevent bloodshed. Cofill was subsequently convicted of horse stealing himself.



Governor Montagu, new to the country, had made bad matters worse by trying to suppress the only body of Justice in the Up-Country from which redress of any kind could be obtained. This served to show the need of a native born man in the office of governor, who would be thoroughly familiar with the conditions of the country.

## CHAPTER XII.

### BREACH WIDENS BETWEEN KING AND CAROLINA.

**140. The Circular Letter of Massachusetts.** In 1768, the Assembly of Massachusetts issued a circular letter to the Assemblies of her sister provinces, which contained a protest against the duties laid upon them by England and suggested a petition to the King and his ministers for redress. When tidings of this circular letter reached London, the ministry was so incensed at what they termed the rebellious spirit in Massachusetts that they directed the Governor of Massachusetts to dissolve the Assembly which had issued the objectionable circular letter. In the Assembly the question of rescinding the letter was put to a vote. Seventeen members voted in favor of rescinding and ninety-two against it. Upon this the governor dissolved the Assembly. In South Carolina the ninety-two men who would not rescind were toasted and cheered in all manner of celebrations. A majority of the Commons House voted to write to Massachusetts approving its action.

**141. Demand for Quarters for Troops.** There were still British troops in South Carolina who had been placed there during the Cherokee War. General Gage, commander of the British troops in America, now ordered more troops to Charles-Town. Governor Montagu announced this news to the General Assembly and asked that provision be made for the support of these extra troops. The people of South Carolina, who were already uneasy at the presence of British troops in the province when there was no apparent need of them, ignored the appeal. Governor Montagu, at this time, on account of ill health, retired for a leave of absence, leaving the question of the quartering of the troops unset-

tled. Lieutenant Governor Bull again took charge of the government.

**142. Refusal to Quarter Troops.** The General Assembly reported to Governor Bull that it would not agree to support any additional troops in the province. At this time there was much agitation in the province by the suggestion which was made to the King by certain ministers in England that the most seditious agitators in the colonies of America should be brought to England for trial. South Carolina and Virginia resented this threat in a protest from their General Assemblies. South Carolina, while the duties imposed had not fallen heavily upon her, had been warm-hearted in her approbation of the protest from Massachusetts; had refused to quarter troops in Charles Town; and had promptly resented the threat to seize her citizens who had been active in their protests against British exactions. All through these controversies she had been careful to assure his majesty, King George III, that South Carolina was still loyal to the crown. No word had as yet been said of separation from Great Britain.

**143. Courts in the "Back Country".** In 1768, the province was divided, by act of Assembly, into seven judicial districts, courts to be held at Charles Town, Orangeburgh, Camden, Ninety Six, Cheraws, Beaufort, and Georgetown. This act also provided for building jails and appointing necessary officers for the administration of justice throughout South Carolina. This bill met with the royal disapproval, but in 1769 finally became law. Court houses and jails were built in the several districts and by 1772 the people were able to obtain justice at their homes instead of going to Charles Town.

**144. Non-importation.** In 1769-1770, exactly 100 years after the arrival of the first English colony on the banks of the Kiawah, there was great agitation under the branches

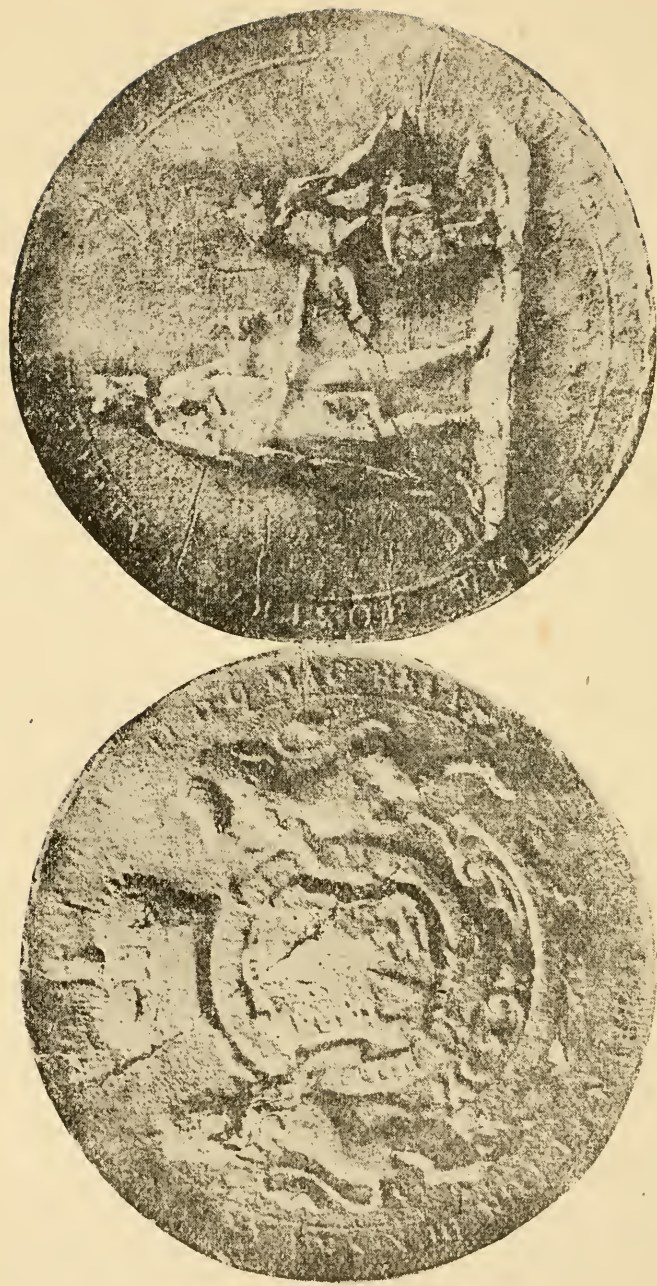
of the Liberty Tree in regard to non-importation—the refusal to accept goods in Charles Town on which import duties had been placed by England. An agreement was made under the Liberty Tree which pledged the merchants and mechanics to encourage American manufactures and to refuse to receive British goods. They also stated that they would not purchase from or sell any goods to any person who refused to sign this agreement. All persons not signing were boycotted. British cargoes arriving in Charles Town were stored and left to rot in the warehouses, the consignees not being allowed to sell these goods in the open market. This was unjust and worked great hardship upon persons who had bought these goods from English merchants before the non-importation agreement was made.

**145. Non-importation Broken by Northern Colonies.** Much to the indignation of the South Carolinians, word came that New York and Philadelphia had broken the non-importation agreement. It was thereupon discussed under the Liberty Tree what should be done by South Carolina. Feeling that non-importation would be ineffective and useless if continued by South Carolina alone, it was decided to discontinue it on all merchandise, except tea. All possible encouragement was still to be given to American manufactures, and the use of luxuries was to be restricted as much as possible.

Despite the breaking down of the non-importation scheme it had accomplished something. The British Parliament repealed the duties on glass, lead, and all other articles except tea. The provinces, not to be outdone, determined not to use tea.

**146. Montagu Returns.** Lord Charles Greville Montagu, who had retired to England on account of ill health, returned in 1771 to resume his office. He was received with much cordiality, but from the beginning he was involved





The Great Seal of the Province of South Carolina With Which Lord William Campbell Fled.

in trouble with the General Assembly. He dissolved the General Assembly because of its determination to control the taxes of the province. The people, sustaining the General Assembly, returned the same members to the Commons House. Among these were Gadsden, Rutledge, Lynch, Pinckney, and Manigault, men who were prominent in their opposition to the duties. One struggle after another occurred between the House and the Governor, who, finally discouraged, gave up his office in 1773. For the fifth time Lieutenant Governor Bull sat in the governor's chair.

**147. The Blockade of Boston.** The duty on tea had not been lifted because the English government, not willing to be beaten in the contest with her colonies, wished to assert its right to impose duties upon them. In 1773, three cargoes of tea arriving in Boston, a party of citizens dressed as Indians boarded the ships, and threw the chests of tea into the sea. The English Government, in retaliation, declared the port of Boston in a state of blockade and word came that British troops were to be sent to enforce it. Boston appealed to the other provinces to sustain her by entering into another non-importation agreement.

At this appeal South Carolina called a meeting of delegates from all parts of the province. At this gathering, after hot debates, the people refused to agree to the non-importation which Boston asked for, because the northern colonists at whose instance it had been agreed upon before, had been the first to break it. By this time it was beginning to be suspected that the northern provinces wished to separate themselves from England, and South Carolina, still loyal to the mother country, looked with abhorrence upon any such plan. The Stamp Act had been repealed and as yet she had suffered no great injury from the duties. She had merely through sympathy with the northern provinces agreed to non-importation. It was suggested at this

meeting of the provincial delegates that a deputation be sent from the Continental Congress to lay the case of the colonies before the crown before all intercourse with England should be broken. Five deputies were appointed to attend the Continental Congress, which was held in Philadelphia in September, 1774. A committee of ninety-nine persons was appointed to serve as a general committee to look after public affairs.

South Carolina, always generous in her assistance, was very liberal to the blockaded port of Boston. She sent £3,300 in money and eighty barrels of rice, which amounted to more than the donations of any other province in America.

**148. Charles Town Tea Party.** In November, 1774, the merchants of Charles Town, with no disguises and in broad daylight, in the midst of a great gathering of the citizens of the town, threw seven chests of tea which had arrived at the port, into the Cooper River. In Georgetown the same thing was done. The people were determined not to use the tea upon which the duty had been placed.

**149. Attitude of the Church.** The Church of England, in South Carolina, was generally in sympathy with the Revolution. There was one interesting exception, however. On Sunday, August 14, 1774, the Rev. John Bullman, assistant rector of St. Michael's, preached a sermon which was supposed to reflect on the popular proceedings. His audience would scarcely hear him out, and he was subsequently dismissed by the church. When, in the vestry, the vote for his dismissal was put, there was a cry "Now shall we see who are the enemies of the country." The vote against him was welcomed with a shout that shook pulpit and altar.

**150. The First Continental Congress.** New York had issued a call for a Continental Congress. South Carolina had sounded the key note for common cause against England in these ringing words, "The whole country must be ani-



mated with one great soul, and all Americans must stand by one another, even unto death." The Congress, representing twelve of the provinces, assembled at Philadelphia, in 1774. On the retirement of its first president, Peyton Randolph, Henry Middleton of South Carolina was chosen to succeed him. The Congress adopted the acts of non-importation and non-consumption which had been previously agreed upon by several provinces. These agreements contained a clause to discontinue the slave trade, to which the southern members offered no opposition, and a provision to except rice as an article of export from the list of non-exportations.

**151. The Provincial Congress.** The general committee called a general meeting of the inhabitants of the province. The gathering, which met in Charles Town, January 11, 1775, was known as the Provincial Congress. Charles Pinckney was chosen president.

At the Provincial Congress the delegates from the Philadelphia Congress reported the proceedings of that body. John Rutledge explained that the South Carolina delegates had insisted that rice be excepted in the non-intercourse association because South Carolina sold most of her rice in England and would suffer greatly by non-exportation, while the northern colonies sold their products to other European countries and would thus be little affected by the agreement of the Association. The Provincial Congress, after much debate, approved of what had been done at the Continental Congress. They concluded by a recommendation to the inhabitants of the province to practice the use of firearms and to set aside a day for prayer. This Congress practically took control of the province, superseding the royal authority. Meanwhile, Lieutenant Governor Bull still acted as governor under the crown. His position was an awkward one; he was a native of the province and closely allied with some



of the popular leaders. He was a favorite of the people and greatly beloved by all; was moderate in his opinions and indulgent to those of others.

**152. Loyalty to the Association.** In South Carolina, the terms of the Association were rigidly complied with. Ships, arriving from England, were emptied of their cargoes, which were thrown into the sea. Even a cargo of slaves was interdicted and sent elsewhere. The private carriage and horses of a citizen from England were not allowed to be landed.

**153. Preparations for War.** The news of the battle of Lexington was received in Charles Town in May, 1775. The Provincial Congress was at once called to meet in Charles Town on the first of June. Henry Laurens was made president. At this session a prohibition against the exportation of rice and corn, except with the consent of the Association, as Congress might need such exports in order to procure arms and ammunition from abroad, was passed. It was resolved to raise two regiments of infantry of 1,500 men and a regiment of cavalry rangers of 450 men. These were to be enrolled under the articles of war and subjected to the discipline of British troops. They voted a million of money, commissioners of a treasury were resolved upon and a council of safety was elected. A government was thus set up by the Congress, the provisions of which were put in writing. A secret committee, composed of William Henry Drayton, Arthur Middleton, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, William Gibbes, and Edward Weyman, was appointed and given large powers. Other committees were appointed to carry on the necessary business of the government.

This was the first revolutionary government set up among the American provinces

**154. Arrival of Lord William Campbell.** On the eighteenth of June, 1775, Lord William Campbell arrived in Charles

Town on the man-of-war Scorpion, with his commission as governor of South Carolina. His coming marked the last days of the royal government. The South Carolinians had taken complete control of the affairs of the province.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### THE PROVINCE BECOMES A STATE.

**155. Raising of Regiments.** The Provincial Congress proceeded to raise the three regiments of troops which had been agreed upon. Christopher Gadsden and William Moultrie were elected colonels; Isaac Motte and Isaac Huger lieutenant-colonels; Owen Roberts and Alexander McIntosh majors; and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Barnard Elliott, Francis Marion, William Cattell, Peter Horry, Daniel Horry, Adam McDonald, Thomas Lynch, Jr., William Scott, John Barnwell, Nicholas Eveleigh, James McDonald, Isaac Harleston, Thomas Pinckney, Francis Huger, William Mason, Edmund Hyrne, Roger Parker Saunders, Charles Motte, and Benjamin Cattell, captains of the infantry regiments. William Thomson and James Mayson were elected lieutenant-colonel and major, respectively, of the cavalry regiment. Many of these men had gained experience and distinction in the Cherokee War.

**156. Seizing of Powder and Ammunition.** General George Washington of Virginia had been appointed by the Continental Congress Commander-in-chief of the American armies. Finding that there was a great scarcity of powder and ammunition in America, an appeal was made to all the provinces to send him all that could be spared.

South Carolina was appealed to for help. It was learned that a British ship-of-war was expected on the coast with several tons of powder designed for the Indians. The secret committee issued instructions to Captains Barnwell and Joyner of Beaufort to seize the vessel. A schooner was fitted out and commissioned by the Georgia Congress. A joint force of South Carolinians and Georgians manned her, put to sea, captured the British vessel, and appropriated all her ammunition.

Another successful capture was effected. Hearing that British powder and arms might be seized at New Providence and upon the high seas the council of safety fitted out a sloop for this purpose under Captain Lempriere. Cruising off St. Augustine, he captured one of the expected vessels—an armed brig. From this vessel he procured a large supply of military stores and powder. Though pursued by a superior force he succeeded in making the port of Beaufort and safely stored his spoils on shore. The rangers meanwhile under Major Mayson seized upon Fort Charlotte, on the Savannah River, where they captured a considerable armament—great guns, powder, shot, and lead. These were stored at the town of Ninety Six and a company was left in garrison at Fort Charlotte.

**157. Dissension.** South Carolina had rushed headlong into the controversy with England without the unanimous consent of her citizens. The Provincial Congress first called upon all of the citizens to subscribe to the Articles of Association, which, it must be remembered, had been agreed upon by the Continental Congress. Twenty-two leading persons, meanwhile, had declined to sign the Articles of Association. The most of these were or had been officers of the crown. It was finally proposed to them to take an oath of neutrality during the quarrel, and such as refused this oath either left the province, or, disarmed, were confined to the limits of Charles Town. William Wragg, still loyal to the King, and feeling certain that war was coming, was among those who refused to subscribe to the Association and left the province, never to return.

**158. Treachery in the Up-Country.** Captain Moses Kirkland, who had charge of the powder at Ninety Six, which had been captured at Fort Charlotte by Major Mayson, betrayed the powder into the hands of Major Robinson, a Scotch loyalist. Kirkland had wanted the commission



which had been given Mayson and had become disaffected on that account. In a few days a colonel of militia, Thomas Fletchall, joined Kirkland, Robinson and others in raising the King's standard. The Cuninghams and Thomas Brown were also prominent in this movement for the King. Fletchall soon gathered 1,500 men capable of overawing the country from the Broad to the Savannah.



Ruins of Fort Lyttelton on Beaufort River.

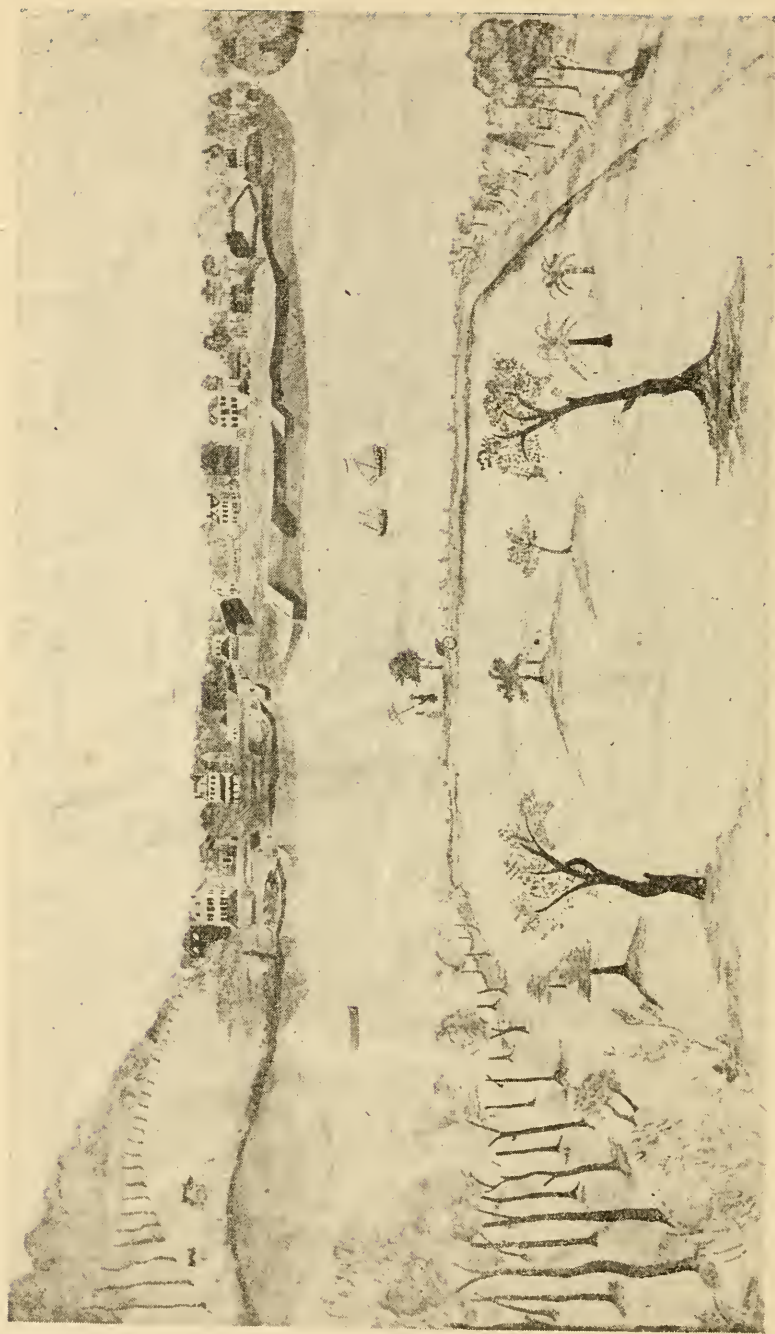
**159. Men Sent to Up-Country.** The Council of Safety commissioned William Henry Drayton and the Rev. William Tennent to make a tour of the disaffected region to explain to the people the cause of dispute between the crown and the colonies, and if possible to pacify them. Drayton and Tennent met with little success. There was small sympathy between the Up-Country and the Low-Country. This was in part due to the natural jealousies of the poor and isolated settlements toward the affluent people of Charles Town

already in the possession of wealth and importance, and in part due to the different nationalities of the settlers. The Up-Country felt none of the oppression of the British and saw no valid reason for revolt.

**160. Apparent Pacification.** In talking to the people in a speech at a meeting upon the Enoree, Drayton and Tennent heard that the loyalists were rising. They called out the militia and called for volunteers. It looked as though bloodshed would surely follow, but the loyalists were not yet ready for open revolt and their leaders presented themselves to Drayton's camp to sue for peace. Drayton next proceeded to pacify the Cherokees to whom he made presents. The Cherokees gave their promise readily, but British agents had already been to the Cherokees, and these promises, like those of the loyalists, were of brief duration.

Thus South Carolina was to enter the great struggle divided.

**161. Governor Campbell's Influence in the Interior.** Governor Campbell, while powerless in Charles Town, had not been idle in the interior. John Stuart, who had been in command of Fort Loudoun at the time of its capitulation to the Cherokees, was now Commissioner of Indian Affairs for the Southern Provinces of North America. Stuart was intensely loyal to the King. He had a tremendous influence over the Indians, and taking up his residence in Florida he made strenuous efforts to incite the Cherokees of the South Carolina border against the patriots. He had an agent named Cameron who lived among the Indians and who took a wife of the Cherokee Nation. Cameron built a fine house for her, clothed her in luxury and through her presented gifts to her countrymen. In this way he obtained a great influence over the Cherokees. Governor Campbell kept in secret correspondence with Stuart and Cameron, also with the Cuninghams, Brown, Kirkland,



Beaufort in 1799 Showing the River and Water Front.—From a Pastel by a 13-Year Old Boy.

Fletchall, and other loyalists of the Up-Country. His correspondence was at length intercepted and from that time he was closely watched by agents of the Provincial Congress.

**162. Convening of General Assembly.** In July, 1775, the General Assembly was convened by Governor Campbell. This, it must be remembered, was under the royal authority, the shows of which were still maintained, though the real power of the province had been absorbed by the Provincial, or revolutionary, Congress. No business was done. The two houses and the Governor were at cross-purposes—the greater part of the Commons House being members either of the Provincial Congress, the Council of Safety, or the general committee. All these were revolutionary bodies arrayed against the royal authority.

**163. The Taking of Fort Johnson—A Flag Devised.** The revolutionary committees resolved to take possession of Fort Johnson. The bastions of the town were manned by detachments of artillery and the city took on the appearance of a vigilance camp. Fort Johnson was taken possession of September 15, 1775, by a detachment led by Colonel Motte and consisting of the companies of Captains Pinckney, Elliott, and Marion. The guns of Fort Johnson were promptly trained upon the British armed vessels lying in the harbor, the Cherokee and the Tamar. The next day Governor Campbell dissolved the General Assembly and fled to the shelter of the Tamar, in Rebellion Roads, carrying with him the great seal of the province. No laws had been passed by the General Assembly during his administration, and though his influence in the interior had been mischievous, he had not proved himself the man to turn it to profitable account for his sovereign.

Fort Johnson was soon recruited with troops from the city and put in fighting order. The troops of the garrison



needing a flag, devised one—a blue field with a silver crescent in the dexter upper corner.

**164. Insurrection in "Back Country"—First Bloodshed.** The insurrection in the "Back Country" was increasing. Major Williamson of the militia, in charge of the militia of Ninety Six District, had some sharp fighting. A large force of militia, embodied under the command of Colonel Richard



Haddrell's Point Near Charles Town.

Richardson. was ordered to the scene of disaffection. Richardson's force was increased on the march to 3,000 men. His approach overawed the insurgents who gradually began to disband. Several of their chief men were made prisoners. Colonel Fletchall was found in the hollow of a sycamore tree and others in similar hiding places. These were all sent to the Charles Town jail. A detachment under Colonel Thomson proceeded against Cuninghame and had nearly surrounded his camp when they were discovered. The insurgents were overcome at a blow.

This campaign thus ended in success; at least, it temporarily put down and dispersed the opposition. The campaign, however, was a terribly severe one. The troops were without tents or covering. Provisions were scarce and they were in a snow storm for three days. The campaign was afterwards known as the "Snow Camp."

Richardson disbanded his force on Christmas day. Shortly afterward, in an effort to conciliate the opposition, a declaration of pardon was issued for them by the Provincial Congress. In this declaration all of the opposition were included except a few who had been most active. Many of them agreed to the terms of the Congress and accepted the pardon. Some, however, refused to do so and fled to Florida.

**165. Ridding the Harbor of British Vessels.** The revolutionists of South Carolina had to all appearances quieted their domestic dissensions. The seaboard was now the scene of danger and excitement. Already had the British sloops-of-war received an accession to their force in the arrival of the ship *Scorpion*. These ships harassed the trade of the province and were a perpetual threat and danger, seizing upon the vessels arriving, appropriating their contents and giving refuge to runaway negroes.

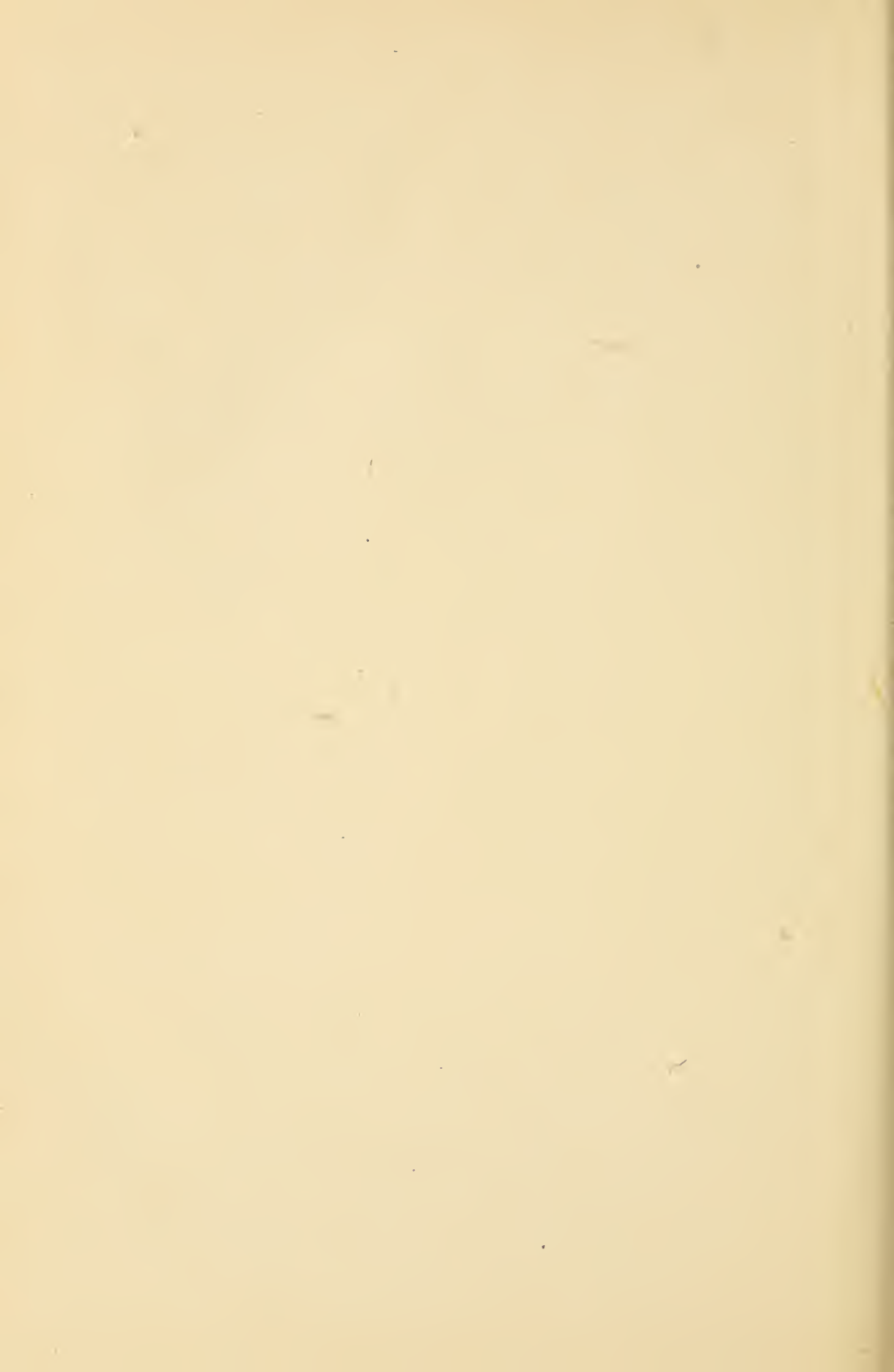
The patriots were eager to rid the harbor of these ships. The ship *Prosper* was put in charge of William Henry Drayton, and in a single night a battery was raised on Haddrell's Point and guns were mounted by the dawn. A few shots from the eighteen pounders, then put in position, soon compelled the men-of-war to fall down to Sullivan's Island. They were allowed neither food nor water and were forced to put to sea a few days later. The provincials then commenced the erection of a fort on Sullivan's Island, which they continued, though slowly, to work on at intervals.

**166. The Province Becomes the State.** On February 11, 1776, a committee of eleven prominent men of the province

was appointed to report a plan of government. While the Provincial Congress was debating the terms of a constitution—preparing to shake off all the forms of dependence upon Britain—news arrived of the act of the British Parliament which authorized the capture of American ships and property. This put all the rebellious provinces under the ban of war and crystallized the sentiment of South Carolina for war. In March, 1776, John Rutledge, from the committee to prepare a plan of government, submitted a preamble and constitution which was adopted. This constitution substantially ended the rule of England and converted the province into a republican state. Under this constitution the Provincial Congress became the General Assembly of South Carolina, with all the powers of sovereignty as derived from the people. The representation recognized twenty parishes and ten election districts. The executive and judicial officers were the President and Commander-in-chief, Vice President, Chief Justice and assistant judges, the Attorney General, an Ordinary and three commissioners of the treasury. John Rutledge was elected first President and Commander-in-chief; Henry Laurens, Vice President; and William Henry Drayton, Chief Justice. Thus the province of South Carolina became the State of South Carolina.

**III.**  
**SOUTH CAROLINA DURING THE**  
**REVOLUTIONARY WAR**





## CHAPTER XIV.

### OPENING OF HOSTILITIES WITH ENGLAND.

**167. Arrival of the British Fleet.** In May, 1776, expresses reached President Rutledge bringing the news that a British fleet under Sir Peter Parker, with a large land force under Sir Henry Clinton on board, was off Dewees's Island, about twenty miles north of Charles Town bar. It was now known that the first attack upon the English provinces in America was to be against the newly made State of South Carolina. There was great excitement in Charles Town at the prospect of the attack. General Charles Lee, third in rank of the general officers of the American forces, arrived to take charge of the Southern department. President Rutledge ordered out the militia of the State, an alarm was fired and the fortifications of the city were strengthened. All the citizens went to work with enthusiasm. Works were thrown up, traverses erected across the streets, weights were taken from the windows of the houses to be cast into musket balls and the public records and the printing presses were moved out of town.

**168. Fort on Sullivan's Island.** In January, 1776, work had been commenced upon a fort on Sullivan's Island. This fort was not completed at the arrival of the British fleet. It was placed under the command of Colonel William Moultrie, commanding the 2nd South Carolina regiment. The fort was a square large enough to hold, when finished, 1,000 men. It was built of palmetto logs laid one upon the other. There were two parallel rows of these logs and the space between was filled with sand. The rear of the fort and the eastern side were unfinished. General Lee disapproved of any attempt to defend this island and wanted to withdraw the troops for the defense of the city. President Rutledge

indignantly refused to consent to the abandonment of the island. General Lee, however, withdrew a number of the troops from this fort and also removed a quantity of powder.

**169. Defenses of the Inlet Between the Islands.** Sullivan's Island and Long Island (now called Isle of Palms) are separated by an inlet called Breach Inlet. The fleet landed Sir Henry Clinton and his land force on Long Island with the purpose of crossing the inlet and attacking the fort on Sullivan's Island by land at the same time of the attack by the fleet from the sea. Sir Henry Clinton landed on Long Island on June 8th, and threw up works on the Long Island side of the inlet. The South Carolinians threw up works on the Sullivan's Island side, which were manned by a force of 780 troops under the command of Colonel William Thomson. These were to resist the land force of 2,200 men. The fleet consisted of eleven ships.

**170. The Attack on the Fort.** On the 28th of June, 1776, the British ships bore down upon Sullivan's Island and the Thunder, bombship of the British, began to throw shells upon the fort. When the fleet arrived within easy range of the fort the garrison opened fire. The leading ship, the Active, came on, however, regardless of the fire. The other ships followed and anchored in two parallel lines and a heavy bombardment of the fort was commenced. Several shells from the Thunder fell inside the fort but were buried in the sand.

As soon as the fleet commenced the bombardment of the fort Sir Henry Clinton made an attempt to cross Breach Inlet to aid in the attack. He had an armed schooner and a sloop and a flotilla of armed boats to support the troops while crossing. The flotilla advanced, but Colonel Thomson's little force, with but two cannon, manned by men who had never fired a gun larger than a rifle, opened up a fire that raked the decks so that the men could not be kept at their

posts and the flotilla turned back. The troops who were to wade the inlet at low tide were likewise driven back and subsequently offered the excuse that the tide had risen too high for them to cross.

**171. Victory for the South Carolinians.** About midday, the boats of the second line of the British fleet were ordered to pass the fort and commence an attack upon the rear side of the fort. This would have meant disaster, for, it will be remembered, this side had not been completed. Fortunately, the ships stuck upon a shoal in carrying out this manouvre. Two of the ships got off the shoal and withdrew, but the third stuck fast.



Colonel William Moultrie, the Brave Defender of the Fort on Sullivan's Island, Which Was Named in His Honor.

The garrison of the fort directed their fire against the two largest ships of the fleet. On one of these ships was Lord William Campbell, the late royal governor of South Carolina, and Sir Peter Parker. Twice the quarter-deck was cleared of every person except Sir Peter Parker. Lord William Campbell was wounded. So great was the slaughter from the unerring fire of the garrison that at one time it was thought that the two ships would be entirely destroyed and they had decided to abandon these ships when the fire from the fort ceased.

The fire ceased because of the lack of powder. General Lee had withdrawn a part of the ammunition from the fort and it was thought that in the face of victory the defense would have to be abandoned. President Rutledge, however,



succeeded in getting the necessary powder to the garrison and the defense was resumed.

Some time thereafter, the flagstaff of the fort was shot away, the flag falling outside the fort. Upon this Sergeant William Jasper, of the Second regiment, leaped over the ramparts amidst heavy firing from the fleet, and, tearing the flag from the staff, returned with it. He fastened it upon a sponge staff, amidst a storm of shot and shell, and fixed it over the fort. After giving three cheers he returned to his gun unharmed.

The day ended with victory for the South Carolinians. About nine o'clock, the fire from the fleet ceased and a little later the ships slipped their cables and retired.

**172. Losses.** The total number killed in the fort was twelve and the wounded twenty-five. In the fleet we find that the two captains of the fifty-gun ships were mortally wounded, and nearly a hundred men on each ship killed. The loss of the fleet was slightly less than six to one over that of the fort. The fort, it is interesting to note, had used only 4,766 pounds of powder, while the fleet had used about 34,000 pounds.

Two days after the battle, General Lee visited the fort and thanked the garrison for their heroic defense. President Rutledge visited the garrison, also, and, taking his own sword from his side, presented it to Sergeant Jasper for his bravery in planting the flag. In honor of Colonel Moultrie, the brave defender of the fort, that structure was named Fort Moultrie.

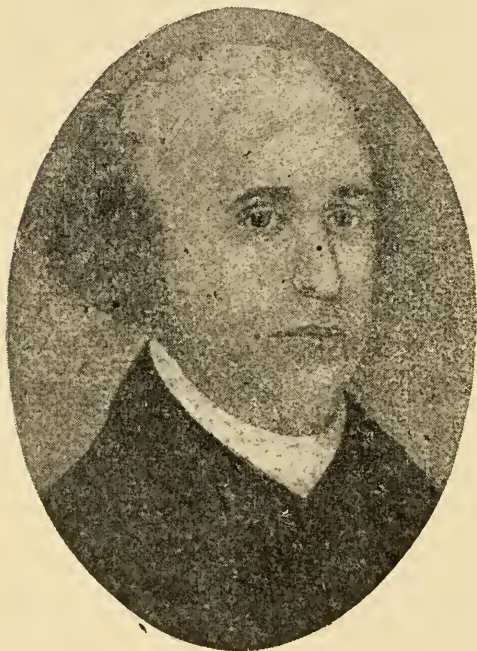
**173. Importance of Victory.** The battle of Fort Moultrie ranks with the most decisive victories of the Revolution. The fact that the invincible British fleet had been defeated by untrained men in a little fort built of sand and palmetto logs gave a great moral impetus to the cause. Many who before had been lukewarm in their enthusiasm for inde-

pendence, were now encouraged to enter whole-heartedly into preparation for the defense of the State. John Rutledge, as President of the State, had approved of manning the fort in spite of the objections of the experienced general of the American forces, Charles Lee, and Carolinians had by themselves fought the battle and won the victory. The glory of Fort Moultrie is due entirely to the valor of her own sons. By this victory the Southern expedition of the British fleet was brought to naught and war was kept from South Carolina for nearly three years.

**174. Loyalist and Indian Uprising Quelled.** Before the battle of Fort Moultrie a plan had been formed by Governor Campbell, and Stuart and Cameron, the Indian agents, to land a British army in Florida, which, uniting with the loyalists in Florida and the Indians of the South Carolina frontier, would fall upon the Up-Country of South Carolina on the same day that the British fleet attacked Sullivan's Island. Simultaneously with the battle of Fort Moultrie, they commenced their massacres upon the frontiers. This invasion was marked by the usual barbarities of Indian warfare. Poorly provided with arms, the borderers betook themselves to stockade forts. Colonel Williamson, who was charged with the defense of the "Back Country", soon found himself at the head of 1,200 men. He advanced upon a loyalist and Indian force at Oconee Creek. His approach was known, an ambuscade laid for him, and he found himself in the thick of a desperate conflict. His horse was shot under him and his army was thrown into disorder. It was rallied by Lieut. Colonel LeRoy Hammond; the thicket was charged and the day retrieved. Marching through the Indian settlement, Williamson destroyed their crops and villages. All their settlements east of the Appalachian mountains were laid waste; and, to avoid starvation, 500 of their warriors fled to join the Royal-

ists in Florida. The conquest of the country was complete, and the Cherokees sued for peace. They were compelled to give to South Carolina all their lands beyond the mountains of Unacaya. These lands form the present flourishing counties of Greenville, Anderson, Oconee, and Pickens.

**175. The Declaration of Independence.** On the 28th of June, 1776, the same day upon which the British fleet was



Colonel William Thomson, Who Prevented the British from Crossing Breach Inlet to Attack the Fort on Sullivan's Island by Land.

attacking the little palmetto fort on Sullivan's Island, a declaration of separation from Great Britain was being debated in the third Continental Congress which was being held in Philadelphia. In this Congress South Carolina was represented by Edward Rutledge (brother to President John Rutledge of South Carolina); Thomas Lynch; his son, Thomas Lynch, Jr.; Arthur Middleton; and Thomas Heyward, Jr. It must be understood that the American provinces

still hoped for reconciliation with Great Britain. They had made a determined stand for their liberties, but they wanted to make this stand within the dominion of the mother country—that is, they wished to force England to abandon her objectionable policy toward them. Only a few daring spirits like Christopher Gadsden had been outspoken in their desire for a separation. The government set up in

South Carolina was only a temporary one, made in the hope of a future adjustment of difficulties with Great Britain. So many citizens were opposed to separation that the South Carolina delegates in the Continental Congress were afraid to agree to a Declaration of Independence. However, with many misgivings at committing South Carolina to so dangerous a course, on the 4th of July, they voted to adopt, and signed their names to the document. This they did in ignorance of the battle of Fort Moultrie, which had taken place six days before. It was a great relief to them to learn that Great Britain had been the aggressor.

**176. General Lee's Expedition into Florida.** General Lee, who by this time had taken to himself all the glory of the battle of Fort Moultrie, now undertook an expedition for the conquest of Florida, which had not joined the revolutionists. Lee marched a force of Virginia and North Carolina troops to the Ogeechee River, whither the South Carolina troops followed. He marched headlong, without clothing, medicine chest, or provisions. At Sanbury the average mortality in his camp was fifteen deaths a day. Luckily Lee was recalled to New York and the expedition abandoned. His mismanagement left the South in greater distress than ever, having cost it more men than all the assaults of the enemy.

**177. South Carolina Undisturbed.** For more than two years after the battle of Fort Moultrie, the arms of the British were chiefly employed at the North. Britain, at no time, had in America more than 75,000 men; and, to scatter these over the entire country was to render them useless. It was necessary that she should first possess herself of the North, before she could spare the necessary forces for the conquest of the South. During this interval, South Carolina escaped most of the sufferings of war, beyond those which followed from the red men of her borders and the



sullen discontent of her loyalist frontier population. In the meantime, Charles Town enjoyed a lucrative commerce, and its people grew prosperous. In 1777 and 1778 it was the mart which supplied with goods most of the States south of New Jersey. An extensive inland traffic sprang into existence with northern towns, in consequence of the presence of the British fleets along the coasts of Virginia and New York. In this traffic, more than a thousand wagons were employed.

**178. Aids to the Cause.** South Carolina set about building a little fleet with which to open trade with the Dutch and West Indies. In this way she was able to supply herself and the other colonies with many necessities, for the lack of which they would have suffered great hardships. She also supplied her quota of men for the Continental Army at the North, for though South Carolina had enjoyed peace and prosperity for more than two years within her borders, she had not been inactive, nor wanting in any enterprise which might contribute to the common cause. Fifty men of her first regiment of land forces volunteered, as marines, on board the frigate Randolph; and there went forth with this unfortunate frigate, on a cruise, the Polly, of sixteen guns; the General Moultrie, of eighteen; the Fair American, of fourteen; and the Notre Dame, of sixteen. The Randolph, after a few weeks at sea, encountered at night the British ship Yarmouth, and, in the bloody conflict between them, blew up, losing all her crew save three men.

**179. The New Constitution.** In 1778, the General Assembly of South Carolina established a new Constitution for the State to take the place of the temporary Constitution of 1776. In this Constitution, they replaced the Council, which savored too strongly of the royal regime, with a Senate, and, at the same time, dissolved the connection of the Church of England (the Episcopal Church) with the

State. Up to this time the church had been supported by the government as was the custom in the mother country. This was now deemed unfair as there were many other denominations in the State which received no aid from the government. The new Constitution abjured all allegiance to Britain and acknowledged fealty only to the State. John Rutledge, President of the State, resigned rather than sign the new Constitution, as he had been elected under the

terms of the temporary Constitution which had not demanded independence. Rawlins Lowndes was elected in his place, and became the second President of South Carolina.



Henry Laurens, President of the Continental Congress.

**180. France Takes a Hand.** The door to a reconciliation with England was closed, however, by a treaty made between France and the Continental Congress by which France recognized the independence of America and agreed that if she should go to war with England that France and the States would make common cause. The States did not relish the idea of accepting the aid of France. South Carolina was especially averse to such an alliance. In recalling the history of South Carolina, we will remember the attack of Monsieur Le Feboure on Charles Town and the fact that the French also incited the Cherokees to war in 1759. Despite this ill feeling, Congress thought it necessary to accept aid from France on account of the feeble resources of the States. The recognition of the independence of America by France in the treaty gave to the Revolution a dignity in Europe which the States could ill afford to refuse.

**181. Rejection of Overtures from England.** A general alarm was felt in England when the news reached it that

an alliance had been formed between her former provinces and France. British arms in the North had been unsuccessful. Burgoyne's army had been captured and the English government felt unable to fight France and the provinces at the same time. Commissioners were sent from England to make terms with the Continental Congress. These commissioners offered many concessions, all the claims from which the war had originated, and a freedom of internal government. Congress, of which Henry Laurens of South Carolina was President, refused these offers, declaring that it would not treat with Great Britain unless she acknowledged the independence of the States and withdrew her army.

The commissioners, having failed before Congress, next attempted to reach the legislatures of the several States. A vessel flying a flag of truce anchored in Charles Town harbor. It brought a letter to the General Assembly from these commissioners. On reading the letter the General Assembly returned it instantly and ordered the vessel to depart from the waters of the State.

In this manner South Carolina rejected the overtures of the British commissioners. From this time forth, the American States were not fighting for their rights under the sovereignty of Great Britain but for their independence as separate States.

## CHAPTER XV.

### THE FALL OF CHARLES TOWN.

**182. Reasons for Transfer.** During the two years' war at the North the British arms had accomplished no permanent results. A new plan of operations was formed accordingly in the fall of 1778. By this plan the theatre of war was to be transferred to South Carolina and Georgia. There were several pressing reasons for this. The British needed the exports of these States which they had for a long time been dependent upon. South Carolina, with her wealth of crops, her captures of rich ships and her trade with the West Indies, had been supplying the northern States which were blockaded by the British. War in the South would prevent this. Again, General Washington would be unable to reach these southern States to aid them as the British controlled the sea, and a great length of time would be required to march Continental troops over the rough, uninhabited country which lay between the North and the South. Finally, it was thought that there were great numbers of loyalists in South Carolina and Georgia who would flock to the British standard when the great British army appeared to protect them.

**183. Military Capacity.** The intention of South Carolina, at the beginning of the war, was to organize a regular army whose soldiers should be paid. The Continental Congress at Philadelphia required from her one soldier for every twenty-five inhabitants. At the most there were 100,000 white people in the State, and from these South Carolina furnished her full quota—4,080 soldiers. Colonel Charles Cotesworth Pinckney and John Laurens, son of Henry Laurens, the President of the Continental Congress, both served as aide-de-camps to General Washington during the



cessation of hostilities in the South. South Carolina had been continually sending powder and arms for the use of the Continental army and had contributed more in money and commodities than any other State in the union except Massachusetts, a State with a much larger population, whose donations exceeded those of South Carolina but little.

Now that the war was to be fought within her borders South Carolina found herself in dire straits. The command of her troops had been given to General Robert Howe, the whole force not exceeding 1,200. The militia could not be depended upon because the law required but one tour of not over sixty days duty in each year. Also, there was much objection by the militia to being put under the control of Continental officers. The Northern army could not reach the South in time. South Carolina was in a feeble condition to resist the British troops. John Laurens and Colonel Pinckney returned post haste at the first news of invasion, and Count Pulaski, a gallant Pole, came with his small legion. This was all the assistance which came from the North.

**184. Fall of Savannah.** An expedition from New York, under Lieutenant Colonel Campbell, effected a landing near Savannah, in December, 1778. Campbell was opposed by General Howe, who rashly resolved to fight him with an inferior force. He discovered a passage through a swamp, by which he got into the rear of Howe, with a large portion of his choice troops. Howe, taken by surprise, was defeated. The capital of Georgia, with all its stores, fell into the hands of the British. That portion of the American army which escaped, crossed the Savannah, and found refuge in South Carolina. General Prevost, meanwhile, crossing the country with all his forces, from Florida, united them in Savannah with those of Campbell. General Howe was ruined forever by this event and General Benjamin Lincoln was placed in command of the army in South Carolina.

**185. Borders of South Carolina Opened.** The loss of Savannah opened the avenues to South Carolina. The troops of Georgia—few at first and thinned by a recent expedition to Florida—were now reduced to merely a nominal force. The arms and ammunition of Georgia were all lost. The loyalists poured out of Florida in the wake of the British army, scattering themselves over middle and upper Georgia, from whence they were beginning to look greedily into South Carolina. The South Carolina loyalists were also beginning to grow restive. Such was the prospect at the beginning of 1779.

**186. Preparations.** The anxieties of the two Carolinas were greatly aroused. The Continental, or regular, force of North Carolina was at the North in Washington's army. North Carolina now raised 2,000 new troops for five months, and put them under Generals Ashe and Rutherford. These were sent to the southward, but they had to look to South Carolina for arms and munitions of war. The North Carolinians were delayed, and only joined the remnant of the army after its retreat across the Savannah. Their timely arrival might have saved Howe.

President Lowndes, of South Carolina, put forth all his energies. An embargo was laid upon all vessels sailing from the State. The cattle from the sea-islands were removed. The militia of the State were drafted in large numbers and marched down to headquarters. They were yet to be drilled. The Continentals in South Carolina, put under Lincoln, did not now exceed 600 men. Lincoln established his first post at Purrysburgh, on the Savannah River, for the purpose of maintaining close watch upon the movements of the British in Georgia.

**187. Attack on Beaufort.** Meanwhile, the British began to feel their way into South Carolina. An advanced corps of some 200 men was detached, under Colonel Gardner, to

take possession of Beaufort. But Gardner was encountered promptly by Moultrie with a force of Charles Town and Beaufort militia. A very sharp battle followed, in which Captains Heyward, Rutledge and Barnwell greatly distinguished themselves. Gardner was defeated, losing nearly



Eutaw Springs Near the Scene of the Battle of That Name.

all his officers and many of his men, and was driven from the island.

**188. Failure of Attack on British.** As the British extended their posts on the south side of the Savannah River, Lincoln made encampments at Black Swamp and opposite Savannah. From these points he crossed the river in two divisions with the view of limiting the operations to the seacoast of Georgia only. In the execution of this design he sent General Ashe with 1,500 North Carolinians and a few Georgians across the river at a point a little above the British army.

Ashe proceeded to Briar Creek where he was surprised on account of the most miserable neglect of military precautions, by Lieutenant Colonel Prevost. The militia, taken in the front and the rear, was thrown into confusion and fled. This disaster deprived Lincoln of one-fourth of his army and opened communication between the British, the loyalists and the Indians of North and South Carolina.

**189. March to Augusta.** John Rutledge became first governor in 1779, under the new Constitution, succeeding President Rawlins Lowndes. At the approach of the British, he had gathered a force of militia about him and encamped at Orangeburgh, a central point between Charles Town and Augusta. Thus, there were several military camps in South Carolina: one at Orangeburgh, one at Purrysburgh, under Lincoln, and one at Black Swamp, under General Rutherford. General Lincoln now decided to take the offensive himself against the British in Georgia, leaving 1,000 men at Purrysburgh and Black Swamp under William Moultrie, the victor at Fort Moultrie in 1776, to prevent the enemy from crossing the Savannah and moving against Charles Town.

Availing himself of the critical moment when Lincoln was 150 miles up the Savannah River with the main force of the Southern army, Prevost, with 4,000 choice troops flanked by several hundred Indians and loyalists, pressed on with all despatch for the capture of Charles Town. Moultrie, left in command of South Carolina troops, contested the British advance at every point. There was a passage at arms at Tulifinny and another at Coosawhatchie Bridge, where Lieutenant Colonel John Laurens, with a small force, opposed the enemy. Laurens was wounded, and lost half of the eighteen Continentals who were with him. He was forced to retreat. Meanwhile, dispatches had been sent to Lincoln. But he could not be persuaded that Pre-



vost's march was anything but a feint designed to divert him from his operations in Georgia.

**190. Devastation.** The country through which Prevost had to pass was singularly defenseless. The white people were few and far between; the negroes numerous. The red men and loyalists scattered themselves along the route searching all the plantations which were known to belong to wealthy planters. They sacked, burned, robbed, and committed all manner of excesses. The seat of the Bull family at Sheldon, distinguished for its owner, General Stephen Bull, was burned. Houses were plundered of their plate, slaves were carried off, and defenseless women brutally treated. As soon as they apprehended the danger to their families, men under Moultrie's command set forth to their homes. Nothing could stay them. Before Moultrie could reach Ashley River half of his army had abandoned him to protect their homes.

**191. Defenses Looked After.** The militia in the vicinity was hurriedly collected. The whole country was in commotion. Moultrie, with the remnant of his thousand militiamen, was hurrying to the defense of the city. Governor Rutledge was pressing down with 600 men, whom he had collected at the rendezvous at Orangeburgh; and Colonel Harris, with a detachment of 250 light-troops, had been despatched by Lincoln, in advance of his own march, to the assistance of the threatened city. These last three bodies reached Charles Town before the British had yet crossed the Ashley; and the troops were drilled, and works were erected against the coming of the enemy.

**192. Demand Surrender.** Accounts differ largely as to the events of the ensuing hours. Prevost waited a day before demanding the surrender of the town. The garrison stood at arms all night expecting the attack to begin at once. Governor Rutledge knew that his feeble force could not

long prevent the entrance. A treaty was proposed. Some writers of the time say that the treaty proposed neutrality until the end of the war when the fate of Charles Town would be determined by the treaty of peace; others that substantial concessions to the city and South Carolina were demanded. It was also said that the governor and Council, hearing that Lincoln was close at hand, offered the treaty only to gain time. For reasons also unknown the treaty proposed was refused by Prevost. Moultrie, however, refused to consider surrendering and prepared himself for attack.

**193. Retreat of the British.** General Lincoln, instead of rushing to the aid of the beleaguered city, unaccountably lingered along the way. By forced marches he could have reached Charles Town at the same time as Prevost. Fortunately, a letter of his to the city telling of his approach was intercepted by Prevost. On the night of the 11th of May, fearing the approach in his rear of a too formidable army under Lincoln, he recrossed the Ashley and hastened down to the sea-islands. The people of Charles Town awakened on the 13th of May to find the enemy gone. It was a day of great rejoicing in the city. For the second time since the war began Charles Town had escaped capture.

**194. The End of Campaign of 1779.** Prevost fell back to Stono Ferry which was within thirty miles of the city and remained there for about a month when he evacuated this post and returned to Savannah. While Prevost was encamped at Stono, General Lincoln attacked him, but was unsuccessful.

A plan was now formed to retake Savannah from the British. Arrangements were made with Count D'Estaing, who, with a French fleet of forty-one sail, had just taken possession of two British islands in the West Indies, to co-operate with General Lincoln in taking Savannah. The

attempt was made October 9, 1779, but failed. Both the French fleet and the land force sustained heavy losses, nearly a thousand men being slain or wounded. Among the South Carolinians who were killed at this siege was Sergeant Jasper, the brave man who replanted the crescent flag on the walls of Fort Moultrie, June 28, 1776. Sergeant Jasper lost his life at Savannah in again trying to save the colors of his regiment. With this unsuccessful attempt the campaign of 1779 ended in the South.

**195. New Attempt at Conquering the South.** Sir Henry Clinton was commander-in-chief of the British forces in America. His plan of campaign was to subdue the southern States and then march from the South to the North. Colonel Campbell and General Prevost had been sent to accomplish this, but having failed to capture Charles Town, Sir Henry determined to come himself. It was thought that once Charles Town was in the hands of the British, many loyalists in South Carolina, North Carolina, and Georgia would join the British and that with these loyalists they would conquer the States from South to North.

Another consideration was the wealth of the State. Prevost's march of vandalism from Savannah to Charles Town had disclosed the fact that the State was rich in resources and that jewels, silver, and plate could be found in abundance. The failure of the attack on Savannah prepared the way for the fall of Charles Town. The departure of the French fleet removed the chief obstacle to this enterprise. There were several other concurring causes that invited the investment of Charles Town. The unfortunate expedition against Florida had totally broken up the Southern army. The South Carolina regiments were thinned by sickness to mere skeletons; the Virginia and North Carolina forces were all melted away, chiefly by the expiration of their time of enlistment. The Georgia regiments filled the prison-

ships of the invaders. The possession of Georgia by the British disarmed the patriotic citizens, and gave strength and activity to the royalists and Indians. South Carolina was, in brief, a frontier hemmed in on three sides by bitter and uncompromising enemies. The loyalists of North Carolina, Georgia, and Florida; the Indians—always ready for war, which is a kindred life with that of the hunter—were gathering in restless and roving bands upon her borders. The conquest of Charles Town thus promised to be easy. The reduction of the whole State, and, probably, that of North Carolina, would ensue. No obstacle would then remain in the way of an uninterrupted backward path of conquest through Virginia, from the Savannah to the Delaware.

**196. The British Arrive.** In February, 1780, Clinton arrived in South Carolina with 13,000 picked troops. He disembarked on John's Island and placed his men in advantageous positions around the back entrance of Charles Town. His ships-of-war at the same time crossed the bar and passing Fort Moultrie with a fair wind, avoided a second combat with that fortress. Colonel Pinckney, who commanded the fort, kept up a brisk fire upon them which inflicted much damage, but the royal fleet came to anchor within long shot of the town batteries. Thereupon the forces at Fort Moultrie were withdrawn to the city and the fort fell into the hands of the enemy. The garrison in Charles Town consisted of not more than 4,000 men who were now to meet the assault of the British army.

**197. The Siege Begins.** The British summoned the town to surrender on the 12th of April. This was refused and the attack was begun. The fire of the besiegers soon showed itself to be far superior to that of the besieged. The British lines continued to approach and by the 20th of April they were within 300 yards of the city. The Americans soon



perceived the hopelessness of their situation. Councils of war were called and terms of capitulation offered the besiegers. These were rejected and the siege was continued.

**198. City at Point of Starvation.** On the 26th of April, a plan of retreat by night was proposed in council but rejected as impracticable. On the 6th of May, Clinton renewed his former terms for the surrender of the garrison. At this time, the provisions of the city were not sufficient for a week's rations. There was no prospect either of supplies or reinforcements. The engineers admitted that the lines could not be maintained ten days longer, and might be carried by assault in ten minutes. General Lincoln was disposed to accept Clinton's offer, but he was opposed by the citizens, who were required by Clinton to be considered prisoners on parole. To their suggestion of other terms, they received for answer that hostilities should be renewed at eight o'clock.

**199. The Last Stand.** At nine in the evening, the batteries of the garrison were reopened, and being answered by those of the British, the fight was resumed with more vigor than had been displayed at any time from the beginning of the siege. Ships and galleys, the forts on James' and John's Islands, on Wappoo Cut, and the main army on the neck, united in one voluminous discharge of iron upon the garrison. Shells were thrown incessantly into the town, in all quarters, and it was everywhere covered by the cannon of the assailants. The city was on fire in several places; and, by this time, the parties were within speaking distance of each other, and the rifles of the Hessian Yagers were fired at so short a distance as never to be discharged without effect. The defenders could no longer show themselves above the lines with safety. A hat raised upon a cane was instantly riddled with bullets.

**200. Surrender.** On the 12th of May, the British advanced within twenty-five yards of the lines. All further defense was hopeless. Lincoln was obliged to capitulate. For nearly three months, with less than 3,000 ill-fed, ill-clad men, some undisciplined, he had maintained himself in walls, the lines of which required at least three times that number to man them. He had thus long withstood fully 12,000 of the best troops in the British service headed by their best generals. The terms of surrender were not harsh in the case of a town reduced to extremity.

## CHAPTER XVI.

### RISEING OF THE PARTISANS.

**201. South Carolina in British Hands.** Under the terms of capitulation it was agreed that the militia in Charles Town should be allowed to go home as prisoners of war on parole. The Continental troops were to be held prisoners until exchanged. The citizens of the city were to be regarded as prisoners of war. Before the city fell, Governor Rutledge escaped with the purpose of making his way into North Carolina. About a dozen officers and soldiers of the Continental line were not captured when Charles Town fell because they were on various missions in the country or on sick leave. The militia throughout the State followed the example of the regular forces and surrendered. Among the militia officers who thus surrendered were General Andrew Williamson and Colonel Andrew Pickens. Sir Henry Clinton wrote back to London: "I may venture to assert that there are few men in South Carolina who are not either our prisoners or in arms with us."

At this crisis in the affairs of the State news came through John Mathews, who was representing South Carolina in the Continental Congress in Philadelphia, that the question of sacrificing South Carolina, North Carolina, and Georgia to save the northern States was being considered in the Congress, it being thought that an agreement could be reached with England by which their independence would be secured if they would consent to leave her in undisputed possession of the southern States. This news aroused the utmost indignation in South Carolina. It was looked upon as the basest treachery. If abandoned by the Congress it was felt that its cause was hopeless. The State was in the hands of the British. The chief city had fallen, almost the

entire militia had surrendered to the enemy; the southern Continental army was cooped in prison in Charles Town, and its leaders in the war were under parole. The patriot cause in South Carolina was represented now by one man, Governor Rutledge, who had escaped in the night from Charles Town to North Carolina.

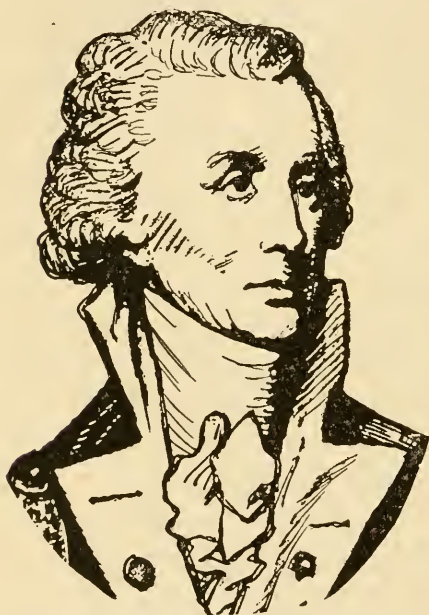
**202. Establishing British Posts.** Sir Henry Clinton, upon the capture of Charles Town, made his plans to return to New York, leaving Lord Cornwallis in command of the State. Lord Cornwallis sent Lieutenant Colonel Balfour along the Congaree to Ninety Six and Lieutenant Colonel Brown up the Savannah to Augusta to establish posts at these points. He himself, Lord Rawdon, and Colonel Tarleton with the largest portion of the British army crossed the Santee and moved to Camden. Georgetown, Beaufort, and Savannah were garrisoned by British soldiers. The citizens of these towns, on hearing of the approach of the British, hastened to apply for protection on the same terms which had been granted the fallen city of Charles Town. The State was now prostrate.

**203. Tarleton's Massacre.** Colonel Buford, who with a Virginia Continental regiment of about 400 men was on his way to relieve Charles Town, heard of the fall of the city and at the approach of the British attempted to escape into North Carolina. Cornwallis, learning of his flight, sent Colonel Tarleton in pursuit. Tarleton came upon Buford near the Waxhaws. A battle ensued in which Buford was completely defeated. His troops cried for quarter, but this plea produced no effect upon the assailants. A terrible butchery followed. Wounded men who had fallen were inhumanly mutilated while the life was still in their bodies. The battle equaled an Indian massacre in its brutality. Buford's little force was cut to pieces while the British lost scarcely a dozen men. The people of the Waxhaws settle-



ment carried the wounded to their homes, but so horribly were they mangled that but few survived.

**204. Effect of the Massacre.** The tragedy of this fearful massacre impressed itself deeply upon the minds of these people of the Waxhaws who, indifferent to the grievances of the people of the Low-Country, had not joined them in rebellion. It was a shock to them to see such an exhibition of inhumanity. "Tarleton's quarter" became proverbial.



General Thomas Sumter, Commander After the Fall of Charles Town of All the Militia of South Carolina.

The massacre aroused a spirit of revenge which was augmented by alarming reports from all parts of the State of the rapacious plundering of the British armies. Commanders openly shared in the proceeds of the plunder. Thousands of slaves were shipped to a market in the West Indies. Mercantile stores, gold and silver plate, indigo, the produce of the country, were taken. They plundered by system, forming a general stock, and designating commissaries of captures. Spoil, collected in this way,

was sold for the benefit of the royal army, apart from what was sold in South Carolina, several vessels were sent abroad for market, laden with property taken from Carolinians.

In this pillaging the British made the mistake of not distinguishing between friends and foes. They plundered the property of the Scotch Presbyterians who were indif-

ferent to the contest. The soldiers were turned loose to commit their depredations against these Scotch as well as the rebels. Their churches were burnt, their ministers insulted. Thus this element in the State was antagonized and converted into implacable enemies of the crown.

This discontent was crystalized into open resistance by a proclamation of the British which released the citizens of the State from the paroles which they had given and required them to swear allegiance to the king and to take up arms against those of their countrymen who were still resisting British forces in America. South Carolinians considered this a violation of the promise made them upon capitulation that they should be prisoners upon parole during the remainder of the war. They were not willing to take arms under the British standard.

**205. South Carolinians Aroused.** The South Carolinians, now released from their paroles, were roused to vengeance for the treatment which they were receiving at the hands of the British. New leaders sprang up who had not been active in the discussions which preceded the Revolution. These, with the encouragement of Governor Rutledge, who was now in Philadelphia begging aid from Congress, came into the field and achieved the salvation of South Carolina. It is said that without the aid of these partisan leaders of South Carolina the independence of America would never have been gained.

We shall see now a change in the theatre of war in South Carolina from the region along the coast to the Piedmont. The campaign begins in the summer of 1780 on the border line of North and South Carolina and is carried on by men who have taken the field of their own accord and not at the direction of the State government. Steadily, though with many discouraging reverses, we shall see these partisans driving the British from their established posts in the Up-

Country until by the end of 1781 the enemy is cooped up in Charles Town. The leaders of the Continental forces in South Carolina achieved no marked successes. But for the assistance rendered them by the partisan militia troops of the State they would probably have been driven from the State or captured by the British.

The commanding officers of the three brigades of militia of the State who directed the operations of these self drafted patriots were Thomas Sumter, Francis Marion, and Andrew Pickens.



General Francis Marion, Commander  
of the Lower Brigade of Militia.

#### **206. Thomas Sumter.**

Thomas Sumter had come to South Carolina as an Indian trader about the time of the outbreak of the Cherokee War. Soon after that war ended he engaged in planting on the Santee River. At the beginning of the Revolution, Sumter was an officer in

the Camden District regiment of militia and served as adjutant in the "Snow Camp" expedition. In February, 1776, he was elected commandant of the South Carolina regiment, which subsequently became the Sixth Continental regiment, and participated in Thomson's defeat of Clinton, at Breach Inlet, June 28, 1776. He resigned from the Continental service in 1778, and was without a command until the summer of 1780 when he was conspicuous in reorganizing the militia troops of the eastern part of the State. These

troops requested Governor Rutledge to appoint him brigadier general which the governor did, giving him command of all the militia of the State.

Sumter was a large man and possessed great strength. He was distinguished for his fearlessness and his unbending patriotism. He was a great fighter and always heedless of personal danger. He often rushed into battle ill prepared and with inferior force, and vanquished the enemy by sheer audacity. With these characteristics we can readily see how he soon earned for himself the soubriquet of "Gamecock."

**207. Francis Marion.** General Marion served in the Cherokee War in 1760-61, and was Major of the 2nd Regiment at the battle of Fort Moultrie. He was one of the defenders of Charles Town at the invasion of Prevost, and had fought at Savannah when the Carolinians, with the aid of Count D'Estaing, had unsuccessfully besieged that town. He had also been at Charles Town when it was last besieged by Clinton, but, fortunately for South Carolina, sprained an ankle, got a furlough before the surrender of the city, and went to his plantation. Upon the approach of a Continental army to South Carolina, Marion was ordered to report to the commander of that army, Baron DeKalb, at Hillsboro, N. C., which order he, along with other Continental officers not on parole, immediately complied with. Soon afterward, General Horatio Gates superseded DeKalb in command of the Continental army. Gates ordered Marion to proceed to the Santee River, to gather the militia thereabouts, and to patrol the crossings of the river to prevent the escape of the British army towards Charles Town. Shortly after this Marion reorganized the Craven County regiment of militia. With detachments from this force from time to time he defeated or captured small parties of the enemy. In November, 1780, Governor Rutledge appointed him Brigadier



general of the lower brigade of South Carolina militia. It was in this capacity that he became famous.

Marion, who had a marked gift for strategy, was small and wiry with an extremely lithe figure. He was hardy and strong with a stern cast of feature. He camped in the thick-  
nesses of the swamps where he subjected his men to rigid

discipline. Marion was thoroughly familiar with the hiding places in the woods in the Peedee section where his home was, and after an attack would fall into retirement where he could be discovered by neither friend nor foe. Because of this method of warfare, he was known as the "Swamp Fox."



General Andrew Pickens, Commander of the Upper Brigade of Militia.

### 209. Andrew Pickens.

Andrew Pickens began his career in the Revolution as a captain in the Ninety Six District Regiment, under Colonel Andrew Williamson. When Williamson became brigadier general,

Pickens was made a colonel. At the time Charles Town fell and the British overran the State, Williamson and Pickens both surrendered and were paroled. Subsequently, they took the oath of allegiance, regarding the British conquest of South Carolina as complete. Soon after taking the oath of allegiance, a British force raided the plantation of Colonel Pickens and carried off horses and other property. Taking this act as a violation on the part of

the British of the terms of his oath of allegiance, he resumed activities against them. So successful were these activities that in January, 1781, Governor Rutledge appointed him brigadier general of the upper brigade of militia.

**209. Partisan Border Warfare.** In the meanwhile, under British auspices, the Loyalists, or Tories, as they were called, grew active and audacious on the North Carolina border. A large body of these in North Carolina had collected at Ramsour's Mill in that State under Colonel Moore. A detachment of General Rutherford's militia attacked and defeated them. Friends and neighbors, some styled patriots, some Tories, fought one another. It was said that during the battle neighbors recognized each other. This defeat completely crushed the Tory element in North Carolina.

South Carolina was having a more difficult time putting down the Tories within her borders. Soon after the massacre of Buford's troops by Tarleton, word came that the Tories had gathered at Mobley's Meeting House near Winnsboro. Colonel Bratton and Captain McLure with a party of patriots dispersed these. Tories at Beckham's Old Field, in what is now Chester County, had also been scattered by hastily gathered bodies of patriots. The people were now fully aroused and determined to fight to the death the British and their allies, the Tories.

**210. Sumter Returns.** After the battle of Ramsour's Mill, General Sumter applied to the Assembly of North Carolina for the wagons, horses, and provisions which had been captured from the Tories in that battle. This was granted, and rallying his little force, which he strengthened by volunteers from North Carolina, he returned to his own State at the very moment when the cause of its liberty seemed almost hopeless.

The attitude of this forlorn few was no less melancholy than gallant. The British were everywhere triumphant—the Americans despondent—the State being without any domestic government, and utterly unable to furnish arms, clothing, or provisions to this little band.

Seldom did patriots take the field with so few encouragements or so many difficulties. The iron tools of the neighboring farms were worked up into rude weapons of war by ordinary blacksmiths. The partisans supplied themselves, in part, with bullets by melting the pewter which was given them by housewives. Sometimes they came into battle with less than three rounds to a man; and one-half were obliged to keep at a distance until supplied with arms by the fall of comrades or enemies. When victorious, they relied upon the dead for the ammunition for their next campaign.

With this little band, Sumter returned to the State and established himself in what is now Lancaster County. In the two bloody years which followed he was to be a terror to the British forces which garrisoned the country between the Saluda and the Catawba.

**211. South Carolina a Hotbed of Resistance.** While Sumter made raids between Ninety Six and Camden, other leaders, including Davie, Bratton, McLure, Hill, Neal, Clark, Hammond, and many others, who, with their little troops of volunteers, intercepted convoys of provisions to the British force, fell upon their advance guards and harassed them in every possible fashion. Between the middle of July and the middle of August twelve regular engagements had taken place in which about 300 British and Tories had been killed and about 200 taken prisoners.

**212. Engagement at Williamson's Plantation.** The first of these engagements was fought on the 12th of July at Williamson's plantation, in what is now York County. This place was in the possession of Captain Huck, a British sol-

dier noted for his cruelty. He had a detachment of Tories under his command and had camped at several plantations where he had committed numerous outrages. Reports of his march being brought to Sumter's camp he detached Colonel Bratton and Captain McLure to make an attack. The British and Tories, not expecting an enemy, were posted at a disadvantage in a lane, both ends of which were entered at the same time by Sumter's men. Huck was killed and his troops completely routed. Another band of patriots defeated the British with heavy loss at Cedar Springs, in what is now Spartanburg County.

### **213. Engagements at Rocky Mount and Hanging Rock.**

The success of Sumter and of the officers acting under him rallied around him the people of the neighborhood and his little force soon amounted to 600 men. At the head of this force, on the 30th of July, he made a spirited, but unsuccessful, attack on the British post at Rocky Mount. Baffled in this attempt, he passed without delay to the attack of another post at the Hanging Rock, at which a large force of regulars and Tories were stationed. Here his assault was more successful. The Prince of Wales' regiment was annihilated and the Tories under Colonel Bryan, of North Carolina, were totally routed and dispersed.

### **214. Success of the Partisans.**

These successes of Sumter and others tended greatly to encourage the Carolinians, and to abate the panic which had been occasioned by the fall of Charles Town. Little partisan bands rose in arms in every section of the State—falling upon British and Tories whenever there was reasonable prospect of success, and pressing from point to point wherever they heard of the appearance of the loyalist or British party. The sudden appearance in the field of such men as Sumter and Marion, almost simultaneously in so many different parts of the State, at once disconcerted the British. In less than six





The Battle of Camden at Which Gates Was Defeated. Showing the Death of the Brave Baron DeKalb.

weeks after the fall of Charles Town, hundreds of bold and daring champions had sprung up, like the dragon's teeth, from the soil, and each of them had achieved some notable successes.

**215. In the Peedee.** The people in the country adjacent to the Peedee were suffering greatly from the atrocities of the British and the Tories. Houses had been burnt, plantations laid waste, store-houses pillaged, murders committed, and many outrages perpetrated upon the inhabitants. Lieutenant Colonel Marion, returning from North Carolina, took this section as his theatre of action. The militia of this region had already arisen and Marion was invited to take command of the little force that had gathered. On the 12th of August, they attacked a large body of British and Tories at Port's Ferry and routed them successfully. This was the last of the twelve battles which began with the engagement at Williamston's plantation on the 12th of July. These were the only engagements recorded, but there was scarcely a thicket or swamp in the Peedee, the Waxhaws, or the district between the Saluda and the Catawba which was not marked by a skirmish.

**216. The Coming of General Gates.** News came that General Gates of the Continental Army was on the march to the aid of South Carolina. There was great rejoicing at this. South Carolina, however, was already fighting her own battles bravely. Volunteer bands had sprung up in the night like mushrooms, and officers without commissions, pay, provisions, or even necessary clothing, were leading them daily to little victories. Marion in the Peedee, and Sumter, and others, in the upper part of the State had prepared the way for the coming of General Gates. All expected to join under his leadership and win a decisive victory which would turn the tide of war in favor of the Carolinians.



**217. The March to Camden.** While the siege of Charles Town was impending, some fourteen hundred Continentals



Monument to Baron DeKalb in Camden.

had been ordered by Congress to its relief. They were confided to the command of Major General Baron DeKalb, a

brave German and an officer of the French army. But, lacking means of transportation, without cash or credit, the progress of these troops had been too slow for the succor of the besieged city. They were still on the march when the tidings were received of the fall of Charles Town. The army was halted at Hillsboro, N. C., where DeKalb was superseded in command by General Gates, who had achieved fame by capturing Burgoyne's army at Saratoga. Gates had no sooner arrived than he issued orders to his troops to hold themselves in readiness for marching, and on the 27th of July the army was under way, over a barren country, in direct opposition to the counsel of all his officers. The troops were without provisions and clothes, many without arms, and suffering from fatigue. Still, the army was increased in its progress by accessions, from Virginia and the Carolinas, of lean detachments; and with a little delay to permit of the coming of the militia, and the procuring of arms and supplies, it might have been swollen to a very respectable force of four or five thousand men. Sanguine of success, Gates pressed on, reaching Clermont on the High Hills of the Santee on the 13th of August.

**218. Sumter Surprises British Convoy.** Here Gates was informed by General Sumter of the advance of a considerable convoy of British wagons on the route from McCord's Ferry to Camden and was solicited by that brave partisan for a small reinforcement to enable him to capture them. Four hundred men were detached on this service. Sumter surprised the convoy successfully and took 100 prisoners. With the prisoners and supplies in his possession he retreated up the Catawba River.

**219. On to Camden.** Gates now put his army under marching orders to Camden, where the British maintained a strong force under Lord Rawdon. Gates was in ignorance of several facts which it was of infinite importance that he



should have known. He did not know that by forced marches Lord Cornwallis had reached Camden from Charles Town, bringing with him a considerable detachment. With a picked force of more than two thousand men Cornwallis took up his line of march from Camden to meet his enemy at the very hour when Gates left Clermont. Gates had given himself little time to learn anything and had committed a variety of blunders. He hurried his men when fatigued, without necessity, and commenced a night movement with untried militia in the face of an enemy.

**220. The Defeat of Gates.** The battle began with the dawn of day on August 16th and ended in the utter defeat of Gates. The artillery was lost; the cavalry swallowed up in the woods and the regular infantry reduced to a mere point in the field. DeKalb fell, Gates fled, and Cornwallis, observing that there was no cavalry opposed to him, poured in his dragoons, now returning from pursuit of the fugitives, and ended the contest.

The Americans lost the whole of their artillery, upward of two hundred wagons, and all their baggage. The loss of the British, in killed and wounded, was about three hundred.

**221. The British Surprise Sumter.** Sumter, retreating up the Catawba after his capture of the convoy, was pursued by Tarleton. His movements were necessarily greatly impeded. He had with him forty baggage-wagons, filled with booty of the very kind that the Americans were most in need of, and was encumbered by 300 prisoners. Tarleton, never relaxing his pursuit a moment, succeeded in overtaking him. He came suddenly upon the camp of the Americans, near Fishing Creek, and a complete surprise was effected. The British cavalry burst upon the militiamen when there was not a man standing to his arms, and threw themselves between the men and the parade where their muskets were stacked. The carnage was dreadful, and the aggregate loss

in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was very little short of that sustained by Gates in his defeat at Camden.

Sumter himself had the good fortune to escape; but very few of his officers or men got off. South Carolina was in much worse condition than before the arrival of General Gates.

This is one of several instances of blundering of Continental officers of high rank. In 1776, if President Rutledge had heeded the Continental general, Lee, Fort Moultrie would have been abandoned and that splendid victory lost. In May, 1779, Charles Town had almost fallen by General Lincoln's unwise march to Augusta, thus opening the way for General Prevost, and in August, 1780, General Gates had brought defeat at Camden by his lack of foresight.

## CHAPTER XVII.

### PARTISANS TURN THE TIDE.

**222. Battle of Musgrove Mill.** A British post had been established at Musgrove's Mill, in what is now Laurens County. About the time of the ignominious defeat of Gates at Camden a plan was formed in a patriot camp, in what is now York County, to attack this post. The British and loyalists learning of the proposed attack went forward to meet it. They fell into an ambuscade which the patriots had laid for them. Taken by surprise, the regulars fled, breaking through the fiery circle of the ambuscade at a great loss of life. The militiamen were left to their fate. The British lost over 200 in killed, wounded, and prisoners.

Colonel Ferguson, near Camden, hearing of the defeat, immediately started in pursuit of the victorious patriots, but by a forced march they escaped into North Carolina before they could be attacked.

**223. Marion in the Peedee.** Marion was busy in the Peedee at this time. Like Sumter, utterly unfurnished with the means of war at first, he procured them in the same manner. He took possession of the saws from the mills and converted them into sabres. For weeks, his force did not exceed seventy-five; sometimes they were reduced to one-third that number. All were volunteers from the militia.

Yet, even with this inconsiderable band, he maintained his ground, secure amidst hundreds of enemies. For months, their only shelter was the green wood and the swamp. Hardened by exposure, and stimulated by the strongest of motives of patriotism, they sallied forth from these hiding-places when their presence was least expected, and the first tidings of their approach were conveyed in the flashing sabre and the whizzing shot. They were perpetually en-

gaged in skirmishes which history does not record, and which are only cherished in local tradition. Marion led his followers from thicket to thicket in safety. He hung upon the enemy's flanks along the march; he skirted his camp in the darkness of the night; he lay in wait for his foraging parties; he shot down his sentries, and never failed to harass the invader and extort from him a bloody toll at every passage through swamp, thicket, or river, which his smaller parties made.

**224. Capture of Prisoners.** Marion, hearing that some prisoners, taken at the defeat of Gates, about one hundred and fifty in number, were on the march to Charles Town under a strong escort, determined upon their rescue. Placing his mounted militia in ambush, he darted upon the escort and succeeded in taking the whole party captive. Having put the arms of the British into the hands of the rescued Americans he hurried across the Santee and did not pause until his prisoners were safely disposed of within the limits of North Carolina. He was far upon his way before the parties detached by Cornwallis to drive him from his covert had reached the scene of his enterprise.

**225. State Fortunes at Low Ebb.** These small successes were offset by the failure of an expedition under Colonel Clark, in September, to capture the British post at Augusta. Gates had fled to North Carolina after the defeat at Camden. Sumter had also escaped into that State after the loss of the captured stores, and Marion had taken refuge there after his capture of the prisoners. This left no prominent partisans in the State.

In almost every section of the State the progress of the British was marked with blood. Many of the militia were executed on worthless pretexts and most frequently without the form of trial. Private citizens were made close prisoners on board prison ships, where they perished of foul dis-



eases and without attention. From Charles Town alone, after the defeat of Gates, sixty of the principal inhabitants were transported to St. Augustine. Among these was Christopher Gadsden, who had been so instrumental in bringing on the Revolution; Edward Rutledge, who had been one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence; and Dr. David Ramsay, one of the prominent doctors of the State. The fortunes of the State were again at a very low ebb.

Lord Cornwallis, feeling now that South Carolina lay prostrate at his feet, determined to march into North Carolina. This was part of the British plan to proceed from South to North. Cornwallis was not allowed, however, to march unmolested. In his progress through the Waxhaws he was harassed by Major William R. Davie, who, with a small cavalry force, dared to annoy his Lordship at every step of his advance. At Charlotte, Davie made a struggle before he yielded him the town.

Cornwallis, having established himself there, found that he was in a hotbed of rebellion. His foraging parties were set upon by the patriot inhabitants of the neighborhood and he was unbearably annoyed in innumerable ways. One scouting party is said to have reported to Cornwallis on its return that "every bush on the road contained a rebel."

**226. Marion Returns to South Carolina.** Word came to Marion, who, after the capture of the prisoners taken at Camden, had hastily retreated to North Carolina for safety, that the Peedee section, which had been his favorite field of operations, was a scene of desolation and destruction as the result of a march by Major Weymys of the British forces through that region. The houses and churches on the banks of the Peedee, Lynch's Creek and Black River were destroyed by fire, the plantations devastated, the

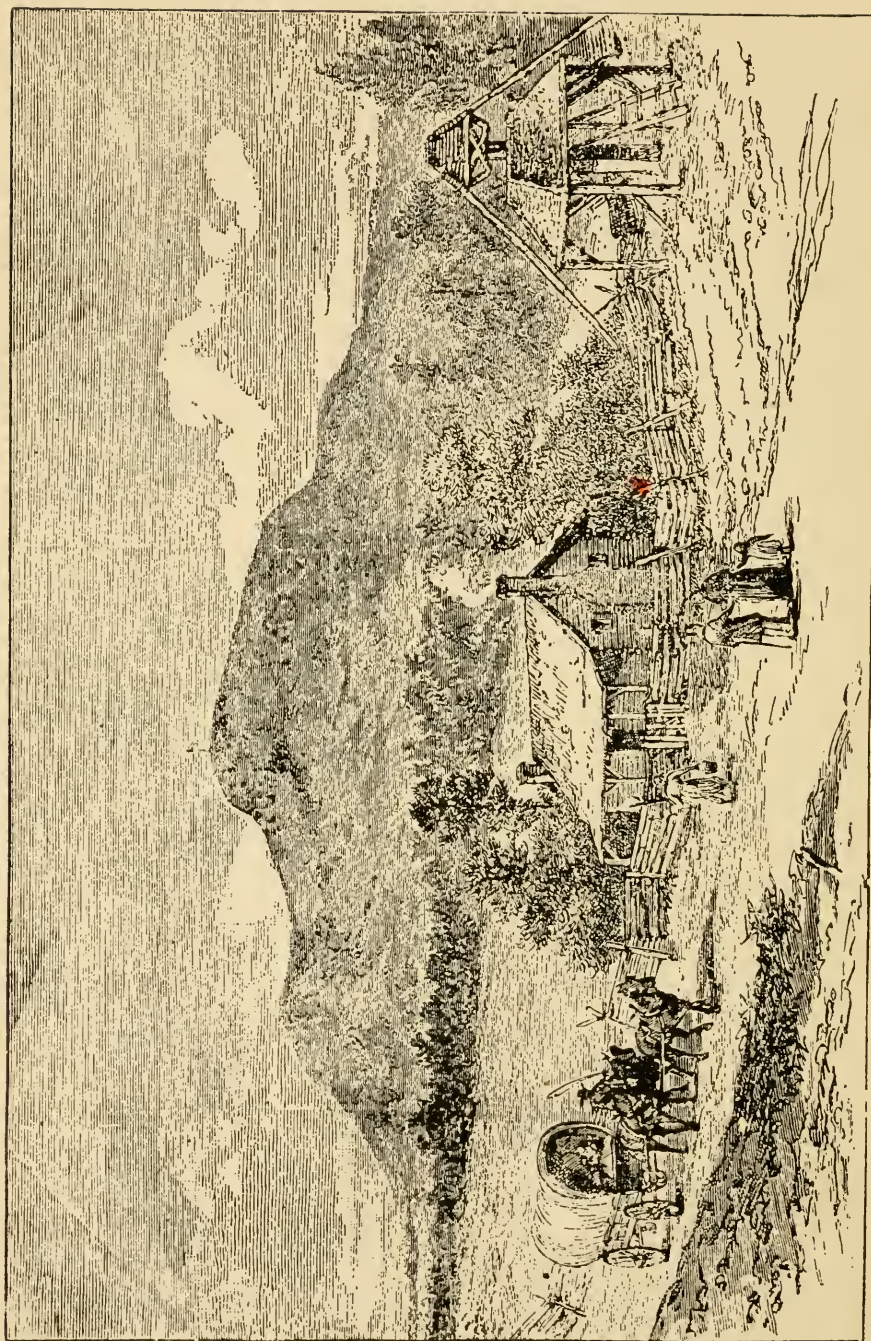
slaves and cattle carried away, loom houses razed to the ground and store houses pillaged. Some of the older inhabitants, men too aged to fight, were hanged and others brutally treated.

Marion, on hearing this news, returned to the State by a forced march. Arriving in the Peedee country, he again began his tactics in the swamps. In the month of September he gained two victories, one at Black Mingo, the other at Tarcote Swamp.

**227. The Mountaineers Arising.** It will be remembered that Colonel Ferguson had pursued the victors of Musgrove Mill, who had fled into North Carolina. He crossed the border in the pursuit, but the patriots had retreated to Watauga, in what is now Tennessee. Ferguson, with 1,500 men, encamped at Gilberttown, North Carolina, and from there sent a messenger to threaten the Watauga camp with devastation if they resisted him. This aroused the mountaineers and they decided to surprise Ferguson in his camp. The Watauga camp was composed of Virginians and North Carolinians. They marched to Gilberttown, but found that Ferguson had retreated into South Carolina. The mountaineers then crossed the line with the intention of joining the South Carolinians.

Being all mounted men, and unincumbered with baggage, their movements were prompt and rapid. Each man set forth with his blanket and rifle, in the manner of a hunter. The several bands thus collected from remote parts rendezvoused at length at Cowpens, in what is now Spartanburg County. There were about 1,500 men thus collected for the pursuit of Ferguson. He, meanwhile, was making his way to unite with Cornwallis. It was important to overtake him before he could effect this junction. Accordingly, 910 of the best mounted of the patriot army were selected for the pursuit. The Americans overtook Ferguson within





King's Mountain Where the Patriots Won a Great Victory.

five or six miles of King's Mountain proper. He occupied one of the lower steps of the mountain, a long narrow ridge thinly covered with woods and easy of ascent. The Americans divided themselves into four bodies, each led by its own colonel. By common consent the general command was confided to Colonel Campbell of Virginia.

**228. Victory for the Patriots.** A simultaneous attack from all quarters was clearly the best method of defeating the enemy. The several divisions accordingly prepared themselves to ascend the ridge, advancing under cover of the trees and delivering their fire as they came. In this way they all proceeded to ascend the hill at nearly the same moment. The plans of the mountaineers, though simple, were singularly effective. Ferguson's men fell around him on every side. Still he refused to surrender. His shrill silver whistle was heard over all the noises of the combat, and he sped from side to side with invincible determination. The conflict was ended only by his fall.

The havoc had been terrible on the side of the British. Thirteen hundred men were killed, wounded, and captured, but 200 escaping. Fifteen hundred stands of arms fell into the hands of the Americans. They lost but few men. Without Continental leaders the patriots had led themselves to victory.

**229. Return of Cornwallis.** On learning the result of the battle of King's Mountain, Lord Cornwallis beat a hasty retreat into South Carolina, realizing that the State that he had thought conquered was still active in defense. General Sumter had established himself near Charlotte in order to harass the British commander. The sharp-shooters of the Carolinas penetrated the very lines of Cornwallis, and, under the shelter of shrub, tree, and hillock, picked off his sentries. Such was their audacity, that, on his march from Charlotte to Winnsboro, a single rifleman would often ride



up within gunshot of his army, single out his victim, and, having discharged his piece, ride off in safety.

**230. Pursuing the "Swamp Fox" and the "Game Cock."**

Marion was so active in the Peedee country where he camped on Snow Island, in intercepting British convoys and in falling unexpectedly upon the enemy, that Cornwallis, as soon as he reached Winnsboro, sent Tarleton to pursue him. Marion, learning of his superiority in numbers, eluded him warily, and Tarleton, bogging in the swamps in vain search of him, finally gave up the quest. He turned his attention to Sumter who was encamped near Fishdam Ford, in what is now Union County. Spies informed Tarleton of the exact position of the patriot camp and of its strength. Tarleton despatched Major Weymys to surprise it.

Fortunately, Sumter had given more than usual strength to his advance guard. Fires had been lighted in front of his line, and his men were ordered, in case of alarm, to form so far in the rear of the fires, as to be concealed, while the approaching enemy would be conspicuous in their light.

The videttes and pickets did their duty, and the guard was ready to receive the attack. The British were driven from the field. Weymys fell into the hands of the patriots. In Major Weymys' pocket was found a list of the houses he had destroyed in the Peedee section.

**231. Battle of Blackstocks.** After this affair Sumter left Fishdam and was pursued by Tarleton with the headlong haste which marked all the movements of that warrior. He came upon General Sumter at Blackstocks on the 20th of November, 1780. Learning that all of Tarleton's forces had not come up with him, Sumter began the assault. The result was a victory for the patriots: Tarleton had 92 killed and 100 wounded. The patriots had three wounded and one killed, but one of the wounded was General Sumter, who received a severe wound in the breast which kept him

some length of time from service. Cornwallis congratulated Tarleton upon disabling Sumter, saying that the latter had certainly been his "greatest plague in this country."

**232. The Close of the Year 1780.** The year 1780 was nearing its close. News came that General Nathanael Greene had been appointed to succeed Gates in command of the Continental army in the South. Since the defeat at Camden, Gates had lain idle at Hillsboro, North Carolina, with the remnant of his army, while the partisans had been fighting almost daily in South Carolina. During 1780, there had been thirty-four separate battles fought in this State and fighting one day in every four of the year. In only eight of these battles Continental troops had been engaged, while the other twenty-six had been fought by the partisans without governmental aid or pay. After each battle these volunteers would return to their homes to see after their families, meeting again on some appointed day. These partisans had killed, wounded, or captured 2,486 of the British and had kept Cornwallis from leaving the State and pursuing his triumphant march toward the North. This was of the greatest importance to the cause of independence as the American army in the North could not have withstood the combined British armies of the North and South.

**233. Arrival of General Greene.** General Greene arrived in Charlotte in December, 1780. He brought only himself to the aid of the South. No army came with him to resist the British who had 5,000 men, exclusive of loyalists, stationed at their various posts in this State.

General Greene established himself near the present site of the town of Cheraw in order to recruit his little army and to mature his plans.

**234. Three December Victories.** On Greene's arrival, he was greeted with the good news of the surrender of a British

force under Colonel Rugeley to Colonel William Washington, who had been detached for that purpose by Morgan.

Washington showed himself on December 4th, 1780, before the British post near Camden which was held by Rugeley, a colonel of militia, whose genius for war was singularly undeveloped for one of his rank. The post was a stockade, garrisoned by about 100 men. Washington was without artillery; but, eager to get possession, he resorted to stratagem in the absence of the proper arms. A pine log, hewn to resemble a cannon, was mounted on a pair of wagon wheels and brought up in view of the stockade with due formalities by Washington's men. With his stockade menaced by the pine log field piece, Rugeley surrendered at the first summons.

A second victory had been won by Colonel Washington at Hammond's Store, in what is now Abbeville County, where a large party of Tories was put to flight, 150 of whom were slain.

The third success in December was achieved at Williamson's plantation, in what is now York County. This place is known as the scene of the first of the partisan battles which took place on the 12th of July previously. At the second battle, Robert Cuninghame, the man who had stirred up so much trouble in the "Back Country" in 1775, was in command of about one hundred and fifty Tories. These were put to flight by a detachment from Colonel Washington's command. The stockade with its provisions was destroyed.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

### PARTISANS CAPTURE BRITISH POSTS.

**235. The Battle of Cowpens.** The three successes in December seriously excited the apprehensions of Cornwallis for the safety of the post at Ninety Six and he ordered Tarleton to throw himself across the path of Morgan, whose force numbered 1,000 men. Tarleton prepared to obey with accustomed celerity. Morgan determined to wait the approach of the enemy at Cowpens.

The battle took place on the 15th of February, 1781, and ended in victory for the Americans. The main body of the militia was under General Andrew Pickens, who had broken his parole and returned to the service and had been appointed brigadier general of the upper brigade. It is said that the bravery of the militia at Cowpens with the unerring aim of their fire gained the battle. Eight hundred stands of arms, two field pieces and thirty-five baggage wagons fell into the hands of the Americans. The battle of Cowpens marked the beginning of the campaign of 1781.

**236. Marion's Activity.** The beginning of 1781 found Marion still active in the Peedee. From his camp on Snow Island he was continually making raids on the British. Under him were very able officers, such as the two Horrys, the two Postells, James, Conyers, and McCottry, all of whom became famous for their daring exploits. The house-breaking, house-burning, murders, and other wanton excesses of the British and Tories had aroused Marion's brigade to fury and vengeance. The British post at Georgetown was their particular object of attack. They attempted to cut off all convoys of provisions going to and all communications with that post. Every night Marion sent out detachments to accomplish this purpose. Almost every such adventure



ended in a skirmish. On the 24th of January, with the aid of Colonel Lee, of the Continental troops, an attempt was made to capture Georgetown. This post was in command of Colonel Campbell, who was made a prisoner during the attack. Through lack of concerted action the town was not captured.

**237. The Partisans at Work.** The month of February found the three partisan generals, Sumter, Marion, and Pickens, all actively engaged. After the battle of Cowpens, Morgan had retreated hastily into North Carolina followed by Cornwallis and General Leslie, who in their turn were pursued by General Greene. Greene had abandoned the camp at Cheraws and joined Morgan in order to keep near the British army. After the departure of Cornwallis into North Carolina there were still over 4,000 British soldiers with whom the partisans had to battle. About the middle of February, Marion attacked a British convoy with its escort of three or four hundred men as it approached Halfway Swamp, in what is now Clarendon County. The British retreated before Marion's attack, abandoning their heavy baggage.

While Marion was still busy in the Peedee, Sumter, who had been recuperating in North Carolina from his wound, returned to the State and on the 21st of February attacked the British post at Granby, just across the river from the present city of Columbia. General Sumter, cutting off the source of supplies, had subdued the fort when Lord Rawdon appeared on the opposite bank of the Congaree. Sumter destroyed the British magazine and supplies, and, unable to contend with the superior force of the British, made a sudden retreat. Two days after he captured an escort of the British regulars, going from Charles Town to Camden with stores. Thirteen of the British were slain, and sixty-six made prisoners; the wagons, containing a large

quantity of provisions, clothing, arms, and ammunition, fell into his hands.

These stores, however, were lost to him by the treachery of a guide. In an effort to regain them Sumter attacked the British force at Fort Watson, near Nelson's Ferry. British reinforcements arriving he was compelled to abandon the attempt. He retired into camp on the High Hills of the Santee where he remained for awhile to recruit. From this place he retreated to the Waxhaws, with the British close on his heels.

**238. Attempt to Crush Marion.** The month of March, 1781, was marked by a concerted effort of the British to annihilate Marion's brigade. Pickens being in North Carolina, and Sumter in the Waxhaws, Lord Rawdon determined to crush Marion whose activity had plagued the British to so great an extent.

In this attempt upon the "Swamp Fox" the British loss was heavy while Marion lost only one man, but having lost his stores and being beset on all sides by the British, he was on the eve of retreating into North Carolina, when the news came that General Greene was returning to the State, and he was filled with fresh hopes.

**239. Pickens Returns to South Carolina.** General Pickens returned to South Carolina in March and made his way to Ninety Six District. While he was on the way the British had attacked a patriot force at Dutchman's Creek and had defeated it and captured thirty-six of the South Carolinians. Pickens, on reaching South Carolina, was joined by Colonel Elijah Clark, of Georgia, and, learning of a party of British foragers under Major Dunlap, Pickens detailed Colonel Clark and Colonel McCall to attack them. They were successful, killing thirty-four of the enemy.

**240. William Harden Takes a New Field.** With Marion in the Pee Dee was William Harden of Beaufort District,

who, after the fall of Charles Town, had reorganized the Upper Granville County regiment of militia, which formed a part of Marion's brigade, and had become quite active. His force was about the only one that had yet dared to take the field between Savannah and Charles Town, as this country was considered in undisputed possession of the enemy. In March, 1781, Harden left Marion with seventy-five followers, recruited from what are now the counties of Barnwell, Hampton, and Beaufort, and formed a camp on a little island on the Ashepoo River. From here he harried the British in every possible manner. Almost daily he succeeded in taking prisoners from under the very eyes of the enemy. In his first week's campaign he captured more prisoners than he had men. During this week he fought in four engagements and in one he captured Fort Balfour at Pocotaligo with a force of 100 men. These brilliant exploits fairly rivaled the activities of Sumter and Marion.

**241. Other Events of March.** About this time, Wade Hampton, who had given his parole after the fall of Charles Town, joined the patriots. A part of his family had been massacred by the Cherokees in 1776. He joined Sumter, as had many others, considering himself absolved from his parole.

On the 15th of March, General Greene, who was still in North Carolina, engaged in battle with Cornwallis at Guilford Court House. The result was a defeat for the American commander. This, however, was accomplished with such great loss to the British that the advantage lay with the Americans in the end. Greene stated that though "his adversary had gained his cause he was ruined by the expense of it."

**242. Partisans' Achievements.** In the early months of 1781, the partisans had fought twenty-six battles—the same number they had fought in the entire year 1780—not count-

ing the ones fought under Continental commanders. It is estimated that in these three months the British had lost 500 men, while the partisans lost only 200. These troops, as has been said previously, had fought without pay, with insufficient ammunition and such scarcity of clothing that sometimes they could not appear in the field. They had little food, sometimes living for days on baked potatoes. The men slept on the ground in the most inclement weather and suffered untold hardships. The character of the country accounted for the mode of warfare. After suddenly falling upon the enemy, the patriots would retire into the fastnesses of the swamp, where neither friend nor foe could find them. A great portion of the time there had been no Continental army in the State. However, at this time General Greene was planning to return.

**243. Preparations for Return.** In the month of April, General Greene returned to South Carolina. Wade Hampton had been sent by Sumter to give Greene a detailed account of what had been happening in the State during his absence. Greene wished to march on to Virginia, where Cornwallis had gone to join the British army of the North, thus leaving South Carolina to her fate, but by the advice of Colonel Lee he returned to South Carolina. He wrote ahead to Sumter to raise all the men and provisions possible and to notify Marion and Pickens to do the same in order to co-operate with him. The plan was to move against the British force at Camden. Sumter immediately fell to work carrying out these orders.

**244. Marion Active as Usual.** Soon after entering the State, Greene took position before Camden, which was under Lord Rawdon's command, and ordered Marion to co-operate with Colonel Lee in attacking the posts below Camden. Previously Colonel Watson had been sent by Lord Rawdon to crush Marion, but Marion had forced him to flee



to Georgetown. In his absence Lee and Marion decided to attack Fort Watson in hopes of capturing stores and ammunition of which they were in sad need. At a short distance from the fort there was a small wood. The trees were felled, and the timber, borne on the shoulders of the men, was built into a high pen, under cover of night, within a proper distance of the fort. This enabled the assailants to command the fort, and with the dawn of day, the garrison found themselves overawed by the American rifles. A shower of bullets drove them from their defenses. This pole pen was an idea of Colonel Hezekiah Maham, and was thereafter known as the "Maham Tower." The capitulation of the fort soon followed.

Pushing his prisoners before him, Marion, after this success, hurried his force forward to effect a junction with Greene. The advance of Marion brought on the battle of Hobkirk's Hill.

**245. Greene's Defeat.** Camden was garrisoned by Lord Rawdon with about 900 choice troops and Hobkirk's Hill, where Greene took post, was about a mile and a half in advance of the British redoubts.

The American force did not much exceed 800 men. The fall of Fort Watson, and the approach of the force under Marion to a junction with the main army, had the effect of forcing Rawdon into the field on the 25th of April.

The battle took place before Marion arrived. Sumter, who had been ordered to protect Greene from reinforcements to the British from Ninety Six and to keep his army supplied with provisions, was away at the time and knew nothing of the battle. General Pickens was also out with detachments when Lord Rawdon gave battle.

The American advance guard received the British with coolness and good order. Greene had masked his artillery with two regiments, and as the British advanced these regi-

ments opened and the enemy, to their surprise, were welcomed with a storm of grape. Upon this they retired in confusion, and Greene, thinking the battle won, took the offensive.

Rawdon threw out his supporting columns, however, and the Americans were outflanked, their wings enfiladed and their rear threatened. The Americans fell into confusion. Vainly Greene tried to restore their confidence, but he was forced to retreat.

The artillery was saved by Colonel Washington, who also captured more than two hundred prisoners. After a short pursuit, Rawdon returned to Camden, leaving Captain Coffin in charge of the field of battle. Later Colonel Washington returned, and fell upon Coffin and cut his troops to pieces. The field of Hobkirk thus actually remained in the possession of the Americans.

**246. Rawdon Evacuates Camden.** After the defeat at Hobkirk's Hill, Greene took such positions that he succeeded in cutting off supplies from reaching Rawdon. Rawdon was thus forced to evacuate Camden, burning the town before abandoning it. The loyalists, who had gathered at Camden, followed him. Near Charles Town these miserable people built a settlement of huts for themselves, which was called Rawdowntown.

**247. The Capture of Motte's.** The month of May, 1781, was distinguished by the fall of the British posts of Camden, Orangeburgh, Motte's, and Granby, Camden being evacuated by Rawdon. During the first week in May, Sumter laid siege to the posts at Motte's and Granby. General Marion and Lieutenant Colonel Lee also appeared at Motte's, and Greene moved in the direction of this post.

The Motte plantation lay above the fork on the south side of the Congaree. The works of the British were built around the house of Mrs. Rebecca Motte, from which the

British officers had expelled her. It was a mansion of considerable value. Defended by a strong garrison, under a resolute commander, the works promised to baffle the besiegers for a long time.

Mrs. Motte was informed that it would be necessary to destroy her house. To this she readily consented and brought to the besiegers some combustible arrows, which had some years before been presented to her brother, Miles Brewton, by a sea captain who had brought them from the East Indies. These arrows were fired from a musket into the roof of the house, but failed to set it afire. At this juncture, Nathan Savage, a soldier of Marion's brigade, rolled a ball of pitch and brimstone, lighted it and threw it upon the roof of the house, setting it afire. As the British soldiers would appear on the roof to put out the fire Marion's riflemen would rake the roof with such a hot fire that they were obliged to abandon the house. As a large quantity of powder was stored in the house which would blow up with great destruction, the British decided to surrender. As soon as this was done, the troops of both sides mounted to the roof and put the fire out.

**248. Fall of Granby and Orangeburgh.** When the appearance of Lord Rawdon caused Sumter to abandon his attack on Granby in February, he made a dash to Orangeburgh, where he met with great success. The post surrendered with 100 men and Sumter secured great stores of provisions. Returning to Granby, he found that Colonel Lee, despatched from Motte's by Greene, had forced that post to surrender, thus wresting the honors of capitulation from the "Game Cock."

**249. Activities of Harden and Pickens.** Harden at this time was still active in the Low-Country. Like Marion, from his encampment on a little island in the Coosawhatchie swamp, he made frequent raids on the British. He had

now become so venturesome that he often crossed into Georgia, harrying the British there. United with some Georgia patriots, he gave the British so much trouble by interrupting supplies across the river, that Colonel Brown, who commanded the garrison in Augusta, determined to crush him. Harden was attacked by the British at Wiggins' Hill and was forced to retreat, the British capturing some of his men whom they treated with savage brutality. This defeat only served to make Harden's men more inveterate against their enemies.

General Pickens, with Colonels Samuel and Leroy Hammond, was active in Ninety Six District. The Hammonds were sent into Georgia to join the patriots of that State, where they attacked several parties of British and Tories. Plans were made to attack Augusta, while Pickens contrived to prevent the British at the post at Ninety Six from reinforcing Colonel Brown.

**250. Augusta.** The 1st of May General Pickens and Colonel Lee joined Colonel Clarke of Georgia to aid in the siege of Augusta. The British had two fortifications there, both on the Savannah. A tower of logs was raised by the Americans to overlook these fortifications. Several engagements took place during the siege, and on the 5th of June, Colonel Brown surrendered. Fifty of the British had been killed during the siege and over 300 taken prisoners. The Americans had lost sixteen killed and thirty-five wounded. After the victory at Augusta, Colonel Lee and General Pickens moved to join General Greene.

**251. Ninety Six.** Sumter had tried to persuade General Greene to attack Rawdon immediately after his evacuation of Camden, but this Greene refused to do, marching instead to Ninety Six for the purpose of forcing the capitulation of the fort there. It was discovered afterwards that this post was about to be abandoned anyway, so Greene would



have done well to have followed Sumter's advice and turned his attention to Rawdon.

At the time that Greene commenced the siege, May 20th, the post was under the command of Colonel Cruger, with a garrison of about 600 native Americans. The works consisted of a ditch and breast works built around a stockade. Strong block houses of logs were erected around the ditch, and within the post was a star-shaped battery defended by artillery. For a month the siege was carried on without success. About the middle of June, Sumter advised Greene that three fresh regiments had arrived in Charles Town and that Lord Rawdon with these was on his way to relieve Cruger. Greene, on learning of this, determined to storm the fort before Rawdon's arrival. This he did, losing 185 in killed and wounded, while the British loss was only 85. General Greene, seeing that his men were being sacrificed, called them off and retreated.

The next month the British evacuated this post. The loyalists of the town and vicinity made their way to the wretched settlement at Charles Town, called Rawdowntown, which their brother Tories from Camden had settled.

**252. Georgetown.** While Greene was busy at Ninety Six, Marion marched upon Georgetown. The night before his arrival the British evacuated the town, sailing to Charles Town. Marion marched in and levelled its defenses.

## CHAPTER XIX.

### PARTISANS DRIVE BRITISH COASTWARD.

**253. Capture of Hayne.** In July, 1781, Isaac Hayne, colonel of the Colleton County regiment, who had taken the oath of allegiance, joined forces with Harden. In so doing he was fighting with a halter around his neck, and he knew it. This knowledge, however, did not prevent him from venturing almost into the very lines of Charles Town with a party which captured General Williamson, who, like himself, had taken the oath of allegiance, and was now within the British lines. Williamson was seized while in bed and carried off to camp. Immediately the British attacked the camp, rescued the prisoner, and, capturing Hayne, carried him to Charles Town.

**254. The Raid of the Dog Days.** Lord Rawdon had taken position at Orangeburgh. Having succeeded in driving him from Camden, by striking at the posts below, it was resolved to pursue a like plan of warfare, to compel the evacuation of Orangeburgh. Sumter and Marion, with their several commands, consisting chiefly of the State troops, and officered by those most able partisans, the two Hamptons, Myddelton, Taylor, Horry, Maham, Lacey, and others, who had maintained the liberties of their country in the swamps, when they were too feeble to hold their ground in the field, were accordingly let loose in an incursion into the Low-Country, which drove the enemy in all quarters for safety into Charles Town, and, for a time, prostrated the royal power even to the gates of that place. This was the famous raid of the dog-days. It took place in midsummer, when the Continentals dared not march.

**255. Successes.** Various little successes distinguished the progress of the partisans. Colonel Wade Hampton charged

a party of dragoons within five miles of Charles Town, and appearing before the walls of the city, occasioned great alarm to the British. The bells were rung, alarm-guns fired, and the whole force in the city confusedly gathered under arms. Hampton captured fifty prisoners, and after exhibiting them to the sentinels on the more advanced redoubts, coolly retired, without suffering injury. He also burned four vessels, laden with valuable stores for the British army. Lieutenant Colonel Lee took all the wagons and wagon-horses belonging to a convoy of provisions; traversed Dorchester and the neighborhood, from which the garrison was expelled, and meeting with Hampton, proceeded to rejoin the main body under Sumter.

**256. The Next Attack.** The British at Bigin Church were next attacked by General Sumter. Lieutenant Colonel Coates, the British commander there, repulsed Sumter's advance guard, burnt the church and retreated toward Charles Town. The stores which would have fallen into the hands of the patriots were thus destroyed. Lee, Hampton, Maham, and Taylor pursued, and, after sharp and frequent skirmishes along the road, came upon the British at Shubrick's plantation, near Quenby Bridge. After three or four hours, General Sumter came up and the attack was made. The enemy retired into the Shubrick house and the fire was kept up from the windows and from the picket fence which surrounded the house.

Marion's brigade, at that time very much reduced, was thrown into two detachments, and ordered to advance on the right of the enemy, having no shelter but fences, and these within short gunshot of the house which the British occupied.

The several parties moved to the attack with alacrity. Sumter's brigade soon gained the negro houses in their front, and from these directed their rifles with great effect.

Colonel Thomas Taylor, with a small command of forty-five men, pressed forward to the fences on the enemy's left, from whence he delivered his fire. This drew upon him the British bayonets, which compelled his retreat.

Marion's men, as they beheld this, with the coolness and intrepidity of veterans, rushing through a galling fire, extricated Taylor, and, from the imperfect covering of the fences, continued the fight until not a charge of ammunition remained among them. All who fell in the action were of Marion's command.

The British maintained their defense from within the houses, and from a picketed garden, till the sun was down. The Americans were then drawn off, after a conflict of three hours. Sumter could not risk an attack as he was too near Charles Town for safety and also as Lord Rawdon was moving in his direction. He therefore retreated across the Santee. Thus ended the raid of the dog-days.

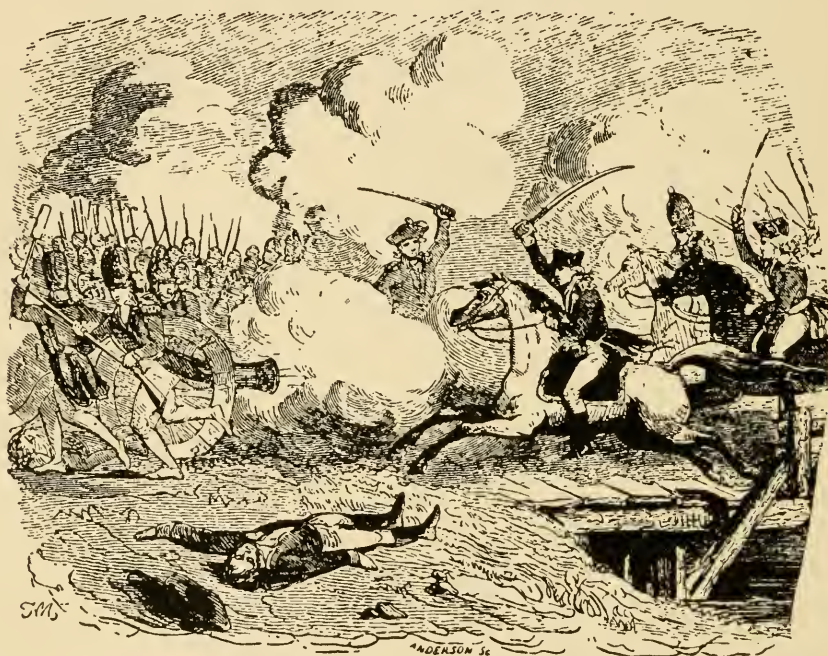
**257. Results of the Campaign.** The British lost, in the several engagements, apart from the slain and wounded, the numbers of whom could never be accurately known, nearly 200 prisoners, a large quantity of valuable stores, wagons, and horses, and (a prize rare in the eyes of the starving Americans) seven hundred and twenty guineas taken in the paymaster's chest, with the baggage at Quenby Bridge.

The expedition of Sumter, though not as successful as it might have been—for Coates' whole force might have been captured—was of the highest service, as it inspired the country with a wholesome confidence in the local militia. The troops actually engaged in the attack on Colonel Coates were almost exclusively South Carolina militia, and they displayed, with the vivacious audacity of the partisan, the firm, collected resolution of the drilled veteran.



Marion's men amply demonstrated, when they brought off Taylor's force from the British bayonets, under the heaviest fire from their pickets, that nothing was wanting but military discipline, and the weapons of soldiers, to meet the best appointed troops of Europe.

**258. Prisoners in Charles Town.** While the South Caro-



The Battle of Quenby Bridge.

linians were maintaining a desperate struggle for liberty, which now seemed within their reach, we may look back to see the fate of those prisoners in Charles Town who had surrendered upon the fall of that city. Governor Rutledge, as we have seen, had escaped before the capitulation and the militia had been allowed to return to their homes under parole, but there were some 2,500 Continental troops and 1,000 sailors who had been held prisoners along with the citizens of Charles Town. At first, abiding by the terms of

the capitulation, these prisoners were not ill-treated, but when the tide of war began to turn in favor of the patriots the British showed a disposition to take their revenge upon these prisoners. Some of the troops were crowded into horrible prison-ships and some were confined in loathsome cellars. Sixty of the most prominent citizens of Charles Town had been exiled to St. Augustine and confined there in the castle. Many families were turned out of their homes that British officers might occupy them. Colonel Balfour was in command of the city. As many of the militia who had returned home on parole began taking up arms against the British, Colonel Balfour decided to make an example that would deter them from this course.

**259. Execution of Hayne.** The person decided upon for an example of vengeance was Isaac Hayne, who had been captured the month before. Hayne was brought before a court of inquiry, which took upon itself the right to pass sentence. Hayne was notified that he was to be hanged. The men of the city pleaded in his behalf, the women petitioned in person, but Rawdon and Balfour were inexorable.

Attended by thousands of spectators, Hayne walked to the gallows in a firm, manly, and self-contained manner, and ascending the steps parted from his friends with the simple assurance that he would endeavor to show them "how an American should die." He died in a manner becoming a martyr to his country's freedom.

General Greene, from his camp on the High Hills of the Santee, notified Colonel Balfour that he would retaliate by similar treatment upon any British subjects who fell into his hands.

**260. Low-Country Skirmishes.** Harden, with his command, was on the Edisto at this time. The fear caused by the execution of Hayne kept him from recruiting many patriots at heart to his standard. Colonels Washington

and Lee were also in the neighborhood of Charles Town hanging upon the British communications successfully. One of Harden's parties was defeated by a detachment of British from Orangeburgh. Harden was pursued by another British party 500 strong under Major Fraser. In this dilemma he sent for help to Marion, who joined him immediately. They set an ambuscade in the Edisto swamp and decoyed the British into it. After a warm fight their ammunition became exhausted and they were forced to retreat, but they left so many of the enemy dead on the field that the battle was termed a victory for the patriots.

**261. Approach of George Washington.** About the middle of August it was learned that General George Washington, reinforced with 3,200 French soldiers, was marching to attack Cornwallis, who had advanced into Virginia after the battle with Greene at Guilford Court House in North Carolina. Immediately upon receipt of this news, General Greene broke camp on the Santee and made preparations to prevent any aid reaching Cornwallis from the British forces in South Carolina. He called in all the patriot troops except the detachments operating under Marion, Maham, and Harden, and marched toward Orangeburgh, with the view of attacking Colonel Stewart whom Rawdon had left in charge of that post. On his approach, Stewart gathered in his reinforcements and took his stand at Eutaw Springs. Marion hastily returned from his expedition with Harden and formed a junction with Greene. To pass through both lines of the British communication with Charles Town, to surprise, defeat, and disperse the force under Major Fraser, numerically superior to his own, to return by the same route, put his prisoners in safety across the Santee, then advance upon Eutaw to join Greene was but the work of a few days and ordinary labor for this able warrior.



**262. The Battle of Eutaw Springs.** The battle of Eutaw Springs was fought on the 8th of September, 1781. The Americans numbered about 2,000. The British force was something more than 2,300.

So completely had the detached parties of the Americans cut off those of the British, that the advance of their army was unsuspected. The only patrol had been captured during the night, and so entirely secure did Stewart esteem himself in his position, that an unarmed party of an hundred men had been sent out to gather sweet potatoes.

Two deserters from Greene's army conveyed to the British commander the news of the approach of the Americans, and Captain Coffin, at the head of his cavalry, was sent out, to recall the potato "rooting party," as well as to reconnoitre the Americans and cover the party. The American advance, when encountered, was immediately charged by Coffin, who was repulsed. The firing alarmed the potato-diggers, who showed themselves, and all fell into the hands of the Americans.

**263. The Issue at Eutaw Springs.** Near the springs was a brick house to which the British retreated after heavy losses, the Americans in close pursuit.

The whole British line was now in full flight before the American bayonets. Their retreat lay directly through their own encampment, where their tents were all standing, and a thousand objects scattered around in grateful profusion, which, to the famished troops of Greene, were too tempting to be withstood.

Fatigued, and almost naked, panting with heat, and suffering from thirst, at the same time believing their victory to be secure, the pursuing Americans fell into acts of insubordination, which brought about a miserable reverse. The American line got into irretrievable confusion. Its officers, nearly abandoned by their soldiers, became conspicuous



marks for the British, who now poured their fire from the windows of the house. In vain did American officers seek to rescue their men, who had dispersed without order among the tents, had fastened upon the intoxicating liquors, and had now become utterly unmanageable.

Seeing this, General Greene collected the wounded and ordered a retreat. Both sides claimed the victory.

The British loss was 683 and the American 517. Wade Hampton distinguished himself in the battle.

Leaving his dead unburied and his wounded to the mercy of the Americans, Stewart beat a hasty retreat the next day. This hurried retreat indicated that the power of the British was indeed waning.

## CHAPTER XX.

### VICTORY FOR PARTISANS.

**264. Encampment on the High Hills.** Returning from the pursuit of Stewart, Greene recrossed the Santee and resumed his position at the High Hills. Feeble as his army had ever been, it was now destined to become still more so. His militia soon left him. Of the North Carolinians, but 100 remained, and their term of service was near expiring. Marion, Pickens, and Hampton, with the South Carolina militia, were necessarily detached to cover the country; and, with the Continentals alone, he had to discharge all the painful and fatiguing services required by 600 wounded, half of whom were prisoners.

Exposure in the swamps, at a sickly season of the year, had brought upon his army the diseases of the climate; and, without medicines or comforts of any kind, the whole camp exhibited a scene of the utmost misery and destitution. Numbers of the brave fellows died.

**265. Tories at Work.** It was about this period that a foray was undertaken by William Cuninghame, who, by his savage ferocities, acquired the name of "Bloody Bill." Cuninghame made his way with a force of two or three hundred men from the city to the interior, taking advantage of the temporary absence from the route of any large party of the Americans. His own force was broken up into small parties, the better to elude detection. A rendezvous was fixed on the Edisto, from which they spread themselves on every hand.

They scattered in small bands, took the interior country by surprise, and marked their silent and rapid progress everywhere by massacre. They gave no quarter. Their prisoners, where they met resistance, were cut down after

conflict. In most cases, they found only defenseless people in their houses, unprepared for combat. The men were commonly shot or cut down; the women experienced various brutalities; boys of fifteen were maimed or killed; horses and all movable property carried off, and, when not movable, burned. The country was roused. Scores of small parties, led by outraged fathers, sons and brothers, were soon upon the heels of the marauders and but few escaped.

To add to other misfortunes, the Cherokees, led by a Tory named Bates, arose and falling upon Gowen's fort, in what is now Greenville County, massacred the patriot families who had gathered there for safety.

**266. News from Yorktown.** On the 17th of October Cornwallis surrendered to General Washington at Yorktown. This really meant the end of the war. The intelligence of the surrender of Yorktown reached the camp of Greene about the last of October. This day was observed as a jubilee in camp, and the grateful tidings gave a new impulse to the desire of the American general to cross the rivers which separated him from his enemy, and drive him down to the sea.

**267. Convening of Legislature.** By the end of the year 1781, the British had been driven from all their outposts and were confined in their operations to Charles Town, the Neck and the neighboring islands. Governor Rutledge returned to the State and issued writs of election for the convening of the General Assembly. His proclamation precluded all persons from suffrage and membership who had taken the oath of allegiance to Great Britain. The place chosen for the meeting was the little village of Jacksonborough on the Edisto, about thrity-five miles from Charles Town.

**268. Securing Jacksonborough.** The army, in the meantime, took post at the plantation of Colonel Skirving, six

miles below Jacksonborough, and on the road leading to Charles Town. But before the place could be put in perfect security, Greene conceived it necessary to drive the British from John's Island. John's and James' islands, with the city and the Neck, were now the only footholds left to the British, of all their conquests in South Carolina.

On John's Island, which is secure, fertile and extensive,

they maintained a force of 500 men, under Colonel Craig. The island was also guarded at all accessible points by galleys carrying heavy guns. These galleys, at a favorable time of the tide, might easily approach Jacksonborough, which is not beyond striking distance from John's Island; while the communication with Charles Town, being open through James' Island, made it easy for the British, unperceived, to throw reinforcements into the former.



Colonel John Laurens, Aid-de-Camp to General George Washington and Afterwards Special Minister to France, Where He Secured From the King a Loan Which Enabled the Americans to Continue the Revolution.

Greene resolved, if possible, to drive the enemy from this important position. It was soon ascertained,

not only that the island was accessible, but that the British, unapprehensive of danger, were comparatively unprepared for attack.

John Laurens and Lee asked to be allowed to undertake the expedition. They succeeded in taking several prisoners and frightening Colonel Craig so that he hastily retreated to the city. This completed the security of Jacksonborough.

**269. The End of the Campaign of 1781.** At the beginning of the year 1781, the British had almost entire control of the State; at the end the Americans were in control of all except Charles Town and the adjacent country. Sixty-two



battles had been fought during the year. Of these forty-five had been fought by the partisans alone without Continental aid. The battle at Yorktown had really ended the war, but more blood was to be shed in South Carolina.

**270. The Jacksonborough Assembly.** The General Assembly met at the appointed time, and true and tried men were present. These were mostly veterans—the brave men who had sustained the conflict with unremitting valor and un-failing fortitude from the beginning. Very few were present who had not drawn their weapons in the strife, and many appeared on this occasion in military garb. A nobler assembly—one more distinguished for faith, integrity, wisdom, and valor—was never yet convoked in the cause of a nation.

The proceedings were opened by a speech from Governor Rutledge, distinguished by the accustomed energy of manner and force of matter which characterized him. The General Assembly proceeded to business. Laws were passed for confiscating the property of those who had sided with the British and banishing them from the State; and amercing the estates of others who had saved their property by taking the oath of allegiance to Great Britain. The State was wholly destitute of funds; no immediate resources could be had either by loan or taxation, and the estates of the loyalists presented the only means for establishing a fund upon which to build a temporary credit. Among other acts, was one for vesting in General Greene, in consideration of his services, the sum of ten thousand guineas—a gift which furnished an example to the States of Georgia and North Carolina, which they promptly followed. Lastly, an important act was passed which gave the Continental Congress at Philadelphia a right to a five per cent. duty on imports.

**271. Election of Governor.** This General Assembly was composed of men who had won the liberty of the State. In it were Sumter, Marion, and Pickens, the two Horrys,

Harden, and many others of Marion's men. John Laurens and his father Henry Laurens, who, through the offices of his son, had just been released from the Tower of London, were members. John Laurens had been appointed by General Washington to arrange the capitulation of Yorktown, and in doing so he exchanged Cornwallis for his father. General Moultrie, who had been a prisoner in Charles Town since its surrender, and Christopher Gadsden, who had been imprisoned at St. Augustine, were also members. This session of the General Assembly took place after an interregnum of nearly two years. John Rutledge's term of office having expired, the office was tendered to the old patriot, Christopher Gadsden, who declined it on account of his age and ill health. John Mathews, who had represented the State in Congress during the war, was elected.

**272. Further Bloodshed.** There was still blood to be shed in South Carolina. The opening of the year 1782 found Pickens putting down the Cherokees, who, at the end of the war, were particularly troublesome. In what is now Oconee County, he destroyed thirteen towns and killed and captured many Indians.

In some sections truces were made between the patriots and the Tories, for the purpose of raising crops which were sorely needed. Near the present town of Salley, the Tories were defeated by Captain William Butler, of Edgefield, who was also instrumental in putting down the continued raids of "Bloody Bill" Cunningham in Ninety Six District. Marion was, of course, busy in performing similar services in his favorite section, the Peedee.

**273. British Cooped in Charles Town.** The British, cooped up in Charles Town, were beginning to lack for food and provisions. General Greene with the regular army and the militia officers with their various commands were active in preventing the enemy from obtaining the necessities, know-

ing that if they succeeded in cutting them off from food supplies, the British would be forced to evacuate the city. In February, however, the news came that the English Parliament had voted to desist from further efforts to subdue the United States. Even after this the British in Charles Town were not allowed to get provisions from the country at any price. General Leslie, who at this time was in command of the city, now prepared to seize whatever supplies he needed.

**274. British Efforts to Obtain Provisions.** A British force under Major Fraser first made an effort to obtain provisions on the Santee. Marion, thinking the raid would be made on Georgetown, was in that place and thus failed to prevent Fraser from carrying off 600 barrels of rice from the Santee. Next the British, from their ships, raided the banks of the Combahee, where they also obtained provisions. After this they sailed up the Broad River, captured provisions and carried off cattle all along the way. They also attacked Marion and his men at Wadboo. They failed, however, in this with some loss to themselves and none to Marion, except for a wagon of ammunitions which through ill luck fell into the hands of the British. News arriving that transports were coming to carry the British back to England caused the foraging expeditions to return immediately to Charles Town.

**275. The Death of John Laurens.** South Carolina on one of these expeditions lost one of her greatest men—Colonel John Laurens. Colonel Laurens had been stationed near Charles Town to receive secret information from the city. When the British sailed up the Combahee for provisions, General Greene despatched General Gist to protect that country from the enemy.

The ardor of Laurens was not to be restrained when the prospect was open for active operations against the foe.

When made acquainted with the order to Gist, "to strike at the enemy wherever he might meet them," he resolved to share in the enterprise; and, rising from a sick-bed, he hurried after the brigade which he overtook on the north bank of Combahee River, near the ferry. Colonel Laurens solicited from his commander an opportunity for immediate enterprise, and obtained his wish.

The night before the attempt was to be made on the British, Colonel Laurens spent the evening at a home on Chehaw Neck, where a gay dancing party was in progress, and at three o'clock he commenced his march, mounted and at the head of his detachment, when the enemy was discovered. They had probably received some intelligence of the march of the detachment, and, landing on the north bank of the river, had formed an ambuscade at a place covered with fennel and high grass, and were completely concealed from sight, until they rose to deliver their fire upon the unsuspecting Americans.

With the discovery of the British, Laurens instantly ordered a charge, and, with characteristic courage, led the way, and fell at the first fire of the enemy.

The loss of the British on this occasion is unknown; that of the Americans was very serious for so small a force. In the death of Laurens the army lamented a tried and gallant soldier; the country an unshrinking patriot.

**276. The Evacuation.** Meanwhile, General Leslie was pressing his preparations for the final evacuation of Charles Town. He relieved himself of many unnecessary consumers in the garrison by allowing the loyalists to leave his camp and make their peace with their countrymen—a privilege of which hundreds availed themselves.

Having levelled the walls of the town and of Fort Johnson, the British commander opened communications with General Greene, appraising him of the intended evacuation, and



proposed terms in order that his departure might be a peaceable one. An arrangement accordingly followed, by which the Americans were to take possession as the enemy's rear-guard retired; the former pledging themselves to forbear all hostile attempts upon the movements of the British, on condition that they should do no injury to the city.

On Saturday, the 14th of December, 1782, the evacuation took place.

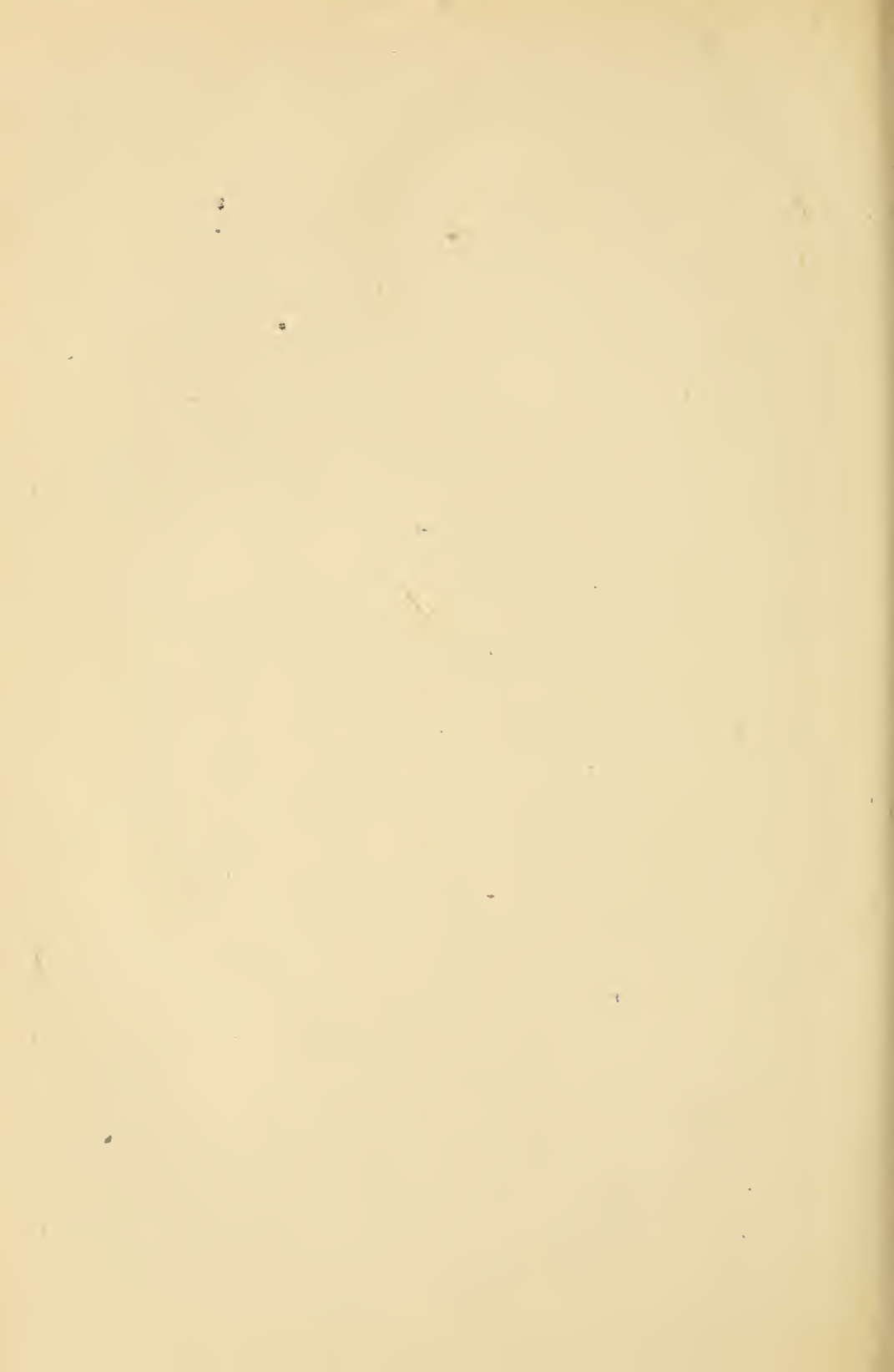
"It was a grand and pleasing sight," says General Moultrie in his Memoirs, "to see the enemy's fleet, upward of three hundred sail, lying at anchor from Fort Johnson to Five Fathom Hole, in a curve line, as the current runs; and what made it more agreeable, they were ready to depart."

#### **277. South Carolinians Take Possession of Charles Town.**

As the British evacuated the city, the patriots entered. In the rear of the American advance, came the governor of the State, attended by General Greene, and escorted by 200 cavalry. His council, and long troops of officers and citizens, followed on horseback. Smiling faces and joyful voices saluted the deliverers as they came. The balconies and windows were crowded with the aged men, the women, and the children, who for nearly three years had mourned the absence and the loss of sons, brothers, and friends. Their tears now were those of joy and of triumph. "God bless you, gentlemen; God bless you, and welcome, welcome home."

**IV.**

**SOUTH CAROLINA AS A STATE IN THE  
UNITED STATES**



## CHAPTER XXI.

### SOUTH CAROLINA ENTERS UNION OF STATES.

**278. South Carolina a Sovereign State.** The day after the restoration of Charles Town to the Carolinians, the British fleet put to sea. South Carolina had won her freedom. "Left mainly to her own resources," says Bancroft, the great historian, "it was through the depths of wretchedness that her sons were to bring her back to her place in the republic, after suffering more and daring more and achieving more than the men of any other State." The British having left in December, 1782, General George Washington disbanded the army in April, 1783. The peace between Great Britain and the newly independent States was not concluded however, until the fall of the year when the treaty was signed at Paris whereby Great Britain acknowledged "the United States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, and Georgia to be free, sovereign, and independent States." The boundaries were Florida on the south, the Mississippi on the west, and Canada on the north. South Carolina was now one of the thirteen separate, independent States.

**279. Legislature Convenes.** South Carolina at once turned to the management of internal affairs. One serious problem presented itself. The Continental army, which had marched into Charles Town with General Greene, was still quartered within the city's precincts and depended upon the State for support. The militia had been disbanded without pay. Congress was unable to pay off the Continental soldiers or to provide them with food. South Carolina felt that after the burdens she had borne during the war it was unfair

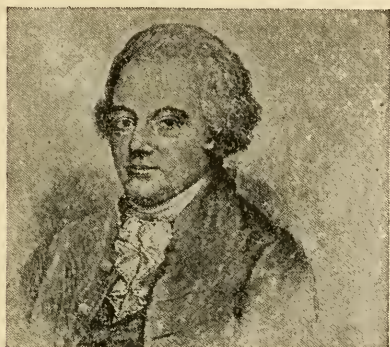


that the support of the southern army should be thrown upon her shoulders alone. The soldiers began to seize provisions in the market in Charles Town and wherever they could be found. Many unpleasantnesses arose between General Greene and Governor Mathews on this account.

Conditions had become very strained between the citizens and the soldiery when the legislature convened in January, 1783. This body at once made provisions for the army and also presented General Greene with a plantation on the Edisto, because of his services to the State during the war. The legislature then chose as governor Benjamin Guerard, a patriot who had been confined on a British prison ship after the fall of Charles Town. The Assembly was composed almost entirely of patriot leaders. Henry Laurens, former Governor John Rutledge, Ralph Izard, Jacob Read, and Thomas Sumter, the "Game Cock," were sent to represent the State in the Continental Congress. The Assembly, before dissolving, repealed the law which had been passed by the Jacksonborough legislature, which gave to the Continental Congress the right to a five per cent. duty on imports. This law was repealed only after a hot debate. Sumter, behind whom stood the "Back Country" members, opposed the duty, while the Low-Country members were in favor of granting this power to the central Congress.

**280. Internal Development.** In April, 1783, came Washington's order for the disbanding of the army, but it was not until July that Charles Town was entirely freed of the soldiery. During Guerard's administration the cultivation of cotton was improved. This was of course on a small scale as the lint had to be separated from the seed by hand. The culture of tobacco was given a fresh impetus in South Carolina about the same time. Guerard's administration was also marked by the incorporation of Charles Town by the legislature under the name of Charleston.

In 1785, William Moultrie was chosen governor to succeed Guerard. We remember Moultrie as the famous victor in the first battle of the Revolution in South Carolina—Fort Moultrie, and defender of Charles Town in the two sieges of that city. Like numerous others who had served the State during the war he was honored with a State office. During



Charles Pinckney, a Charleston Attorney, Who Took a Prominent Part in Framing the Constitution of the United States.

his administration Columbia was established and chosen as the capital of the State because of its central location. Along with other activities of the period was the establishment of colleges in Charleston, Winnsboro, and Ninety Six. In Camden, Ninety Six, and Charleston orphan houses were also provided. Only two years had intervened since the close of the Revolution, yet the people had set themselves to work

with vim to repair the disasters occasioned by that long conflict. During this period the unfortunate Tories were treated with great moderation. Most of them were restored to full citizenship.

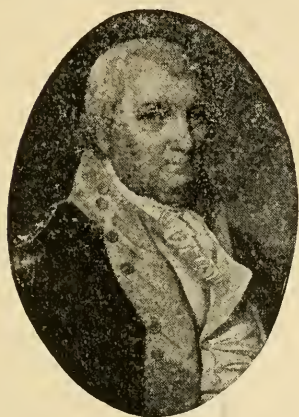
**281. Another Patriot Chosen Governor.** At the expiration of Governor William Moultrie's term in 1787, Thomas Pinckney was elected to succeed him. In the years that follow we will find almost all of the prominent patriots in office, and often at their death we will find that their sons and grandsons fill the high places. During Governor Pinckney's administration the State was still trying to remedy the defects in her political condition caused by the war. The installment law was enacted for the relief of those who were unable to recoup their fortunes in time to pay their

debts. Under this law, the debtor was allowed the privilege of paying his debt by installments, the last installment to be paid in 1793. Another measure of the time was the prohibition for three years of the importation of slaves. This was an old and familiar enactment which was often resorted to in Proprietary days in order to cut down the alarmingly large proportion of negroes to the white population.

We thus see South Carolina exercising full sovereignty. She still sent representatives to the Continental Congress, which, called into being by the approach of a common enemy, had not dissolved at the end of the war. This Congress had little more than advisory powers, for final appeal rested in the States from whence the delegates to the Congress came. Each State was a small but independent unit of government.

**282. The Weakness of the Confederation.** State pride, which gloried in independence, would have kept South Carolina forever a free and sovereign republic but for outside influences which began to be felt in 1787. As we have previously seen, the thirteen American States had banded together at the approach of a common enemy—Great Britain. New York had sounded the call and delegates from the colonies had met in Philadelphia in 1774. The Congress then formed had continued to sit during the war. In 1776, at the time it had issued the Declaration of Independence, it had also formulated the Articles of Confederation, which bound the States to make common cause in the war. In the first eight years of the life of the Congress, South Carolina had two presidents of this central body—Henry Middleton and Henry Laurens, while the two Rutledges, John and Edward, and Christopher Gadsden had figured prominently as members at the first meeting in 1774.

The treaty of Paris, which ended the war in 1783, recognized the separate independence of the thirteen States. The question whether or not they should link their fortunes continued to grow in importance as time passed. The weaknesses of the Articles of the Confederation began to be



Charles Cotesworth  
Pinckney, Soldier and  
Statesman.

felt. Many of the States laid claim to the western lands which the treaty had extended to the Mississippi River. These claims led to squabbles between the claimants, which the Congress had no power to settle. This was not the only trouble. In carrying on the war, the Congress had incurred a tremendous war debt, which it had no means of paying. The various States had repealed the small duty of five per cent. on imports which had been granted in this emergency because they

feared a strong central government and wished to give the Congress no power over them. They declared the duty hostile to the spirit of liberty and prophesied tyranny from a highly centralized authority.

The government provided by the Articles of Confederation was weak because it had no chief executive, no courts to administer its laws, and no power to raise revenue for its support.

**283. The Constitutional Convention.** The fear that Congress might become as tyrannical a ruler as England had been would have prevented a closer union but for the obvious necessity of a central government which gradually brought the States into line. There were incessant quarrels among the States who obeyed or disobeyed the Articles of the Confederation as they saw fit. European nations did not know



whether they were treating with one power or thirteen. There were riots among the soldiers in the North because they had not received their pay for fighting during the war. Congress, unable to lay taxes, was of course unable to pay the soldiers. Congress was powerless to borrow money in Europe, because the European nations knew well the weak nature of the Confederacy. In this predicament, the Congress issued paper money, which depreciated so quickly that a pound of sugar could not be bought for less than ten dollars. Along with this lack of power to manage internal affairs was the lack of power to protect the country from her enemies. Barbarous North Africans preyed upon American shipping and Spain was continually making trouble in regard to the use of the Mississippi by Americans.

In this desperate condition of affairs, Virginia called a convention to meet at Annapolis to discuss a solution of the difficulties. The convention met in September, 1786, but, since only five States sent representatives, a second meeting was called for the following spring in Philadelphia.

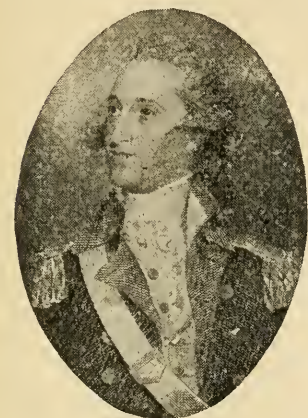
**284. The Forming of the Constitution.** To this convention of 1787, South Carolina elected five delegates—John Rutledge, the Revolutionary governor; Pierce Butler, Henry Laurens, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, and Charles Pinckney. Virginia sent George Washington as one of her delegates. The meeting was held in May, in the same building from which the Declaration of Independence had been issued, and there was not a delegate present who had not distinguished himself in some way in winning the liberty of the country. George Washington was chosen president and the convention set to work. After four months they had produced a plan of government to present to the States for their approval.

No attempt was made to revise the Articles of Confederation. Several States presented sketches of plans of govern-

ment, and it was afterwards found that the plan offered by Charles Pinckney of South Carolina entered more largely into the Constitution produced than any other.

**285. The Constitution.** After long and bitter debates in the convention, and many compromises, a Constitution was agreed to by the members. It provided for a chief executive, who was to be known as the President of the United States, a

Congress of two bodies—the Senate and the House—and a Supreme Court. From each State should come two Senators, and the population should govern the number of representatives to the House from the State. Slaves were to be counted as three-fifths population. After heated arguments, the South Carolina delegates consented to the agreement that the slave trade should be abolished after 1808. The Constitution gave the Federal government powers of taxation and of regulating commerce and de-



Thomas Pinckney, Soldier in the Revolution, Governor of South Carolina, Minister to England, and Special Minister to Spain and France.

defined the powers of the president. In September, having completed its work, the convention sent the Constitution to the various States for approval.

**286. South Carolina Ratifies Constitution.** Like most of the other States, South Carolina was divided in regard to the Constitution. Those in favor of ratifying the Constitution were called Federalists, while those opposed it were called Anti-federalists. As a rule the "Back Country" men who had opposed the granting of the five per cent. duty to the Congress in 1783, now for the same reason opposed the Constitution. They feared a strong national government.

There was an intense State pride in South Carolina which was jealous of any control. The Low-Country, led by the Rutledges and the Pinckneys, was strongly in favor of the Constitution, and after a long and bitter contest, South Carolina ratified it in the late spring of 1788. South Carolina had, after twelve years of practical independence, entered of her own will a union of her sister States. In 1790, a State convention was held for the purpose of forming a new Constitution for the State, which would fit the needs of the State as a member of the Union. George Washington had been elected first president of the United States, and hereafter we shall find the history of South Carolina indissolubly connected with that of the Union.

**287. At the First National Congress.** In 1789, Governor Thomas Pinckney was succeeded by his cousin, Charles Pinckney, who had rendered such important work in the convention which produced the Constitution of the United States. Among those representatives who went to this first Congress of the United States were General Thomas Sumter and Pierce Butler. This is perhaps the most important Congress ever held in this country, as upon it largely depended the strength of the union of the States. Voluntarily, the thirteen States had consented to bind their fortunes together, but each deemed the bond one that could be broken at will. It was the task of the first Congress to satisfy the demands of the States and to make union a necessity. John Rutledge was made an Associate Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States, and afterwards President Washington appointed him Chief Justice upon the resignation of John Jay.

One of the most important laws enacted by the first Congress was the one which laid a tariff upon foreign imports. Pierce Butler of South Carolina made fiery objections to this bill on the ground that it was unfair to the interests of

the South, which being an agricultural region, was dependent upon imports. The law was passed despite the objections of South Carolina.

**288. President Washington Visits South Carolina.** In May, 1791, President Washington arrived in Charleston on a visit to the State. A twelve-oared barge manned by thirteen masters of American vessels, aboard which were General Moultrie, General Pinckney, Edward Rutledge, and William Washington, the President's kinsman of Revolutionary fame, brought the President over from Mount Pleasant. On reaching the city President Washington was welcomed by Governor Pinckney, Intendant VanderHorst, and the wardens and citizens of Charleston. Triumphal arches decorated with flowers and laurel greeted his approach. After a week of gay fetes in honor of the "Father of his Country," Washington resumed his tour of the Southern States, visiting Camden and Columbia before leaving South Carolina.

**289. Thomas Pinckney Minister to England.** The year following this visit, President Washington appointed Thomas Pinckney as Minister to England. This was an extremely difficult post as England was still very resentful over the loss of her colonies. Pinckney filled the place with dignity and, in recognition of his diplomatic ability, was afterwards appointed as special minister first to Spain and then to France. Thus Pinckney held three of the highest positions within the power of the American people to bestow.



## CHAPTER XXII.

### ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT.

**290. Review of State Industries.** It will be recollected that when the English first settled on the banks of the Kiawah or Ashley River they began almost immediately to export lumber. The Proprietors had required the colonists to pay for their provisions with timber. Turpentine, tar, resin, and pitch were also exported to England and Barbadoes. Trade with the Indians soon developed into an immense industry and the first fortunes in the province were made in this business. Bear, raccoon, deer, wildcat, and fox were among the most profitable skins and furs which were traded by the Indians for guns, ammunition, trinkets, and rum.

The early colonists were barely able to raise enough grain for their own support. They did not attempt to cultivate it for export for many years, but while they were making money on skins and lumber they were experimenting with various grains among which was rice. This grain had been introduced into the province soon after its settlement. The low swamp lands were found so admirably suited to its culture, that by 1730 rice had become an important export of the province. During the period of the royal government indigo and corn were grown to a profitable extent and the culture of silk was tried, but rice continued to be the staple export of South Carolina until after the Revolution.

**291. The Birth of King Cotton.** Immediately after the Revolution, the cultivation of cotton was undertaken on a larger scale. The fact that it had to be separated from the seed by hand—a long and tedious process—prevented the growing of large crops. In 1784, ten bales had been shipped from Savannah to Liverpool, and such an unheard of quan-

tity was it considered, that the captain of the vessel which carried it was accused of fraud on the charge that no such amount could have been produced in the United States. However, during the second administration of William Moultrie, who, in 1792, succeeded Charles Pinckney, who had served two terms in the gubernatorial office, the cotton gin was invented. The gin is said to have been invented on the plantation of General Greene's widow. This simple invention changed and laid the course for the future economic development of South Carolina. A vast increase in the importation of slaves took place in order that the planters might have labor for their cotton fields. Whereas, in 1791, about 375 bales of cotton were exported from this country, one hundred years later, over 4,000,000 bales were exported. Cotton, instead of rice, became the staple export and South Carolina's economic life gradually became chiefly dependent upon this one crop.

**292. The Opening of Highways.** The early settlements in South Carolina had been made on navigable rivers. After the settlement of Charles Town, others were made always with a view to communication with this city by water. Lumber was shipped on rafts to the capital and from there on vessels to England. The large rice planters also shipped their produce to Charles Town for market by river boats. Water communication was an absolute necessity as the virgin forests of Carolina were unbroken save by narrow Indian paths.

As colonists began to push further into the interior the question of land routes became more important. Rough wagon roads were opened and laws passed as early as 1682 for their upkeep. Every citizen, of no matter what wealth or degree, was forced to work on the roads. In spite of this, the roads were very rough and frequently almost impassable. A long journey into the "Back Country" was

a great undertaking. There were few, too, even of these rough, ill-kept highways.

The war of the Revolution, which took South Carolinians all over their native State in numerous skirmishes with the British, opened their eyes to the necessity for better roads. The war over successfully, they set themselves to work to improve their highways. The old roads were worked, new ones



A South Carolina Rice Field.

built, bridges constructed, ferries improved, and, in general, transportation and trading made more convenient.

**293. Old English Custom Abandoned.** During Governor Moultrie's administration the old English right of primogeniture was abolished in South Carolina. This law gave the estate of a man dying without will to the eldest son, the younger children consequently being left penniless. The object of this custom was to keep the large family estates from being divided. The legislature now abandoned this principle on account of its unfairness and since that time all children have shared equally in the estate of their parents if the parents left no will.

**294. The Santee Canal.** Governor Moultrie was succeeded in 1794 by Arnoldus VanderHorst, former intendant of Charleston. When the people were concerning

themselves after the Revolution with the betterment of their highways, a plan was conceived to open the Santee River for navigation from the North Carolina line to Charleston. The charter for this undertaking was granted during the first administration of Governor Moultrie, and it is interesting to note that among the incorporators were the two Rutledges—John and Edward—and Sumter, the “Game Cock,” and Marion, the “Swamp Fox.” There were perhaps no men in the State who had had better opportunity to know the need of good roads and open water ways. The building of the Santee Canal was intended to be the means of bringing the Up-Country and the Low-Country into very much closer touch with each other. The project was begun in 1786 and was in process of construction until 1800.

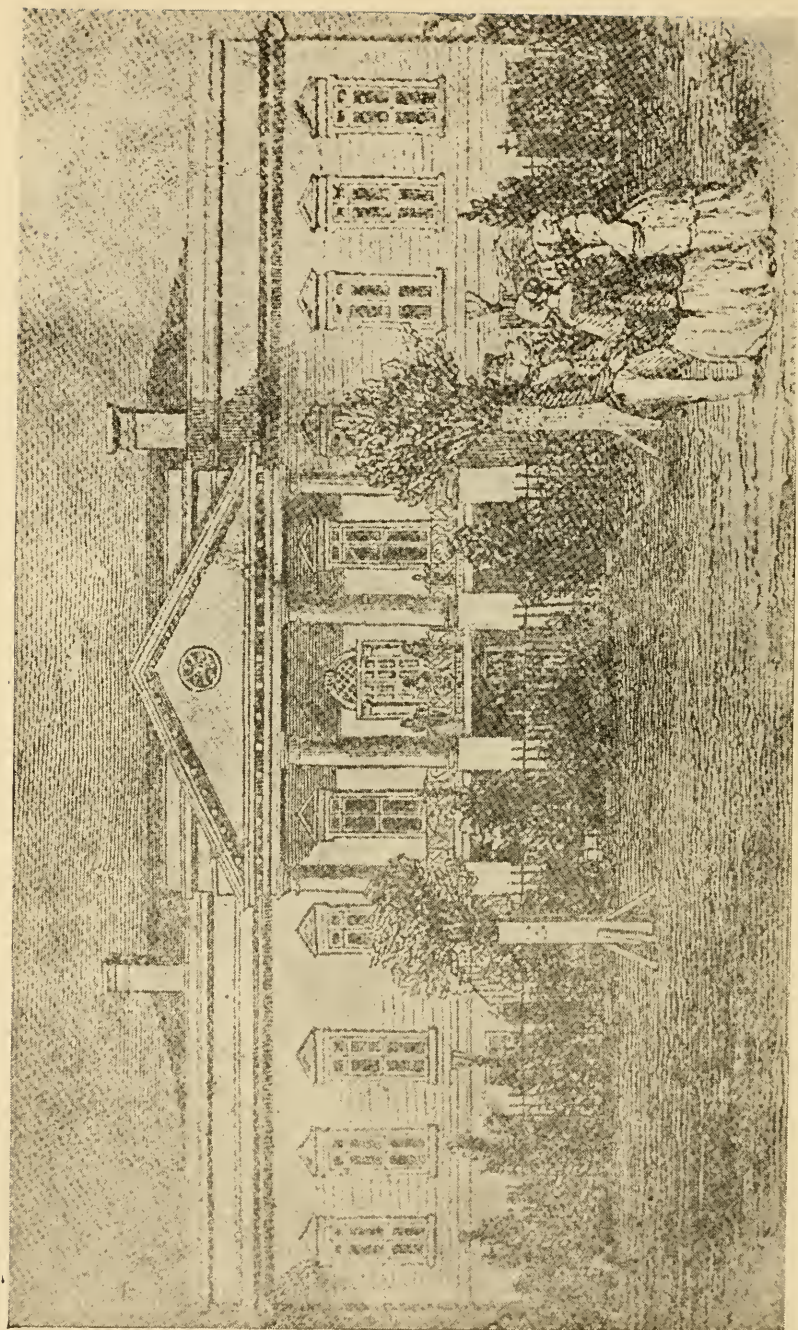
**295. Further Development.** In 1796, Charles Pinckney became governor for the third time. He was succeeded in 1798 by Edward Rutledge, one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. Governor Rutledge died in office, and John Drayton filled the office for the unexpired term and was elected in 1800 for the full term. In 1798, the legislature divided the State into twenty-four districts.

During Governor Drayton’s administration, the legislature established the South Carolina College at Columbia. The year 1800 marked the completion of the Santee Canal. The census of 1800 showed the population of the State to be 340,591, of which 196,255 were whites and 144,336 negroes.

**296. Commencement of Manufacturing in South Carolina.**

As early as 1768—nearly ten years before the Revolution—cotton goods were being manufactured in South Carolina. In 1769, it was stated in the Gazette in Charles Town that “many of the inhabitants of the north and eastern parts of this province have this winter clothed themselves in their own manufactures.” One notable instance of the





The Old State House at Columbia.

interest displayed in home industries was the wearing of clothes of home manufacture by Christopher Gadsden, in 1769, while he was in mourning for his wife. In 1770, a committee to establish and promote manufactures in the province was organized, with Henry Laurens as chairman and treasurer of the organization. The manufacturing of this period was not done by corporation, but by private individuals on their plantations.

With the establishment of the cotton gin, the patent rights of which were bought by the South Carolina legislature, the cotton manufacturing industry was given its first real impetus. In 1808, there was such a fad for homespun goods that a resolution was passed that year in the General Assembly that all members should appear during the sessions clad in homespun suits.

About 1816, New England settlers in upper South Carolina "laid the foundation for the tens of thousands of spindles which were in due course of time to hum in the Piedmont belt." In 1816 or 1817, the Hill Factory in Spartanburg County contained 700 spindles, all of the machinery having been hauled in wagons from Charleston. This period marks the beginning of what was to become one of the great industries of South Carolina.

**297. Lotteries.** It is an interesting fact that during this period, as was the custom of the time, lotteries were operated in South Carolina with the consent and approval of the State government. In 1795, an act was passed by the General Assembly authorizing a lottery, the profits of which were to be used for the promotion of useful manufactures in the State. Money was raised by means of these lotteries for the building of the Episcopal Church at Georgetown, for Trinity and the Presbyterian Church in Columbia and many others.

**298. Vaccination Introduced.** James B. Richardson succeeded John Drayton to the governorship of the State for the term 1802-1804. During Governor Richardson's administration, vaccination as a preventative of smallpox was introduced into the State by Dr. David Ramsay. This distinguished physician we remember as having been confined with sixty other prominent Charlestonians in the castle at St. Augustine, during the Revolutionary War. The introduction of vaccination was opposed at first by many, but before long its power of prevention of the dread disease, which had been prevalent at certain seasons since the first settlement of the province, was fully recognized.

**299. Financial Prosperity.** South Carolina was in such prosperous condition financially that it was found that at the close of the administration of Paul Hamilton, who had succeeded to the governorship in 1804, at the expiration of Governor Richardson's term, there were debts due to the State to the amount of \$734,735. This period was also marked by the extension of the suffrage to all white persons, without regard to property qualifications. This measure which voted free suffrage was enacted during the fourth term of Charles Pinckney, 1806-1808.

**300. Free School System.** For the term 1808-1810, John Drayton for the second time was elected governor. The census of 1810 showed a large increase in the population, which was found to number 413,015. Of this census it is worthy of note that it showed a large increase in the negro population.

The year 1811, during the administration of Henry Middleton, marked the establishment of a free school system. As early as 1710 there had been free schools in South Carolina, but no established system. The present provision was intended only for those children of the State whose parents were too poor to send them to private pay schools.



**301. Summary.** Thus we see that the years following the Revolution were ones of great progress for the State of South Carolina. The cultivation of cotton, which was of inestimable importance in the future development of the State, expanded; roads for travel and commerce were opened; the Santee Canal was constructed; there was a tremendous increase in population; free schools were liberally provided, and, in general, the State was in a most prosperous condition.

But now we must turn to an event of national interest.



## CHAPTER XXIII.

### SOUTH CAROLINA AND THE WAR OF 1812.

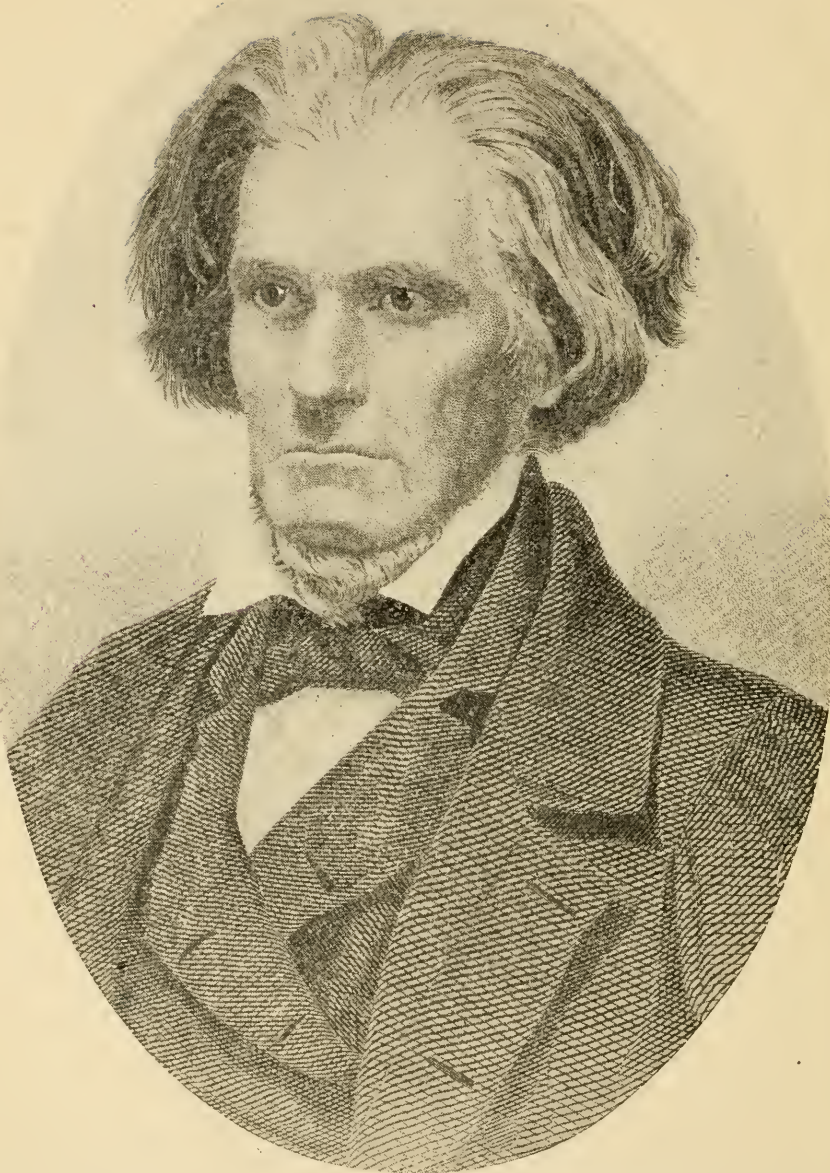
**302. Trouble with France.** While South Carolina was developing so splendidly along economic lines, the nation at large was embarrassed in its foreign affairs. The French, following the example of the United States, overthrew their king, and set up a republic. The other monarchs of Europe, in alarm at the precedents set, made war upon France in the effort to restore the monarchy. Having helped the Americans to win their liberty, the French now in turn expected aid in their need. So, in 1793, the French republic sent its first minister to the United States—Edmond Charles Genet. Genet came expressly to induce the United States to aid France in the war against the European allies. He landed in Charleston, where he was received with great enthusiasm and immediately began fitting out privateers. He was greatly disappointed, however, when he reached Philadelphia, the capital, and found that President Washington was firm in his stand against embroiling the United States in any European war. The States were much too feeble as yet to wage war, but France naturally felt aggrieved at the ill success of Genet's mission.

**303. Friction with England.** Since the close of the Revolutionary War, England had shown an irritating lack of respect for the United States. Regretting the loss of her wealthy colonies, she lost no opportunity to vent her spite upon the young republic which grew from them. She seized American vessels in the French West Indies and elsewhere, and had begun the practice of stopping American ships on the high seas and demanding that any English sailors aboard should be given up. Often American-born sailors were forced to go on British ships, and England refused to heed

the protests from the United States. War seemed inevitable. Congress began making preparations for a stronger army and navy. At this England, her hands full with her war with France, made some concessions, and President Washington, who was equally anxious to avoid war, sent John Jay to England as special envoy to arrange a commercial treaty. This Jay accomplished, but with so many concessions on the part of the United States, that the Americans were furious. In Charleston, after the British flag had been dragged through the streets by the irate citizens, it was burned in front of the house of the British consul. However humiliating the treaty was to the pride of the Americans it averted war for a time.

**304. War Imminent with France.** On hearing of the treaty with her old enemy, England, the French Republic was indignant. Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, of South Carolina, who at this time was sent as minister to France, was rejected. Offended at the indignity to her minister, the United States sent three envoys to France, of which number the rejected Pinckney was one. Improper demands were made upon these envoys, one being that to be received by the French Directory the envoys should give them a bribe of £50,000. Upon this, Pinckney made his famous reply—"No! No! Not a sixpence." France continuing her raids on American vessels, the United States made preparations for war. George Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of the army and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney was made one of three major generals. War was prevented, however, by concessions from France who at this time was still at war with England and did not wish war with the United States.

The American republic, too feeble to command respect abroad, was receiving little consideration from France and England.



John Caldwell Calhoun, the South Carolina Statesman, Who Served Forty Years in Congress and in Cabinet Positions and Who Was Twice Elected Vice-President of the United States.



**305. War with England Declared.** Unmindful of the Jay Treaty of 1796, England continued the practice of taking seamen from American vessels. On this account and from many other annoyances to American shipping, relations became so strained between the two countries that William Pinkney, who had been minister to the Court of St. James for five years, returned to the United States. Congress met in 1811, and the great question before it was the settlement of the difficulty with England.

To this Congress South Carolina sent delegates fired with indignation at the treatment which the country had suffered at the hands of Great Britain. Among the members sent to the House were John C. Calhoun, Langdon Cheves, David Rogerson Williams, and William Lowndes. These men played a very important part in the work of the Congress. Calhoun was ranking member on the committee on foreign affairs and afterward chairman; Cheves was made chairman of the committee on naval affairs, and Williams chairman of the committee on military affairs. These men saw no alternative but war. On the 18th of May, 1812, President Madison signed the bill declaring war upon England. John C. Calhoun was the author of this measure.

**306. South Carolinians Honored.** South Carolina had the honor of furnishing the major general for the southern department, in the person of Thomas Pinckney—former governor of South Carolina. Wade Hampton, who had taken an active part in the partisan warfare of the State during the Revolution, received the appointment of brigadier general.

**307. Preparations.** The second war with England took place during the administration of Joseph Alston, who was governor of South Carolina for the term 1812-1814. As the bulk of the war was carried on at the western posts of the United States and on the high seas, it affected this State



but little, except as an interruption to her commerce. South Carolina, however, made preparations for invasion. Fortifications were raised in and around Charleston and such places along the coast as were available for the landing of

the enemy were put in a condition for defense and manned with troops.

**308. Capture of the Dominica.** Charleston sent forth a number of private armed vessels which did great injury to the commerce of Great Britain. One or two events, occurring near the Carolina coast, were particularly brilliant and surpassed by no exploits during the war. Among these was the capture of the Dominica, in August,



Langdon Cheves, Member of Congress, Speaker of the House of Representatives, and President of the Bank of the United States.

1813, by the Decatur, a private armed vessel of Charleston, commanded by Captain Diron. Captain Diron succeeded in boarding the Dominica, a British frigate, and, firearms becoming useless, the fight was carried on with cutlasses. The captain and chief officers of the enemy vessel were killed, the decks covered with dead and wounded, and the British colors finally torn down.

The same cruiser, the Decatur, shortly afterward captured and brought into Charleston the British ship London

Trader, mounting several guns and having a valuable cargo of sugar, coffee, cotton, rum, and molasses.

In January, 1814, another sea fight occurred near Charleston. This was between the American schooner, *Alligator*, commanded by Sailing Master Bassett, and a British frigate and brig. The crew of the British ships attempted a night boarding attack on the *Alligator* as she lay off Cole's Island. The American seamen were outnumbered ten to one, but they drove off the British sailors, inflicting heavy losses, escaping themselves with two men killed and two wounded.

**309. Descents Upon the Coast.** The British made several descents upon the Carolina coast. Once they landed on Dewees's Island, just north of Charleston, burnt some small craft and plundered several of the seashore plantations. They also visited Capers's and other islands near Charleston and carried off the live stock and provisions. They landed in force on Hilton Head, near Beaufort, and repeated their plunderings. These places were all unprotected and with a population too widely scattered to offer any resistance. At one time Charleston was blockaded by the British, who took many prizes with rich cargoes.

**310. End of the War.** South Carolina of course supplied her full quota of troops for the national army. Many of them were descendants of Revolutionary heroes and some were themselves heroes of the Revolution. They were present wherever the enemy threatened—in Canada, Florida, Louisiana, and elsewhere. In 1814, the war came to a close in victory for the Americans. The United States had again triumphed over Great Britain.

**311. Progress Unaffected by War.** The War of 1812 retarded but little the material progress of South Carolina. During the administrations of David Rogerson Williams, Andrew Pickens, and John Geddes, who, in the order named, succeeded to the office of governor, the legislature voted

large appropriations for internal improvements. Occasional hurricanes on the Carolina coast caused the loss of lives and property and epidemics of yellow fever made severe inroads in the population; but, withall, the period following



William Lowndes, Son of Rawlins Lowndes, Educated in England, and Prominent Member of Congress.

the second war with England was one of peace and general prosperity.

During this period we find South Carolinians taking prominent part in affairs of the nation. From 1817 to 1825, John C. Calhoun, who had been active in bringing to an issue the trouble with England, was Secretary of War. At this time he reorganized the United States Military Academy

at West Point and started it upon the road to excellence. In 1825, Calhoun was chosen vice-president of the United States, holding this office for nearly eight years. In 1814, Langdon Cheves was chosen Speaker of the House of Representatives, the highest position in the body of law-makers in Washington. In 1819, he was elected president of the bank of the United States. William Lowndes had made a name for himself in Congress with his appeals for the establishment of a strong navy and army. In 1816, he fathered a tariff bill, but was severely censured by South Carolina for doing so, as this State had always opposed a high tariff. He and



Calhoun were close friends and did much of their work in Washington together. It was an ambition of theirs to see the various States bound together by highways. In 1821, they were both named by South Carolina as suitable candidates for the presidency of the United States.

**312. Attempted Breach of the Peace.** During the administration of Governor Thomas Bennett (1820-1822), the successor of John Geddes, a slave insurrection was instigated by a negro from St. Domingo, named Denmark Vesey. By promising them the plunder of Charleston, Vesey succeeded in corrupting a number of negroes, but fortunately, through the fidelity of some old slaves, the plot was discovered and frustrated. The principal negroes were tried and Vesey and about thirty-four others were hanged. This was the only attempt at insurrection since the slave uprising in the early days of the royal government, which was stirred up by the Spaniards from Florida.

**313. Visit of Lafayette.** John Lyde Wilson, an eminent lawyer of Georgetown, held the gubernatorial office from 1822 to 1824, when he was succeeded by Richard Irving Manning, a planter of Sumter District and the son of a brave captain in the Revolution. During the latter's administration, the Marquis de Lafayette visited the State in his circuit of the United States. His visit occasioned special gratification to South Carolina, as it was upon her shores (at North Island in Georgetown County) that the Marquis had landed nearly fifty years before, when his sympathy for the Americans had brought him over to aid in the Revolution. The gallant Frenchman was received with grateful enthusiasm and his stay made an occasion of grand fetes.

**314. Approach of National Troubles.** Governor Manning was succeeded in 1826, by John Taylor, a planter of Richland, who in 1828 was succeeded by Stephen D. Miller of Sumter



District. Interest in home affairs during these administrations was clouded by the violent opposition in South Carolina to the raising of the tariff by Congress. The legislature of the State twice passed resolutions against these tariff laws and entered protests. South Carolinians in Congress were ably carrying on the fight for the rights of the States and the excitement on this subject hourly increased within the State.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### STATES' RIGHTS MOVEMENT.

**315. European Nations Predict Failure of Union.** To understand the development of the States' Rights movement, we must retrace the making of the union compact between the thirteen States in 1789. At this time there was not a republic in the world. England, France, Spain—all nations of the earth—were governed by monarchs who held more or less despotic sway over their subjects. When the American States set up after the Revolution a free and independent government, through which the American people undertook to govern themselves, the European nations predicted a speedy dismemberment of the union. It was not believed possible that thirteen independent States could weld themselves into a permanent, harmonious whole. How nearly these predictions came to being fulfilled we soon shall see.

**316. Difficulties of Union.** It was inevitable that there should be clashes of interests among the various States. This was naturally the case in a territory which comprised so large an area as that of the United States and in which the only communication was by water travel, in those days very slow, and by stage coach. A trip from New York to Charleston by carriage, over rough roads and through almost unbroken forests, was a perilous journey of weeks. News of the acts of Congress could not reach the States until long after they had been passed and become laws. With such poor means of communication it is not surprising that the States were not bound very closely in the union and that their chief interests lay in the management of affairs within their own boundaries.

**317. The First Issue.** The first issue between the States was over the tariff question. The first Congress in 1789

laid a tariff or tax on foreign imports for the raising of revenue. This tariff was favorable to the New England States, as it protected their manufactories, while it was objectionable to South Carolina as this State was entirely agricultural and dependent upon Europe for her manufactured goods, which, on account of the tariff, became higher priced. The other Southern States approved of the tariff as they hoped to build manufactories in the South, but South Carolina was always opposed to a protective tariff and as it was raised higher and higher in later years, this State voiced protests in almost every session of Congress.

**318. Protests Against Federal Powers.** South Carolina was not the only State which found dissatisfaction in the central government. All the States saw the wisdom of the union and wished to preserve it, but they were jealous of the authority which the central government assumed. Gradually it was taking to itself powers which heretofore only the individual States had exercised. In 1798, Kentucky issued what was known as the "Kentucky Resolutions" in which it protested against an objectionable measure passed by Congress, known as the "Alien and Sedition Laws," and threatened to nullify it on the ground that Congress had no power other than that delegated by the Constitution, and that when it exceeded these powers, the parties to the union compact could declare the legislation void. On the same occasion, Virginia issued resolutions declaring that a State had the right to interfere when Congress assumed unlawful powers. Thus we see a rapidly growing jealousy of the federal government.

**319. Admission of New States.** A more serious problem arose over permitting the owning of slaves in new States seeking admission to the Union. This showed for the first time a grave line of cleavage between the Northern and the Southern States. It will be recollected that the treaty which

recognized the independence of the States ceded the territory as far as the Mississippi River. As this country became sufficiently populated, application was made to the Federal government for admission to the Union as separate States, and with each one the question arose as to whether



Robert Y. Hayne, Soldier in the War of 1812, United States Senator, and Governor of South Carolina.

the institution of slavery should be recognized within its borders. Southerners who with their slaves had migrated to these States to the westward, naturally were insistent that slavery should be allowed. Having long been opposed to slavery, since with their cold climate it was unprofitable, the Northern States objected to its extension in any State of the new territory, and the admission of a State was always attended with bitter debates in Congress. Thus we see the be-

ginning of a serious division of interest in the Union.

**320. Part Slavery Played.** It must be understood that slavery was introduced at first into every English settlement in America. The English merchants had poured in great shiploads of negroes, and in their trade with the colonies made great fortunes. So profitable was the commerce made possible by slave labor that England, after abolishing slavery as a blot upon her fair name, had refused to allow a prohibition of the slave trade in her colonies.

**321. Missouri Compromise.** Even as early as the time of the Revolution, it was well established that slaves could not live in the cold climate of the Northern colonies, though they flourished in the Southern colonies. The North, unsuited to extensive agriculture, developed manufacturing, while the South grew wealthy from her rice and indigo fields, and,



finally, from the cultivation of cotton. The economic life of the Southern States was apparently absolutely dependent upon slave labor, while the North was economically independent of it. Slave-holding and non-slave-holding marked such a fundamental difference between the two sections that the admission of new States was dependent upon an amicable settlement of this question. For each non-slave-holding State which was admitted an admission of a slave-holding State was required. Thus when Missouri came into the Union as a slave-holding State, Maine came in free. At the same time, it was agreed that slavery should be excluded north of a line 36 degrees, 30 minutes north latitude. It was felt that the balance of power must thus be kept in nice adjustment, that the slave holders must have equal control of the government with the non-slave holders.

**322. Widening of the Breach.** Meanwhile, the tariff was raised higher and higher and the Southern States grew desperate. They felt that they were being deliberately discriminated against. The tariff of 1828 was called the "Tariff of Abominations." The legislature of South Carolina made a formal protest against the injustice of the United States tariff laws. It appeared to the people of the South that the North, because of its greater population and consequently greater representation in Congress, was trying to usurp all the powers of government. The breach was rapidly widening between the two sections.

**323. Hayne-Webster Debate.** At this crisis in the relations of the sections, one of the greatest debates in American history took place on the floor of the Senate, between Robert Y. Hayne of South Carolina and Daniel Webster of Massachusetts. Hayne was one of Carolina's greatest sons. He had fought in the War of 1812, had been Speaker of the House in the State legislature, and at this time was in the United States Senate. Webster was a worthy opponent.

The true issues of the debate involved the rights of the States and those of the Union.

Hayne claimed that the bond of union was a compact between the States as equals; that in the Constitution the States had conceded certain powers to the general government and had reserved all other powers to themselves; that any act of usurpation of these powers could be vetoed by the States.

Webster argued that the Constitution was not a compact between the States, but a government of the American people as a whole and that an individual State did not have the right to make void or nullify any act of the national government. The debate served to show the attitude of the two sections towards the central government.

**324. Division of Opinion in South Carolina.** It must not be imagined that South Carolina was at one on the subject of nullification of acts of the Federal government. To the contrary, the State was in a turmoil. There was a large party opposed to the extreme doctrine of nullification. All agreed to the injustice of the high tariff laws, but the Union party, as those who opposed the nullifiers were called, held that South Carolina, having entered the Union of her own free will, could withdraw from it at any time, but that no State as an integral member of the Union could veto an act of the national government. In this local contest, both parties became so violent that the State was threatened with civil war. The great leader of the nullifiers was John C. Calhoun, who was ably supported by Robert Y. Hayne, George McDuffie, and James Hamilton, Jr., all of whom had carried on a warm opposition to the tariff laws in Congress. On the Union side were such men as Hugh Swinton Legare, Grimke, Petigru, and Elliott. In 1830, the Union party elected the intendant of Charleston, while the governor of the State, James Hamilton, Jr. (1830-32), was a great Nullifier. These

parties were often on the verge of bloodshed in Charleston and often they forgot the argument in the bitterness of the controversy.

**325. Ordinance of Nullification.** The crisis came in 1832, when Congress, now in control of the North, again increased



A Train on the Railway Between Charleston and Hamburg, the First Railroad in the United States.—*From a Descriptive Drawing.*

the tariff. John C. Calhoun had succeeded Hayne in the United States Senate, and Hayne had returned home and been elected governor of South Carolina (1832-1834). The Nullification party in South Carolina was estimated at 20,000, and the Union party at 15,000. The Nullifiers



triumphed at the ballot box and sent their men to the legislature. A convention with the governor of the State as chairman, met at Columbia and declared the tariffs of 1828 and 1832 null and void, and declared that if the United States government attempted to use force, South Carolina would set up a government of its own. This was the famous ordinance of nullification.

The victorious Nullifiers celebrated their victory with a torch light procession in Charleston, made a demonstration against the City Gazette, and in various ways expressed their contempt for the defeated Union men.

**326. Steps of the National Government.** In reply to the ordinance of nullification, Andrew Jackson, president of the United States at this time, issued a proclamation denouncing the ordinance and begged the people of his native State not to violate the law and defy the general government. Governor Hayne replied with an assertion of the sovereignty of the State, and South Carolina prepared for invasion. President Jackson sent armed vessels to the port of Charleston to enforce the tariff laws of Congress. Meanwhile, troops were organized in South Carolina, large supplies of cannon and necessary munitions of war bought, and a call made for volunteers. None of the other Southern States, however, followed her lead, much to the disappointment of South Carolina.

**327. Compromise.** War was averted, however, by a compromise introduced in Congress, by Henry Clay of Kentucky, to which John C. Calhoun agreed for South Carolina. By this compromise, a law was enacted, by which the tariff was gradually reduced for a period of ten years, then to remain uniform. It also stipulated that the tariff was to be for revenue only. Peace was restored and war averted. South Carolina repealed the ordinance of nullification, but the line of cleavage was so sharply drawn that the Southern States felt that



their interest lay in one direction while that of the Northern States lay in another.

In South Carolina the Union party subsided. There had been so much bitterness in the contest that many of the defeated leaders left the State, among whom was Hugh Swinton Legare, who abandoned his literary dictatorship in Charleston for the position as charge-d'affaires in Belgium.

**328. Anti-Slavery Cry in the North.** The question of the tariff settled, a far more serious problem arose in the growing opposition in the North to slavery in the Southern States. By the Missouri Compromise, in 1820, it had been agreed that slavery should be excluded north of 36 degrees and 30 minutes north latitude. It was then presumed that the North, having succeeded in prohibiting slavery within the Northern States, would let the matter rest. This, however, did not prove to be the case. The twenty years following the Missouri Compromise marked the forming of numerous anti-slavery societies in the North. Traveling preachers made their circuits of the country denouncing the institution, and by 1834, sharp debates were to be heard in Congress on the subject. By 1835, there were 350 societies for the abolition of slavery in existence, which made a business of sending to the Southern States violent anti-slavery pamphlets intended to arouse in the slaves a desire for freedom. This practice was so warmly opposed in South Carolina, that in 1834, a mob of Charlestonians broke into the post office in Charleston and seized and destroyed a quantity of the abolition tracts. Much bitterness of feeling was arising out of the question of slavery.

**329. First Railway in United States.** South Carolina was the first State in the Union to operate successfully a steam railway. In 1833, a railroad from Hamburg (near Augusta) to Charleston, 136 miles away, was completed. It had taken years to build this railroad, at that time a most brilliant

feat, and it was the longest railway in the world. We of this day cannot realize the revolutionary nature of this accomplishment. The Santee Canal, which was completed in 1800, had been a great achievement and had proved a large factor in unifying the interests of the Up-Country and the Low-Country, but water travel was slow and there-



Floating Bales of Cotton Down a South Carolina River to Market.  
*From a Descriptive Drawing.*

fore unsatisfactory. Records of the time tell of the use of sleds and of heavy carts for carrying produce to the markets, over the poor roads, sometimes at very great distances. Bales of cotton were thrown into the streams to float with the current to markets. Hogheads of tobacco hauled by oxen were constantly arriving in Charleston from the interior of the State. Barrels of resin were bound together,

put on rafts, and floated to Georgetown and other points. This was changed by the construction of railways.

**330. Seminole War.** Governor Hayne had been succeeded in 1834 by George McDuffie, who had been prominent in Congress as an advocate of the theory of nullification. During McDuffie's administration as governor, war broke out in Florida with the Seminole Indians there, who had resisted the efforts of the United States government to move them beyond the Mississippi River. In 1836, South Carolina, at the call of the national government, furnished a regiment of infantry for three months service. During this brief period, South Carolina lost valuable lives. The Indians, when attacked, would retreat into almost impenetrable swamps, and, as in the incursions made during the Revolution, the State lost more men from swamp fever than those killed by the Indians. The war dragged on for several years, and was finally brought to an end by Colonel Zachary Taylor. Osceola, the Seminole chief, was taken prisoner and sent to Fort Moultrie, where he was kept until his death in 1838.

**331. School Report.** Pierce M. Butler followed McDuffie as governor of the State. During his administration, the report of the commissioner of free schools gave the number of schools as 695 and the number of pupils as 6,718. Butler was succeeded in 1838 by Patrick Noble, and in 1839 the report showed an increase from 695 schools, with an attendance of 6,718 to 832 schools, with an attendance of 8,867. During Noble's administration, there were twelve banks in the State, and, as it was a time of general financial depression all over the United States, the condition of these banks excited a great deal of attention. Prices of land and slaves declined and many business firms failed. Governor Noble's administration was also marked by the State Agricultural Convention, held in Columbia in 1839, which organized

agricultural societies in each district of the State. These societies were of great benefit in bringing the people together.

About the middle of 1840 Governor Noble died and was succeeded by Lieutenant Governor B. K. Henagan.

**332. Attitude of State Towards Slavery.** The chief interest of the State during the period following the nullification crisis lay in the slavery question. The fact that all bitterness in South Carolina resulting from the theories for and against nullification had entirely subsided was evidenced by the election of John P. Richardson, in 1840, to the gubernatorial chair. Richardson had been one of the leaders of the Union party against the Nullifiers in 1832, and his election showed that all party strife had sunk in the greater issue of slavery.

South Carolina had always deplored the existence of slavery in the State, and even in Proprietary days had made efforts to check its growth. As an English province, the right to prohibit the importation of slaves had been denied her. Henry and John Laurens had been strong advocates of liberty for the negro and the South as a whole recognized the evil of holding human beings in bondage. The invention of the cotton gin, with the consequent opening of great areas to the cultivation of cotton, had made negro labor almost a necessity to the economic well-being of the South, but despite this, the further importation of slaves had been stopped. At this period there were upwards of 200,000 slaves in South Carolina.

As the fight against slavery grew into national importance, the Southern States began to resent what they considered meddlesome interference by the Northern States in their domestic affairs. They had not resented the open fight over the admission of slave and free States of the western territory into the Union, but inborn in them was the opinion that each State had sovereign control over its internal



affairs, except in certain powers which had been expressly given to the national government by the Constitution. This was their understanding when they entered the Union.

Just as the Southern States had protested against the tariff laws in the nullification crisis, so now they insisted on their rights as States to settle the slavery question without any outside interference. As John C. Calhoun had been the chief exponent of the States' rights theory in nullification days, he now led the fight for the rights of South Carolina and the other Southern States on the slavery question. This formed the subject of discussion at all cross roads, at every little village, and at the court houses; while in the cities and in the larger towns one could hear public speeches in the town halls where the people eagerly gathered. In 1842, Governor Richardson was followed by James H. Hammond, who, as chief executive of the State, took the part of the South in a warm controversy on slavery. Hammond had been a great Nullifier and believed in State's rights. During Hammond's administration the Citadel in Charleston and the Arsenal in Columbia were converted into military schools, as had been recommended by Governor Richardson.

**333. Writers of the Period.** In this period, we find South Carolina rich in literary men. In the field of oratory, the State yields precedence to no other. On account of political conditions arising from the theory of nullification, States' rights, and, finally, secession, South Carolina was very prolific in orators. John C. Calhoun became the acknowledged champion and leader of the States' rights movement in Congress, first as a member of the House and afterward of the Senate. Robert Y. Hayne is famous for the speech in Congress in which he measured swords with Webster and came off from the contest with honor. Among other noted

orators of the State were James Henry Hammond, George McDuffie and William C. Preston.

In poetry,\* we find Henry Timrod and Paul Hamilton Hayne pre-eminent in the State. Timrod was born at Charleston, December 8, 1829. He first studied law, but abandoned it to become a teacher. He became a tutor in the families of various planters, in the meanwhile cultivating his poetic gifts. His first volume of poems appeared in 1860. The most noted of his poems are "The Cotton Boll," "Carolina," and "Spring." Today Timrod ranks as one of the greatest of American poets. Paul Hamilton Hayne was born in Charleston in January, 1830. Like Timrod, he studied law, but abandoned it for a literary career. He became the editor of various Charleston magazines. Among his most famous poems are "A Dream of the South Wind," "The Woodland Phases," "By the Grave of Henry Timrod." Hayne died July 6, 1886.

**334. Approach of Foreign Troubles.** Governor Hammond was succeeded in 1844 by William Aiken, and during his administration slavery agitations were interrupted by the approach of trouble with Mexico. In 1827, Mexico had emancipated its slaves. Its northern province, Texas, peopled largely by citizens of the United States, many of whom were slave holders, refused to free its slaves, and, declaring its independence of Mexico in 1835, set up a separate government. War followed between Texas and Mexico, in which hundreds of men from the Southern States, many from South Carolina, were brutally killed. Texas finally

---

\*Of the novelists William Gilmore Simms takes first place. Simms was born in Charleston in 1806 and was the moving spirit of the group of literary men in that city. In his works Simms portrays the Southern character in provincial and Revolutionary days. He has drawn impressive pictures of the scenery of the Low-Country and truthful characterizations of the Indians. He has written a series of romances of the Revolution and many volumes dealing with the legends of South Carolina. Simms died in Charleston in 1870.—*The Editor*.

won the war, and in 1845 applied for admission into the United States, with the understanding that it was to come into the Union as a slave State. Although Texas had been recognized as an independent power by England and France as early as 1839, Mexico refused to recognize her independence, and, when Texas was admitted into the Union, declared war against the United States.

## CHAPTER XXV.

### THE PALMETTO REGIMENT IN THE MEXICAN WAR.

**335. Palmetto Regiment Organized.** Mexico declared war against the United States on April 23, 1846. For several years relations between the two countries had been strained. A great deal of bad feeling arose over the failure of Mexico to pay claims for damages to property of American citizens injured in the waging of the many revolutions which tore the Mexican nation. Consequently, the annexation of Texas by the United States was not the only cause for bad feeling between Mexico and the United States.

Since it was a slave State, the annexation of Texas was welcomed by the South, though Calhoun opposed the war, on general principles. When President Polk issued a call for volunteers for the war with Mexico, he had little difficulty in getting the desired number in the Southern States. South Carolina was asked for one regiment. This was raised and ready to be mustered into service in 36 days after Congress passed the bill authorizing the president to call for volunteers. The captains of the companies with the names of the sections of the State in which they were mustered are: Francis Sumter, Sumter; R. G. M. Dunovant, Chester; Keith S. Moffatt, Kershaw; Preston S. Brooks, Edgefield; Foster Marshall, Abbeville; William Blanding, Charleston; Joseph Kennedy, Fairfield; William D. DeSaussure, Richland; Leroy Secrest, Lancaster; N. I. Walker, Barnwell.

Pierce Mason Butler of Edgefield, governor of South Carolina from 1836 to 1838, was chosen colonel; J. P. Dickinson of Kershaw, lieutenant colonel; and A. H. Gladden of Richland, major. The regiment was known as the Palmetto Regiment.



**336. On to Mexico.** The ten companies of volunteers assembled in Charleston and were mustered into the service of the United States. From Charleston the troops proceeded by railroad to Hamburg, just across the Savannah River from Augusta. There leave was taken of the regiment by Governor David Johnson, who had succeeded Aiken in 1846. Partly on foot and partly by train, the Palmetto Regiment made its way to Montgomery, Alabama. From Montgomery the South Carolina volunteers went on steamboats to Mobile, Alabama, where they were quartered for some time awaiting the arrival of transports.

Already there had been serious fighting between United States troops, under General Zachary Taylor, and Mexican forces on the Texas border and in Mexico. The Palmetto Regiment, however, was assigned to the command of General Winfield Scott, whose orders were to invade Mexico through Vera Cruz, its important port on the Gulf of Mexico. Scott's army of about 12,000 men, among whom were the South Carolina troops, was concentrated on Lobos Island, in the Gulf of Mexico. As soon as all the transports arrived at Lobos Island, Scott sailed for Vera Cruz, which a fleet of United States vessels was blockading. He captured the city after a siege and bombardment, lasting from March 7 to March 29, 1847. The Palmetto Regiment in a brigade, under General Quitman, was sent upon the fall of Vera Cruz to take a smaller port called Alvarado. After a sixty-mile march down the Mexican coast, on which it suffered severely for lack of water, Quitman's brigade reached Alvarado only to find that the United States fleet had already captured it. Scott, meanwhile, took up his march into the interior of Mexico, hastening away from Vera Cruz as soon as he could, fearing an outbreak of yellow fever among his troops.

**337. From Vera Cruz to Puebla.** Quitman returned to Vera Cruz from Alvarado and overtook Scott's army after he had fought and won the Battle of Cerro Gordo (Thick Ridge). Continuing his progress, Scott took Perote, a Mexican fortress, and occupied Puebla, the city second in importance in Mexico, without further resistance. For sixteen weeks



Pierce M. Butler, Governor of South Carolina and Colonel of the Palmetto Regiment in the Mexican War.

the Palmetto Regiment and the remainder of Scott's army lay in Puebla. There was a great deal of illness among the troops, contracted while passing across the unhealthy coastal plain of Mexico. Puebla is on the high table land which forms the interior of Mexico, and its climate is quite healthful. In Puebla, Scott waited impatiently for his sick to recover and for promised reinforcements to arrive.

**338. March to the Capital.** Finally, additional troops reached Puebla, and Scott's army resumed its march on August 7, 1847, toward the City of Mexico. As the distance between Vera Cruz and Puebla was too great for Scott to hope with the forces at his disposal to hold the line of communication open between his army and the former city, he merely left a small garrison at Puebla to guard the city and some sick soldiers and started into the valley of Mexico,

almost as completely cut off from the outside world as the brave Cortez was when he undertook his conquest of Mexico. In the reorganization of the army before the march from Puebla began, the Palmetto Regiment had been assigned to a brigade commanded by General Shields. As yet the South Carolinians had seen little fighting, but they were destined to see much of it before they returned to Puebla again.

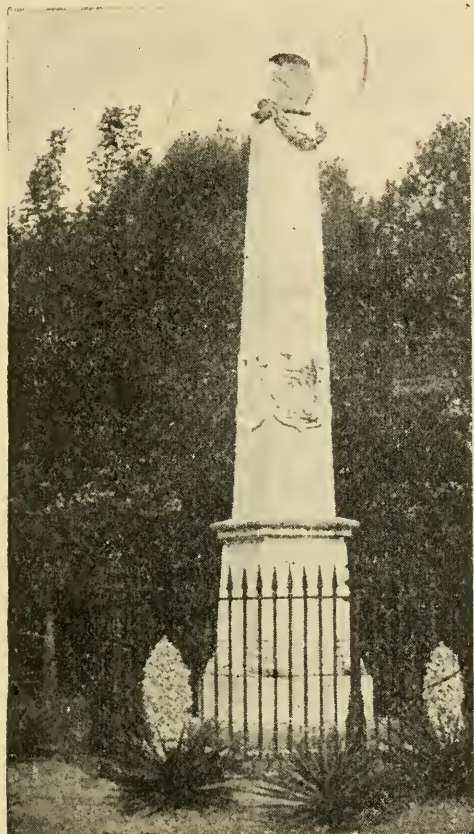
On the first part of the march toward the City of Mexico, the Palmetto Regiment was placed in the rearguard of the army. In this position of honor, it had a sharp skirmish with a large body of Mexican lancers, mounted troops who hovered behind Scott's columns. The army met a large Mexican force, under General Santa Anna, president of Mexico, at Contreras, a hamlet near the City of Mexico. Scott won the battle which followed. The Palmetto Regiment was held in reserve during this fight. The impatience of the South Carolinians at their continued enforced inaction was voiced in a single famous sentence by Colonel Butler. After the battle of Contreras, he wrote General Worth, who commanded a division, recommending Lieutenant Colonel Dickinson for a position on his staff. "Colonel Dickinson," said Butler, "desires a place near the flashing of the guns."

Having fought and won at Contreras, his second pitched battle, Scott again ordered his troops forward toward the capital of Mexico. The situation of the city made approach toward it exceedingly difficult. It lay surrounded by mountains in the midst of a marshy plain dotted by lakes. Fortunately for General Scott, he had under him a corps of able engineers, among whom were Captain Robert E. Lee and Lieutenant P. G. T. Beauregard. The value of the service performed by these engineers in leading the troops over the best routes to the City of Mexico cannot be overestimated.



**339. Battle of Churubusco.** On August 20th, the day after the battle of Contreras, Scott ordered an assault on Churubusco, a strongly entrenched and fortified position on the southern outskirts of the City of Mexico. His course in attacking this position has been condemned on the grounds that he could have captured the City of Mexico without doing so, and that he paid too dearly for the victory in the loss of men. Scott had heard, however, that the works at Churubusco protected a cannon foundry, which really did not exist, and this false report may have led him to order the assault.

The Palmetto Regiment, as a part of Shields' brigade, proceeded to the attack on Churubusco, across a very marshy tract of land. The Palmetto Regiment was in the lead, as it was to be



Monument at Camden to Lieut. Col. Dickinson of the Palmetto Regiment.

the base around which the other regiments in the brigade were to form. The heavy mud and ditches in the marsh impeded the Palmetto advance. The South Carolinians struggled in mud through a thick field of corn. Then they came to a field of wheat, across which the Mexican



works lay 300 yards away. It was not until the Palmettos reached the wheat field that the order to form the line of battle was given. While they executed this order in full view and easy musket range of the Mexican trenches, they suffered severely from a withering fire which tested their courage to the utmost. They stood their ground bravely, though, until the line of battle was formed, then they charged the Mexican works with Colonel Butler leading them. Colonel Butler paid with his life for his valor. He was killed when half way across the field, after having been wounded, when his horse was shot under him, almost at the moment the charge began. The gallant Lieutenant Colonel Dickinson also fell mortally wounded during the charge. The Mexicans abandoned their trenches as the troops swept down upon them, and Churubusco was in Scott's possession after further fighting in another part of the field. Dickinson lived but a short while after the battle was over. Major Gladden took command of the remnant of the Palmetto Regiment left after the bloody charge on Churubusco.

The day following the battle of Churubusco, Scott and Santa Anna agreed to an armistice, though the City of Mexico lay within Scott's grasp. The armistice was terminated by Scott on September 6th.

**340. Assault on Chapultepec.** On September 12th, Scott had his batteries to open fire on Chapultepec (Grasshopper Hill), a rocky mound about 200 feet high on the crest of which was a castle used as a training school for officers for the Mexican army, corresponding to our West Point. On the morning of September 13th, Scott ordered an assault on Chapultepec. In this attack the Palmetto Regiment advanced up the steep side of the hill, at the head of Quitman's division, to which Shields' brigade was attached. The castle was successfully stormed and captured. Im-

mediately after the castle fell, while the victorious American troops were still intermingled in its courtyard, an order



Monument of Bronze and Iron Erected by the General Assembly on the State House Grounds in Honor of the Palmetto Regiment.

came to double-quick down the road on the side of Chapultepec to the causeway which led across a marsh to the Belen gate of the City of Mexico.

**341. Palmetto Flag Flies Over Belen Gate.** The Palmetto Regiment and Persifor Smith's Rifle Regiment were ordered out together. These two regiments proceeded down the causeway. Fortunately for them, an aqueduct had been built in the center of the causeway. The Palmetto and the Rifles took shelter, as they advanced together, behind the great stone pillars of this aqueduct, and, running from pillar to pillar, made their way toward the Belen gate, where Santa Anna himself was in command of the Mexican defenses. The South Carolinians and Smith's Rifles suffered heavily from a hot cross fire poured into them by the Mexicans. Their advance, however, was steady. Finally, the Mexicans fled from the defenses immediately at the gate to stronger works behind it. The gate was entered by the Palmetto Regiment and Smith's Rifles about 1:20 o'clock. Lieutenant Frederick W. Selleck, of the Abbeville company, climbed on top of the defenses at the gate and called for a flag. The banner of the Palmetto Regiment was passed up to him. It was thus the first American flag to fly over any part of the City of Mexico. Lieutenant Selleck was wounded as he held it aloft. The Mexican defenses within the gate were too strong to be attacked. Consequently, the Palmetto Regiment lay behind the defenses at the Belen gate all night.

**342. Fall of the City of Mexico.** The next day, September 14, 1847, the City of Mexico was surrendered to General Scott. With his army, he occupied it until a treaty of peace was signed on February 2, 1848, between the United States and Mexico.

On October 19, 1847, about 275 troops, under Major Maxcy Gregg, sailed from Charleston on the ship Orphan to reinforce the Palmetto Regiment. They saw no service, except garrison duty at Vera Cruz.

**343. Palmetto Regiment Honored.** The Palmetto Regiment did its part gallantly in the War with Mexico. Only about 300 out of the 1,000 or more volunteers who formed the regiment remained after the war was over. The General Assembly voted massive medals, gold for the officers and silver for the men, to the members of the Palmetto Regiment. It also had erected in its honor a monument in the form of a bronze and iron palmetto tree, which now stands on the State House grounds.

In 1848, Governor David Johnson was succeeded by Whitemarsh B. Seabrook, of Edisto Island.



## CHAPTER XXVI.

### WAR BETWEEN THE SECTIONS INEVITABLE.

**344. Balance of States Disturbed.** By the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, which was negotiated by General James Gadsden, of South Carolina, Mexico ceded to the United States the territory which has since become the States of California, Nevada, Utah, part of Colorado, and the greater part of the territories of New Mexico and Arizona. The extension or prohibition of slavery into these areas was now the issue of the day. It became the subject of famous debates in Congress. John C. Calhoun declared that Congress had no right to pass any law by which citizens of any State of the Union should be deprived from emigrating with their property (which included slaves) into any of the territories of the United States. A great many wished to prohibit outright the extension of slavery, while others proposed that the question should be determined by the people of the territories.

With the close of the Mexican War, there were fifteen slave States and fifteen free States in the Union—an even balance, which neither section was willing to have broken in favor of the other. A few days after the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, the world was electrified by the news of the discovery of gold in California. Citizens from every part of the Union sold their possessions and began their journey to the gold fields. Ships from every country made their way to the Pacific coast in a mad search for gold. In less than two years the population of California was sufficient for the requirements of admission to the Union, and in 1849 California knocked at the door for admission as a “free State.” As her admission as such would destroy the balance, there were threats throughout the South of seces-

sion from the Union if California was permitted to come in as a free State. Such was the precarious condition of affairs at the end of the year 1849.

**345. Fugitive Slaves.** A continual source of irritation between the two sections of the Union lay in the escape of slaves from the "slave" into the "free" States, in which flight they were aided by Northerners, who made a systematic business of aiding runaway negroes to escape from their masters. It is estimated that about a thousand a year made good their escape, and that there were probably twenty thousand of these fugitives living in the "free" States. The system was called the "underground railroad," and it consisted of numerous stations, usually a cellar or a barn where the runaways were concealed during the day and from whence they were sent on to the next station by night, and so on until they reached free territory. This was regarded by the South as deliberate theft of its property, and was resented accordingly. A very severe fugitive slave act was demanded in Congress, by which those who aided the runaways could be punished. The North, in its turn, resented this.

**346. Calhoun's Last Speech.** The question of the admittance of California, as well as causing intense interest in the various States, brought forth great debates in Congress. Two of the most famous speeches in history were delivered in the halls of Congress in March of 1850—one by Daniel Webster of Massachusetts, who had opposed Robert Y. Hayne of South Carolina, in the great debate concerning States' rights in 1832, and John C. Calhoun, South Carolina's greatest statesman. To the great offense of the North, in his March speech, Webster declared that the North had failed in its duty to the South in aiding the escape of fugitive slaves and that the South had just ground for complaint. He also denounced the Abolition societies, stating that they

were causing strife and widening the breach between the sections.

At this time, Calhoun, after serving South Carolina in national affairs for forty years, was a dying man. He tottered into the Senate supported by friends, and, unable to deliver his speech, it had to be read for him. It was a most impressive scene. Calhoun was wrapped in a great coat; his long white hair hanging down, framed his pallid, emaciated face. His eyes flashed and his whole countenance lighted when certain stirring passages of his speech were read. Below are quoted portions of the famous speech. Throughout, we see a plea for the preservation of the Union, but not at the expense of the rights of the States:

“How can the Union be saved? There is but one way . . . ; and that is by a full and final settlement, on the principle of justice, of all questions at issue. The South asks for justice, simple justice, and less she ought not to take . . . .

“But can this be done? Yes, easily; not by the weaker party, . . . . but by the stronger. The North has only . . . to do justice by conceding to the South an equal right in the acquired territory, and to do her duty by causing the stipulations relative to fugitive slaves to be faithfully fulfilled, to cease to agitate the slave question . . . . .

“But will the North agree to do this? It is for her to answer . . . . If you who represent the stronger party cannot agree to settle them on the broad principle of justice and duty, say so; and let the States we both represent agree to separate and part in peace.”

By this speech we see to what lengths South Carolina was prepared to go in defense of her rights—even to the dissolution of the Union.

In 1850, Governor Seabrook was succeeded by John H. Means as governor of South Carolina.

**347. Compromise of 1850.** In August, 1850, the dispute was closed by a compromise permitting the entrance of California as a free State and enacting a very severe fugitive slave measure. The first was offensive to the South and the second offensive to the North, so that the so-called compromise became the cause of added bitterness between the two sections. Prominent leaders of South Carolina and Mississippi threatened secession. In the spring of 1851, the Southern Rights Association convened in Charleston and declared that South Carolina would not submit to such injustice of the national government. This radical party, however, was defeated at the polls that year, and leaders with secessionist views were not sent to Congress. The people as a whole wished to secede only as a last resort.

**348. Position of State in Regard to Slavery.** Slavery agitations of the Abolitionists had caused a complete change of feeling of Southerners in regard to the holding of slaves. Long before the Revolution, South Carolina had seen the evil and there had always been schemes for the final emancipation of the negro. It is true that the negro, brought from Africa in a savage state, had become a more civilized being under slavery and that for the most part he was treated with kindness and mercy, but there was always the opportunity for cruelty from a stern, unjust master or his overseers. However the South might deplore the existence of slavery, the question of freeing the negro was a big one to settle. In any case it was considered a matter for the South to settle.

With the forming of the Abolition societies in the North, the assistance given to the fugitive slaves, the bitter denunciation of the South by Northern preachers and lecturers, the attitude of the South toward slavery changed. It no longer acknowledged the evil of the institution, but dwelt on the actual results of bringing the negro savage



into a civilized land and making of him a useful human being. About this time a book written by Harriet Beecher Stowe, a Northern woman, "Uncle Tom's Cabin," came out in which only the cruel, bestial side of slavery was depicted, a side undoubtedly in existence, but one which was overshadowed by the kindly treatment of a great majority of gentleman slave-owners. This book engendered much ill-will in the South.

**349. Increased Bitterness.** John L. Manning became governor of South Carolina in 1852, and in 1854 was succeeded by James H. Adams. Interest in internal affairs was entirely eclipsed by the question of whether Kansas should be admitted as a "slave" or a "free" State. In 1854, the Missouri Compromise, which prohibited slavery north of 36 degrees, 30 minutes north latitude, was made inoperative and vast numbers from the "slave" and from the "free" States migrated to the territory of Kansas in order to influence the admission of the State as slave or free. Many persons from South Carolina emigrated with their slaves to Kansas. Conditions approaching civil war ensued between the two parties. Two governments were set up and in the conflict more than two hundred lives were lost.

In Congress, the subject of the admission of Kansas was debated with great bitterness. Senator Sumner of Massachusetts, a learned but narrow-minded, bigoted abolitionist, made a speech of scathing abuse of Senator Butler of South Carolina, who was in favor of Kansas being admitted as a slave State. In Senator Butler's absence the uncalled for insult was resented by his nephew, Preston S. Brooks, who approaching Senator Sumner as he sat in the Senate chamber, gave him a severe beating with a cane. The North was indignant at this attack, and the South was of opinion that the Northern Senator had got only what he deserved

**350. South in Fever of Excitement.** Robert F. W. Allston became governor of South Carolina in 1856, and was succeeded in 1858, by William H. Gist. These four years were ones of great moment. They were marked by increasingly violent acts of the Abolitionists, and of consequent indignation throughout the South. In Kansas, a rabid fanatic and Abolitionist named John Brown organized a band, and in the night made a raid on the farmhouses of several slave holders. Seven or eight men, utterly defenseless, were



One of the Buildings of the South Carolina Collegiate Institute at Barhamville, the First College for Women in South Carolina.

killed and their bodies as horribly mutilated as if the raiders had been savage Indians. In 1859, the same John Brown, who in the meanwhile had spent his time in aiding slaves to escape from their masters, moved to Virginia, settling near Harper's Ferry. His plan was to lead a wholesale uprising of the slaves. He collected arms and ammunition, and made a night attack on the arsenal at Harper's Ferry. In this attempt he failed, and was tried and hanged. The South was enraged at the attempt, believing it was the

action of a Northern conspiracy. It was found afterward that the arms and ammunition had been furnished by Northern sympathizers. There was great excitement in the South over the John Brown raid, which had the effect of unifying the "slave" States against the "free" States.

As the year 1860 approached, the interest in the presidential election grew. The "slave" States were naturally resolved upon electing a president with slave-holding views, and equally determined were the "free" States upon putting in a man opposed to slavery.

**351. Election of 1860.** One by one the bonds which held the North and South together had snapped. In the first place, the climate played its part and made the North a manufacturing district and the South agricultural, thus making slave labor unprofitable in the North, while most profitable in the South. Being solely an agricultural district had caused the South to oppose a high tariff, which was profitable, and therefore desirable, to the manufacturers. The differences were thus economic until the sentiment against slavery as a moral evil began to take root in the North, growing so in strength that by 1860 a new party had formed, the chief plank in the platform of which was that of anti-slavery. This party took the name of Republican, and chose as its candidate for president of the United States Abraham Lincoln, a man of lowly birth, who had through his own efforts worked his way first to the legislature of Illinois and then to a seat in Congress. It was known that he was opposed to the extension of slavery. This was the essential qualification of a candidate of the Republican party.

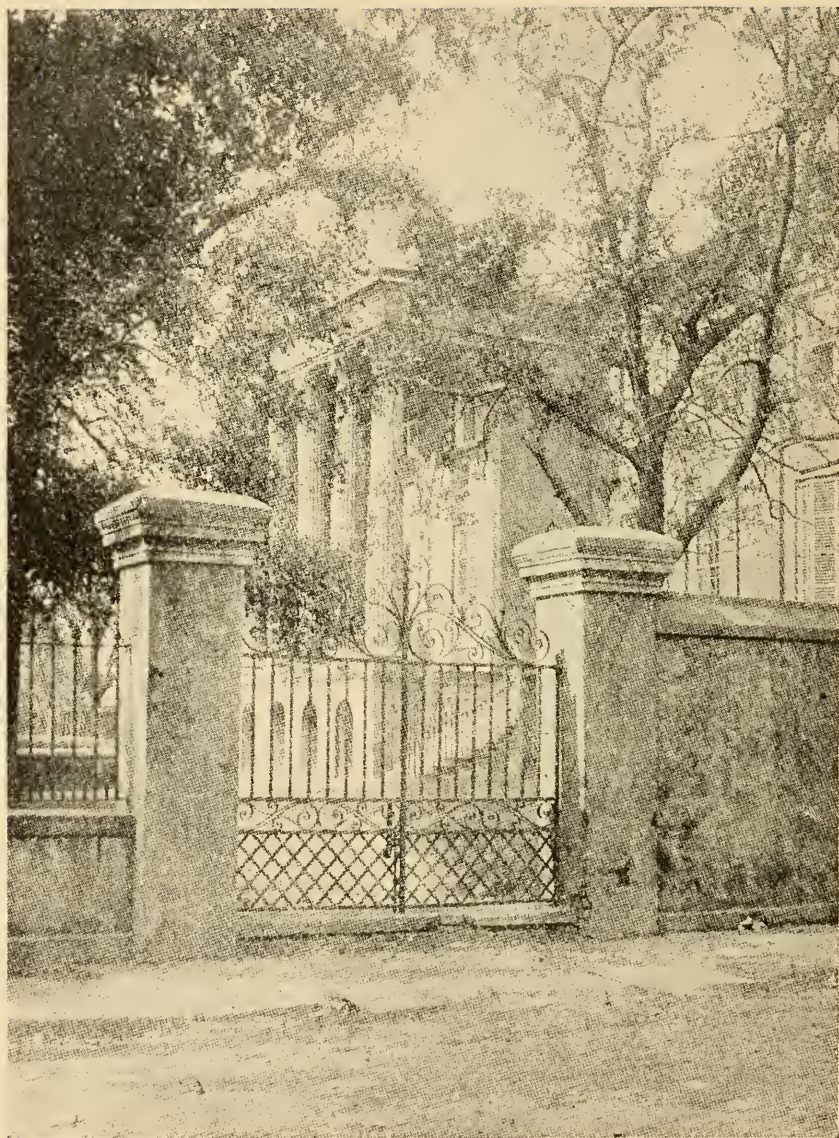
The national convention of the Democratic party met at Charleston, South Carolina, to agree on a candidate for the presidency. There was more excitement exhibited here than at any other national convention. At this convention the last cord which bound the sections together snapped when

the Northern and the Southern Democrats could not agree on a platform. The party split, the Southern Democrats nominating John C. Breckenridge of Kentucky, and the Northern Democrats nominating Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois.

**352. Results of Election of 1860.** South Carolina threatened withdrawal from the Union in the event of the election of Abraham Lincoln. The Northern States did not realize that South Carolina would make good these threats. On November 6, although he had not received a majority of the popular vote, Lincoln was elected. The issue which had for twenty-five years divided the two sections had at last reached a crisis.

**353. Secession.** In view of the probability of secession, the South Carolina legislature, convened for the purpose of choosing presidential electors, passed an act providing for an armed force. As soon as the South Carolina legislature, which had stayed in session to await the result of the election, heard the news of the election of Lincoln as president of the United States, it called for an election of delegates to a popular convention to be held in December. The whole State was wild with enthusiasm. The most prominent leaders of the State were sent to the convention, which met first in Columbia in the First Baptist Church, and then on account of smallpox moved to Charleston. Richardson, Manning, Means, Adams, Gist, all of whom had served as governor, were among the delegates, besides many men who had been prominent in Congress. On December 20, 1860, an ordinance of secession passed by the convention in Charleston repealed the act of 1788, by which South Carolina had ratified the Constitution of the United States. By a unanimous vote, the union between South Carolina and the United States was declared dissolved. Once again, as in 1776, when





College of Charleston, the First College in South Carolina.

she had declared her independence of Great Britain, South Carolina was a free, independent, and sovereign nation.

**354. Reception of the News.** Crowds waited outside the convention hall in Charleston to hear the news, and when the word was passed of the 'secession from the Union, the city was wild with delight. The bells of St. Michael's rang in triumph, cannon roared, palmetto leaves waved in the air, the populace cheered, drums beat, and bales of cotton, suspended by ropes, swung from house to house.

South Carolina next made a call to the other slave States to secede likewise and join her in forming a confederacy of Southern States. The secession convention passed ordinances for raising and organizing troops in case of invasion. So unanimous was secession that one lady remarked, "Mr. Petigru alone in South Carolina has not seceded."

**355. Arguments for State Sovereignty.** South Carolina now by her actions declared that she had resumed independence and full sovereignty; having a right to do so, because: (1) at the beginning of the Revolutionary War the States had entered a confederation in which each State retained its sovereignty; (2) the treaty signed at Paris in 1783 had recognized the separate independence of the States; (3) South Carolina had entered into a compact by ratifying the Constitution in 1788, by which a central government was granted certain expressly stated powers; and (4) the central government had exceeded those powers and South Carolina now saw fit to withdraw from the compact made with her sister States.

President Lincoln replied saying that no State could withdraw from the Union lawfully.

**356. Firing on the "Star of the West."** Fort Moultrie was garrisoned by a small number of men, under Major Anderson, a United States officer, who, feeling that his position there was too weak, moved to the stronger fort in the harbor,

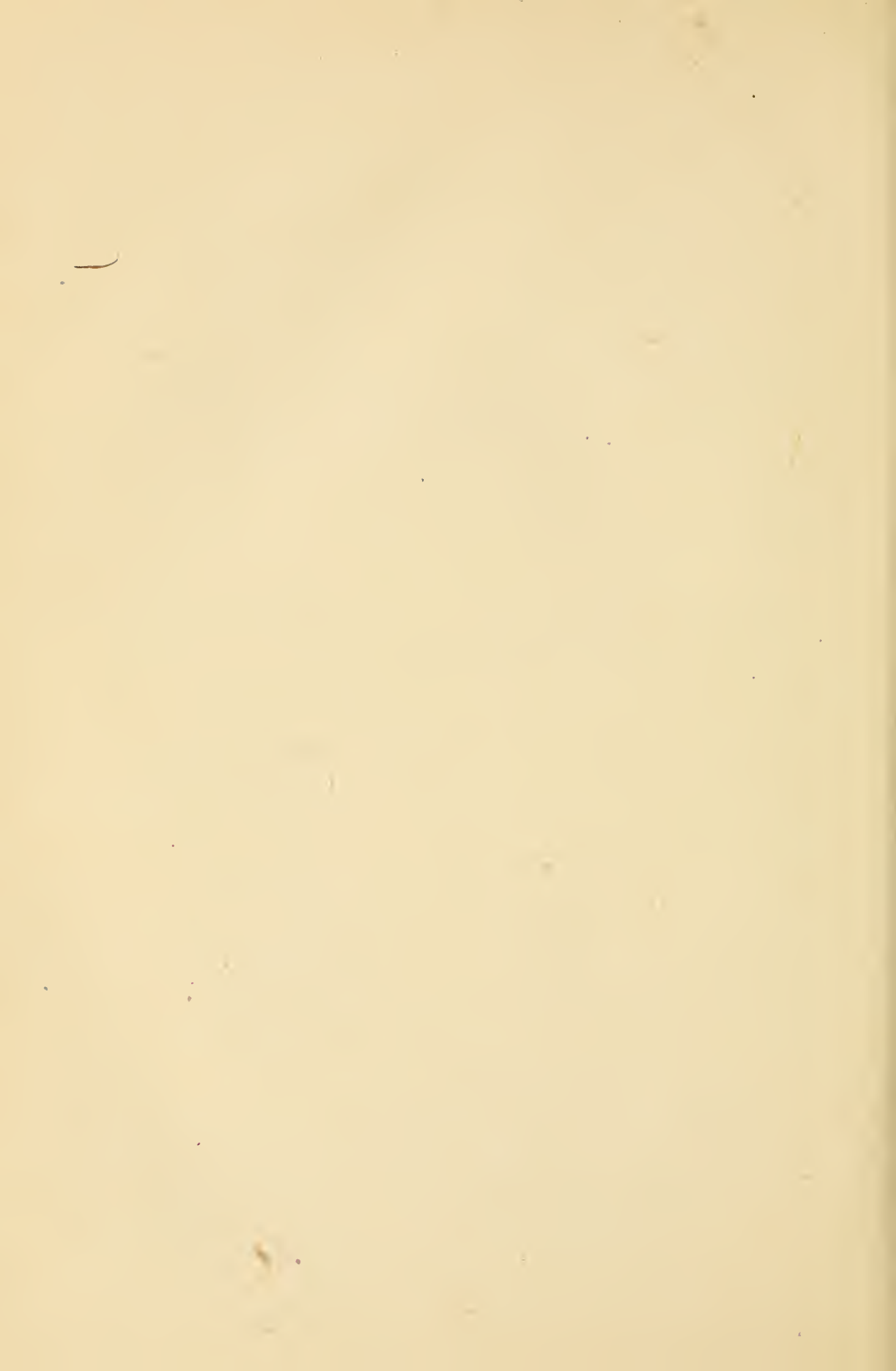
Fort Sumter. This was taking possession of the fort for the United States government. South Carolina had no intention of permitting this. Supplies were low in the fort and the United States government decided to send provisions for its succor. The "Star of the West," an ocean steamer bearing the supplies for Major Anderson, tried to reach Fort Sumter, but was fired on from Morris's Island by a battery manned by some Citadel cadets. The "Star of the West" retired without making any further effort to reach the fort. South Carolina, having withdrawn from the Union, conscious of the justice of her claims, had fearlessly defied the United States single-handed, before any other Southern State had seceded and joined her.

**357. Forming of Confederacy.** Following the firing on the "Star of the West," Mississippi, Alabama, Georgia, and Florida seceded from the Union. By February 1, Louisiana and Texas seceded. A convention of these seven States now met in Montgomery, Alabama, and formed the Confederate States. Jefferson Davis of Mississippi was chosen president, Alexander H. Stephens of Georgia was made vice-president, and Robert Toombs of Georgia secretary of State. C. G. Memminger of Charleston was chosen as a member of Davis' cabinet. The Confederate government next seized the navy yards, post offices, custom houses, and arsenals in the seven States and every fort, except four. Among the forts still in possession of the United States was Fort Sumter in Charleston harbor.

V.

**SOUTH CAROLINA AS A STATE IN  
THE CONFEDERACY**





## CHAPTER XXVII.

### OUTBREAK OF HOSTILITIES.

**358. Efforts for Peace Unavailing.** Despite the firing on the "Star of the West" in Charleston harbor, there were further efforts made to avert war in the early part of the year 1861. Matters had reached such a crisis, however, that a peaceful settlement of the differences between the two sections was scarcely possible and all efforts to avert war proved of no avail. There were those in the North who respected the theory of the ultimate right of a State to withdraw from the Union, but this party was in a decided minority, and every one realized that the country was about to be precipitated into the horrors of war.

**359. South Carolina Prepares for War.** The New Year was ushered in with a rush of preparations for the coming struggle. Francis Wilkinson Pickens, grandson of the great partisan of the Revolution, had been inaugurated as governor in December, 1860, and General D. F. Jamison had been made secretary of war. Even before the provisional government had been formed at Montgomery, the Palmetto flag had been raised over vessels equipped for war purposes by the people of the State. United States vessels in South Carolina waters were seized, and floating batteries of palmetto logs were mounted with heavy guns. Governor Pickens issued commissions in the naval service of the State.

• Under resolutions of the secession convention, provision had been made for the organization of a regiment of volunteers for six months' State service, and for a regiment of infantry regulars, and one of artillery regulars. To command these, the governor appointed Maxcy Gregg, Richard H. Anderson, and Roswell S. Ripley, respectively. The General Assembly had passed acts providing for the raising

of ten regiments of volunteers, for one year's service. The first regiment organized under this call selected Johnson Hagood, of Barnwell, as its colonel. The organization of other regiments followed rapidly. It was thought necessary that Charleston should be strongly fortified. Application was made by the State authorities to the Confederate government at Montgomery, upon which General Beauregard was assigned to the direction of the defenses of South Carolina. The last of March, news came that a large fleet of Federal vessels had sailed for Charleston. The newly formed regiments were hurried to the city. Some were stationed on the adjacent island, while others were placed on the neck and within the precincts of the city. All were employed in pressing forward the works for the reduction of Fort Sumter, which was garrisoned with the small Federal force under Major Anderson.

Just as in the Revolution, the harbor of Charleston was to be the scene of the first struggle in the War Between the Sections.

**360. Capture of Fort Sumter.** Fearing the arrival of the Federal fleet, at 4 o'clock on the morning of the 12th of April, 1861, the South Carolinians began the bombardment of Fort Sumter. The city was in the wildest excitement. The Battery was thronged with anxious watchers, who viewed the bursting of the shells over the fort and the flash from the portholes, which marked the return fire of the besieged. At one time, the flag staff was shot away, and the crowd on the Battery greeted its fall with enthusiastic cheers. One magnanimous on-looker cried, "Hurrah for Anderson, too," and the crowd took up the cheer.

During the bombardment, the much dreaded Federal fleet appeared. To the surprise of the besiegers, it lay idly by and made no effort to aid the garrison. In thirty-three hours after the commencement of the siege, Major Anderson

surrendered. His defense had been feeble. His ammunition and provisions were not exhausted, the walls were not injured to any great extent and not a man had been killed on either side. Major Anderson's little garrison was transferred to one of the vessels lying in the offing. The waters of the bay were alive with boats of rejoicing sightseers.

Fort Sumter was in the hands of the State again, and many felt that the war was ended.



Milledge Luke Bonham, Brigadier General in the Confederate Army and Second War Governor of South Carolina.

### 361. Rush of Preparations.

Upon the fall of Fort Sumter into the hands of the Confederates, Virginia seceded from the Union, and applied for admission as a member of the Confederacy. The northwestern portion of this State, loyal to the Union, refused to secede and was admitted into the Union as the State of West Virginia. Troops were

sent to this new State, whereupon Virginia applied to Governor Pickens of South Carolina for aid. Governor Pickens issued a call for volunteers for Confederate service. The regiments which had been formed had only enlisted for State service. At the call of Virginia, the men were at first slow to respond. They had no idea of the magnitude of the struggle. They thought that Virginia could defend her borders as South Carolina had done. It was not long, however, before they began to enlist for Confederate service, and their regiments were sent to Virginia.

**362. The Confederate Capital.** Following the lead of Virginia, North Carolina and Arkansas seceded from the Union in May, 1861, and Tennessee in June, 1861. This made eleven States in the Confederacy. Virginia invited the Confederate government to make Richmond its capital. South



Carolina, as the leader of the secession movement, was undoubtedly entitled to leadership in the new government, but she generously waived her claim and used her great influence in giving that honor to Virginia. Richmond became the capital of the Confederacy. President Davis made the city his headquarters and the first Confederate Congress was called to meet there. In the Senate of this Congress South Carolina was represented by Robert W. Barnwell and James L. Orr.

**363. Strength of the Opposing Sections.** At the outset, it looked as if the United States had the advantage of the Confederacy in every way. In the first place, there were twenty-three Northern States, while there were only eleven in the Confederacy. The population of the former was 22,000,000, while that of the latter was 9,000,000, a large portion of which were negroes, and unavailable for army service. Again, the United States had a regular trained army of 16,367, and a navy, which however small and inefficient, was better than none. Besides this, the wealth of the North far surpassed that of the South. There were enormous mills, foundries and manufactories in the North, while the South was only rich in the products of its soil. In the hands of the former lay the means of furnishing an army with powder and ammunition, while the latter was forced to build the necessary works at the outset. Lastly, the United States had the immense advantage of foreign relations.

It would seem from this that victory would inevitably lie with the United States, but the Confederacy, instead of being discouraged at the prospect, was buoyant and certain of success. Every Southern man who had the strength to carry a gun felt that he was the equal of three "Yankees." They were better trained as a whole than the Northerners. They were able horsemen, skillful riflemen, had disciplined slaves for two centuries, and were noted for their courage.

At that time, also, Southern men were all trained in politics, so that the Confederacy was equipped with as able statesmen as any nation could produce. The fact that they would fight on their own soil for their homes and families was in their favor. With this superiority, the Confederates were not alarmed at the material advantages of their opponents, but entered the struggle confident of the outcome.

**364. Resources of South Carolina.** In 1860, the white population of South Carolina was 291,388. Of this the voting population consisted of 40,000. This is worthy of note, as it is carefully estimated that with a voting population of only 40,000, South Carolina furnished about 65,000 men for the war, and probably the number reached 75,000 when those used for home defense are included. The State contributed many able commanders, of whom we will speak in subsequent chapters.

**365. Call to Arms.** President Lincoln issued a call for 75,000 men, and President Davis replied with a call for 100,000 men. At the capture of Fort Sumter, Lincoln declared a blockade of the ports of the seceded States and called for an increase of the regular army and of the navy to enforce the blockade. The Confederate Congress convened in Richmond on the 29th of April, and authorized the raising of \$50,000,000. After the blockade declaration, harbor steamers, sloops, schooners, and pilot boats were requisitioned by the South Carolina authorities. Blockade running began immediately after the establishment of the Federal blockade in South Carolina waters.

**366. Theatre of War.** It was evident from the commencement of the war that the Unionists would have two general objects in view. The first, which was of prime importance, was the securing of their capital, Washington, and the offensive plan of capturing the Confederate capital, Richmond. The second was of hardly less importance. The objective

of this was the possession of the Mississippi River. The possession of this great river would cut the Confederacy in two, separating Texas, Arkansas, and Louisiana from the other Southern States. This accomplished, New Orleans, the chief Southern port, would be in their hands. New Orleans had the largest iron foundries of the Confederacy, and its loss would be irreparable.

To prevent the accomplishment of these two objects, the



General Barnard E. Bee,  
Who Gave to General Jack-  
son the Name "Stonewall."

Confederacy formed two great armies, the Army of Northern Virginia, the command of which was given to General Joseph E. Johnston, and the Army of the West, the command of which was placed in the hands of General Albert Sidney Johnston. Some troops from South Carolina volunteered for Confederate service and were sent to the Army of the West, but the greater portion fought with the

Army of Northern Virginia, so that our chief interest will lie in the battles in Virginia.

**367. South Carolina Leaders.** In the early part of the summer of 1861, the Confederate forces were gathering in eastern Virginia. Among the leaders of note from South Carolina were Wade Hampton, Barnard E. Bee, Milledge L. Bonham, Johnson Hagood, Micah Jenkins, Benjamin Huger, Joseph B. Kershaw, Maxcy Gregg, and Nathan G. Evans. On the Potomac, opposite Washington, were massed 75,000 Unionists, and public opinion in the North was crying loudly for a battle.

At Manassas Junction, near the stream of Bull Run, General Beauregard held the main force of the Confederate army of 17,664 men. General McDowell of the Union army

with 19,925 men moved forward on the sixteenth of July to Manassas to attack Beauregard before he could be reinforced.

**368. First Manassas.** The South Carolina commanders under Beauregard included General M. L. Bonham, Colonel N. G. Evans, who commanded a brigade behind the famous stone bridge, General Barnard E. Bee, and Colonel Wade Hampton, of the Hampton Legion. Before daybreak on the morning of the 21st of July, McDowell attacked Beauregard. Unknown to the Unionists, General Johnston had joined Beauregard on the day before the battle, so that the opposing forces were almost equal. The Confederates were driven back for a mile and a half to a plateau, where General Thomas J. Jackson stood. With him were Wade Hampton, with the Hampton Legion, and General Barnard E. Bee. As the men began to waver at the approach of the Unionists, General Bee cried "Look at Jackson. There he stands like a stone wall." Rallying, they drove the Unionists back at the point of the bayonet, and, as they rallied, a small force of men of General Johnston's army, which had just arrived, burst upon the scene and the victory lay with the Confederates. The Unionists fled in the greatest confusion, thinking that a new army was upon them, and it is stated that many of the terrified Federals, dropping their guns, ran when no one pursued, and did not stop until they had reached Arlington or Washington, thirty miles away. Colonel Evans, with a force of only 900 men held back about 9,000 Federals for several hours. Ammunition, guns, wagons, or provisions, every possible impediment to their flight, were left behind and fell into the hands of the Confederates. The Union loss was 2,792, and that of the Confederacy 1,969.

General Johnston afterwards said that the day was saved by Wade Hampton of South Carolina. The State sustained



a great loss that day in the death of General Bee, who had given Jackson the name of "Stonewall."

**369. Effect of Battle.** The defeat of the Union army caused consternation in the North, and the army was denounced as a band of cowards. Confident in the expectation of victory, many members of the United States Congress had ridden down in their carriages to witness the great triumph over the rebellious States. The disaster was a terrible blow to their hopes, but it made them realize the gravity of the struggle and the need for preparation.

On the other hand, the South was carried away with enthusiasm at the victory. The Unionists had put up only a feeble defense at Fort Sumter, and at Manassas they had fled in a panic. Even the North had denounced its army as a band of cowards, and in Europe, after the capture of Fort Sumter, it was said that "An American battle is not as dangerous as an American steamboat." Thus was the South misled into a false sense of security.

**370. Preparations in South Carolina.** The regiments remaining in the State were quartered on various islands and at military posts during the year 1861, where they were drilled and disciplined for war. They were also engaged in erecting bomb-proof batteries, building causeways, and in numerous ways strengthening the coast defense. Colonel Hagood's regiment, the First South Carolina Volunteers, was sent to Cole's Island, where Colonel Hagood had command of the posts on Stono. During the year Colonel Hagood was in several skirmishes with the enemy, whose ships were constantly hanging about the coast.

During the year, the Confederates set about manufacturing arms and powder, but they never had an adequate supply. Privateering was begun, and boats were almost nightly slipping out from Charleston through the inlets, avoiding the Federal vessels which blockaded the harbor.

These privateers inflicted much damage upon the Federal merchant marine.

**371. The Trent Affair.** In October, 1861, President Davis chose James Mason of Virginia and John Slidell of Louisiana to represent the Confederacy at London and at Paris. These two men left Charleston on the night of October 12th,



General Nathan G. Evans,  
Whose Bravery Distinguished Him at First  
Manassas, Resigned from  
the United States Army to  
Fight for His State.

in a blockade runner, and reached Havana, where they took passage on the British steamer "Trent." The Trent was stopped the next day by an American sloop and the two men taken off, carried north and confined as prisoners of war. England was indignant at the capture and for a time it looked as if the United States would be involved in war with England. President Lincoln averted war, however, by releasing the prisoners and disavowing the act of the commander of the sloop which had stopped the Trent.

**372. Federals Take Port Royal.** In November, 1861, a fleet of fifty Federal ships left Hampton Roads for Port Royal. In a storm at sea, several ships were lost, but the remainder reached Port Royal early in November. This post was commanded by the Confederate general, Thomas F. Drayton, and there was a small fleet in the sound, under the command of Commodore Tattnall. This force was contemptible in comparison with that of the Federal fleet, which carried a land force of 12,000 men. The cannonading began on November 7, and in a few hours the Confederate fire was silenced. Tattnall set fire to his little fleet and escaped, and Port Royal fell into the possession of the United States. The region about Port Royal and Beaufort was

occupied. Beaufort, one of the wealthiest and most cultivated towns of its size in the world at that time, was pillaged. The larger plantations and princely houses along the seaboard were looted and devastated, and the whole section laid waste. After the fall of Port Royal the sea islands as far north as Edisto were abandoned and fell into the hands of the enemy.

**373. End of the Year 1861.** On the whole, however, the Confederacy was well satisfied with the results of the year 1861. Fort Sumter had been taken. Its armies had been victorious at Manassas, the one great battle of the year. Also in Missouri at Wilson's Creek, and in Virginia at Ball's Bluff, other battles were fought in which the Confederates were victorious and the Unionists disastrously defeated. Manufactories had been built, men put in training as soldiers, and altogether the prospects of the Confederacy were bright for the coming year.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### PROGRESS OF THE WAR—1862-1863.

**374. Alarm in Charleston.** The year 1862 opened with depressing reverses to the Confederate arms in the West. The strong fortress, Fort Donaldson, on the Mississippi River, was taken by the Unionists in February. Shortly after this disaster, the Confederates were victorious at the battle of Shiloh, but their loss was extremely heavy, and in the battle their commander, General Albert Sidney Johnston, was mortally wounded. This was followed by other reverses in the spring, and in May, after a long siege, New Orleans fell and was occupied by the Unionists. South Carolina became alarmed when the daily bulletins described the distress of the Crescent City, under the iron rule of "Beast Butler," one of the most infamous of the Union officers. The State became anxious for the safety of its port, Charleston, which excitedly clamored for active preparations for its defense.

**375. Charleston Under Military Rule.** Governor Pickens proclaimed martial law over Charleston and the Council warned non-combatants to depart. Colonel Johnson Hagood was appointed provost marshal. The city was known to be infested with spies, so that stringent laws regarding passports out of Charleston were passed. No one was allowed to leave the city without a written permit from the provost marshal, and all were required to report to his office on entering. The sale of liquors was prohibited and all bar-rooms were closed. Sentinels were posted at all roads leading from the city. Boats were ordered to anchor at certain designated wharves where they were held for inspection. These regulations were rigidly enforced.



**376. The Enemy Plan to Attack.** In the midst of these preparations, the fleet which had taken Port Royal determined upon an attack upon Charleston, hoping with a sudden blow to take the city from the Confederates. With the withdrawal from the other sea-islands after the fall of Port Royal, the James Island lines had become the main line of defense of Charleston on the Stono River side, from which the attack was to be made. The defenses of the island had been erected by the troops which had been stationed there at the commencement of the war. The engineering was faulty, the lines too far from the river front and too long for defense, and the breastworks incomplete. There were two redoubts, Fort Pemberton and Secessionville. The troops on the island were sufficient for its defense, but had never seen actual service.

**377. Commencement of the Campaign.** The fact that the enemy intended to enter Stono River was made known to the South Carolinians by the movement of the blockading vessels off Stono Inlet in sounding and buoying the channel. On the 19th of May, several gunboats attempted to enter the Inlet, but one ran aground and the rest put back. On the next day, three gunboats entered Stono River and began to shell Cole's and Battery Islands. By the last of May, the gunboats were running up the river every day shelling everything in sight, even peaceful citizens riding in their buggies, but not within range of Fort Pemberton. On the 25th of May, Captain F. M. Bonneau, on a little floating battery, manned with only two or three guns, gallantly returned the fire of an attacking gunboat and drove the enemy away.

**378. Gallantry of Colonel Capers.** In the first days of June there were more than twenty Federal vessels in sight of the troops on James Island. On the 3rd of June it was reported that the enemy had landed on the extremity of

the island. Colonel Ellison Capers was sent out with several companies to ascertain their position. He came upon the enemy and in a sharp skirmish drove back a force which was greatly superior to his own. When he had driven the enemy back a mile and a half heavy reinforcements advanced



Ellison Capers, General in the Confederate Army and Afterward Beloved Bishop of the Episcopal Church in South Carolina.

supported by gunboat fire. Capers retired in good order, having captured twenty-three prisoners, and with only one of his men missing and a few wounded. His gallantry and discretion were marked.

In the ensuing days there were several skirmishes on different parts of the island. In expectation of the general engagement four of the best regiments were organized into a brigade of "Advanced Forces."

Colonel Hagood was relieved of his duties as provost marshal of Charleston and was put in command of this new brigade.

**379. The Battle of Secessionville.** At 4 a. m., on the 16th of June, Colonel Hagood received word that the Secessionville picket had been driven in and that the enemy were advancing. Colonel Hagood at once ordered the "Advanced Forces" to Secessionville. Arriving there, they found that the Unionists were making their second assault upon the fort. Colonel Lamar, in command of the work, had been

superintending the erecting of defenses all the previous night, and, worn out, had fallen asleep on the parapet, awaking when the attack was made. He, himself, had pulled the lanyard of the columbiad and aroused the garrison. At the second assault the Federals were repulsed and retired, leaving their dead and wounded upon the field. The Federals had 6,000 men engaged in the battle and 1,500 in reserve, while the Confederates had 1,300. The loss of the enemy was 574, while that of the Confederates was 150, killed and wounded. The battle of Secessionville was one of the most decisive engagements of the war. The Federals lingered on James Island until the early part of July, but made no further attack. The attempt to take the city of Charleston was over for a time. South Carolina was elated at the success of her arms.

**380. Inland Expeditions of the Enemy.** South Carolina was divided into several military districts, for the protection of the country from inland expeditions of the Unionists. Troops were stationed in these districts to guard the railroads, and also as an advanced guard to the city of Charleston. During the year 1862 there were numerous little expeditions up the rivers to destroy the railways. Two of these were defeated at Pocotaligo and one at Coosawhatchie. There were frequent collisions between the Confederate pickets and those of the enemy. Yankee gunboats running up the Edisto were a cause of great excitement to South Carolinians.

Thus the year 1862 passed in South Carolina. The chief interest of the people of the State, however, lay in Virginia, where the great game of war was being played on a grand scale.

**381. Campaign to Take Richmond.** While the year 1862 was proving somewhat uneventful within the borders of South Carolina, the battles in Virginia were of thrilling

interest. In the spring the Unionists commenced what is known as the Peninsula campaign. This began at Williamsburg, in the lower part of Virginia, and was another effort to take Richmond. At Williamsburg, Micah Jenkins led the South Carolina regiment, known as the Palmetto Sharpshooters. One-half of the Confederate forces engaged were under the command of General Richard H. Anderson, of



General Micah Jenkins  
Who Distinguished Him-  
self in the Peninsula Cam-  
paign.

South Carolina. In this campaign, we find Wade Hampton of South Carolina with the Hampton Legion performing signal service for the army. In the battle of Seven Pines, May 31, 1862, the brigade under General Micah Jenkins distinguished itself by charging a thicket held by the Federals. The South Carolinians, charging over logs and breastworks, drove them out of their camp in the thicket, and,

pursuing them, captured a second camp. Jenkins' men followed the Federals into a swamp. General Hampton led a brigade of infantry into this battle. His men fought with desperate bravery and half of them fell.

At the battle of Seven Pines General Johnston was wounded, and General Robert E. Lee was made commander-in-chief of the Southern army. Following the battle of Seven Pines, there were seven days of bloody fighting before Richmond, ending in the battle of Malvern Hill, in which General Huger of South Carolina gallantly led his division. This ended the Peninsula campaign, having failed in its intended object—the capture of Richmond. General Lee retired to Richmond and General McClellan, commander of the Federals, was recalled to Washington.



**382. Campaign in Northern Virginia.** Having failed to capture Richmond from the south, a campaign was begun in August in northern Virginia, with General Pope in command of the Federals. In this campaign, we find Wade Hampton second in command of the cavalry of the army. The battles of this campaign were fought around the scene of the first great battle of the war—Manassas. One battle was fought, and ended in a second victory for the Confederates, on almost the same ground, and was called second Manassas. Throughout the campaign the Confederates were wonderfully successful. Early in September Pope retired to Washington, discouraged at the dismal failure of the campaign. The summer of 1862 had been a disastrous one for Federal arms.

**383. The Chambersburg Raid.** In October, 1,800 Confederates were selected from different regiments for a raid. Wade Hampton was placed second in command, and Colonel M. C. Butler of South Carolina had charge of Hampton's advance. South Carolina had just cause to be proud of the gallant and successful manner in which the raid was conducted.

On the 10th of October Butler's scouts captured the Federal picket at the ford of the Potomac, which the raiders expected to cross. Rapidly the crossing was made and the march pushed to Chambersburg, where lay great supplies of Federal stores. Chambersburg was reached in safety, Hampton made military governor of the town, and Butler placed in immediate command. After destroying the great storehouse of army supplies and ammunition, the homeward march was resumed. This return of course was hazardous, as the country had been thoroughly aroused at the appearance of the raiders and numerous companies were out to intercept them. The Confederates succeeded in eluding these companies, and made the trip of over eighty miles

in twenty-seven hours, a remarkable feat. The rear guard under Butler had destroyed about \$250,000 worth of war material and had captured 1,002 horses. The expedition was memorable not only for its daring and success, but for its scrupulous respect of private property.

**384. Hampton and Butler Capture Christmas Stores.** In December, the Federal army of 120,000 men, now under



General Maxcy Gregg  
Who With Desperate Valor  
Held the Confederate Left  
at the Battle of Second  
Manassas.

General Burnside, lay encamped before the town of Fredericksburg. The scouts brought information to General Hampton that a long train of wagons containing Christmas stores for the army had left Washington for Fredericksburg, and Hampton decided to attack the military escort on the road and secure some of the stores for the Confederates. As the wagon train encamped one night at the old town of Dumfries, Colonel Butler charged

while the troopers were asleep. The wagons were seized and the spoils divided among the cavalry. The troops were well supplied with shoes and gloves, eatables and all kinds of Christmas confections.

**385. The Battle of Fredericksburg.** On the 13th of December, General Burnside attacked General Lee's army of 80,000 men as it lay on the heights near Fredericksburg. In General Lee's army were the brigades of Kershaw and Gregg. Part of Kershaw's men held a position on top of a hill from which large bodies of Federals attempted to drive them without success. The result was disastrous defeat for the Federals. During the day their loss was 12,000. After the battle, the demoralization was such that entire companies deserted and came over to the Confederate lines. South Carolina and the Confederacy sustained a great loss

in this battle in the death of General Maxcy Gregg, who fell fighting bravely. He was succeeded as brigade commander by Colonel Samuel McGowan, who was promoted to brigadier general soon after.

**386. Prospects Bright for the Confederates.** With the victory at Fredericksburg the year 1862 drew to a close.



General Matthew C. Butler, the Great Cavalry Commander.

The almost unbroken reverses to Confederate arms in the West during 1861 had continued through 1862, and at the close of 1862 the important post of Vicksburg on the Mississippi River was in a constant state of siege by the Union forces. The Confederates had been so highly successful in Virginia, however, that never during the war were their prospects so bright as during the Christmas of 1862.

**387. The Fall of Vicksburg.** In the first great battle of the year 1863, victory lay with the Confederates. This was the battle of Chancellorsville, Virginia. There was great rejoicing in the Confederacy at this victory, but there was much anxiety over the siege of Vicksburg, the last Confederate post on the Mississippi River. The city had been in a state of siege for over six months. It had been shut off from the world by the Union forces, and food was running low. In the spring the only foodstuffs to be had were mule meat, dried peas and cornmeal. At the begin-

ning of July, the city was at the point of starvation, and on the 3rd Vicksburg surrendered with its army of 37,000. This was a crushing blow to the South. The Confederacy was now cut in two, and the great Mississippi River was in undisputed possession of the enemy.

**388. The Battle of Gettysburg.** After the victory at Chan-



General Joseph B. Kershaw,  
Who Fought Gallantly at Chick-  
amauga and in Virginia.

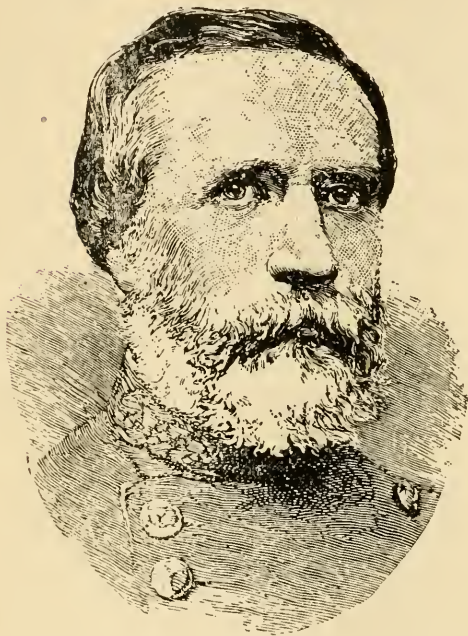
cellorsville, public opinion in the South demanded an invasion of Northern territory. During the last days of the siege of Vicksburg, General Lee marched into Maryland and from there into Pennsylvania. With him, and second in command of the cavalry of the army, was Wade Hampton. The army met the Union forces at Gettysburg, Pennsylvania. For three days the battle raged, at the end of which the losses of the two armies reached fifty thousand, about half on each side. On the third day of the battle a

part of the corps of General Longstreet (a South Carolinian by birth) made one of the most daring charges in the history of warfare, but the battle ended in defeat for the Confederates. The battle over, Lee's army was so badly crippled that he was forced to retire to Virginia.

**389. The Victory of Chickamauga.** In mid-summer, 1863, the Federal army of the West, which, after the fall of Vicksburg, had steadily drawn nearer the heart of the Confede-



racy, met the Confederate army of the West at Chickamauga, Tennessee. The Federals held two passes through Missionary Ridge which lay between the combatants and Chattanooga, already in the possession of the Federals.



Lieutenant General Richard H. Anderson  
of Sumter.

General Bragg, who commanded the Confederate forces, planned to take the two passes from the Federals and then capture Chattanooga. In Bragg's army there were three South Carolina brigades—Kershaw's, Gist's, and Manigault's. These were under the command of General Hood. The battle of Chickamauga lasted two days and was one of the bloodiest in the history of the war. General Hood was wounded and General

Kershaw took command of the South Carolina troops. Many of the soldiers of this State lost their lives in these two days. Among the wounded was Colonel Ellison Capers. On the second night the Federals withdrew to Chattanooga, the battle ending in Confederate victory.

**390. The Battle of Missionary Ridge.** Although the battle of Chickamauga was considered a Confederate victory, General Bragg's plan of taking possession of Chattanooga had not been accomplished. After the battle the Confederates occupied Missionary Ridge, just south of Chatta-

nooga and Lookout Mountain. The Federals in Chattanooga were heavily reinforced until they greatly outnumbered the Confederates. The entire Union army concentrated upon Missionary Ridge and Bragg was driven from Missionary Ridge in overwhelming defeat. This defeat of Bragg ended the campaign for Chattanooga and secured to the Union the entire Mississippi Valley. Bragg's army retired to the mountains of Georgia.

Of the four Confederate strongholds—Richmond, New Orleans, Vicksburg, and Chattanooga—three were now in the undisputed possession of the United States Army.

The loss of Vicksburg and the battle of Gettysburg were terrible blows to the Confederacy. The South began to realize the full gravity of the struggle.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

### PROGRESS OF THE WAR—1863-64.

**391. Defense of Charleston Harbor.** All through 1862 every effort was made in South Carolina to equip an ironclad flotilla for use against the Federal ships blockading Charleston harbor. The ironclad ships "Palmetto State," "Chicora," and "Charleston" were built. In addition torpedoes and mines were placed in the waters of the harbor to sink the Federal ships should they try to enter.

On January 31, 1863, just before dawn, occurred the famous breaking of the blockade by the "Palmetto State" and "Chicora." Steaming away from their anchorage, the "Palmetto State" attacked the foremost of the blockading vessels, while the "Chicora" engaged several other enemy ships. The attack of the two Confederate ironclads took the Federal fleet by surprise. The "Palmetto State" plunged an iron ram, attached to its prow, into the hull of the vessel it had engaged and fired a shot into its boiler. The Federal ship surrendered. Then the "Palmetto State" went to the aid of the "Chicora." A fierce battle followed between the Federal ships and the two ironclads, in which the former vessels were dispersed, after suffering great injury. The victory of the two ironclads was celebrated at St. Philip's Church.

General Gillmore undertook, in April, 1863, a formidable campaign against the city of Charleston. The increase of the Federal fleet in Stono River gave warning of attack upon the city. Charleston was guarded by batteries on Mt. Pleasant and on the several islands which formed the entrance of its harbor—Long Island, Sullivan's Island, Morris' Island and James Island. At the mouth of the harbor, and directly opposite the city, lay Fort Sumter,

which the State had recovered from Federal hands in striking the first blow in 1861. Confederate forces in South Carolina were under the command of General Beauregard.

On the 7th of April the ironclad fleet of the enemy, consisting of eight vessels, crossed the bar and proceeded toward Fort Sumter. Their progress was marked by fire from the batteries on the islands of the harbor all of which concentrated their shell upon the leading vessel, which, soon disabled, retired down the channel. Upon the withdrawal of the crippled ship, a second vessel, the Keokuk, approached within 900 yards of Fort Sumter. This vessel met with a like fate and retired in forty minutes. The remaining ships dropped one by one out of range of the batteries after an action of two hours and twenty-five minutes. On the following day it was found that the Keokuk had sunk near Morris' Island. The Confederates, with a loss of only 14 men, had successfully repulsed the enemy in the first attack of the campaign of 1863 against Charleston.

**392. Campaign Resumed.** After the attack on Fort Sumter in April, operations against the city were not resumed until July. Troops had been withdrawn from South Carolina and sent to Virginia and to the army of the West to such a degree that there were but 5,861 men guarding the fortifications around Charleston in July. Governor Bonham, who had succeeded Governor Pickens in 1862, was appealed to for slave labor to assist in the erection of fortifications, and the work was pushed forward in the expectancy of daily attack from the enemy.

In July, the campaign of the enemy was resumed, not directly against the city as in April, but against Morris' Island. On the 10th of July, Federal troops assaulted and carried the south end of that island. During the months of July and August the Unionists from their position on Morris' Island started a terrific bombardment of Batteries



Wagner and Gregg (also on Morris' Island). These batteries were feebly garrisoned by our troops and almost every day in the two months was marked by acts of heroism in holding the forts against the enemy. However, on the 7th of September, they were forced to evacuate these batteries, leaving Morris' Island in possession of the enemy. The State's loss on the island during the two months siege was 641 men, while it is estimated that the loss of the Unionists was ten times as great, thus showing that our troops fought not only gallantly but effectively.

**393. Fort Sumter Bombarded.** Having forced the Confederates to evacuate Morris' Island, General Gillmore turned his attention again to Fort Sumter, sending in a demand for its surrender. This was promptly refused by Major Stephen Elliott, its commander. Upon this, on the 9th of September, an attempt was made with a fleet of forty barges to take possession of the fort. When the barges were within a few yards of the fortress, Major Elliott ordered his men to open fire. This they did, some even throwing missiles over the walls which fell upon the nearest boats, upsetting them. The fire with which they were received was so murderous that the boats turned back, and the attack was repulsed, but not before twelve officers and 109 men of the enemy had been captured. Major Elliott's courageous conduct was particularly commended.

**394. Destruction of Fort Sumter.** With the failure of the assault from the barges in the effort to capture Fort Sumter, General Gillmore made no other direct attempt upon Charleston, but confined himself to a cannonade of Fort Sumter. During the winter of 1863 the incessant shelling went on until in the spring of 1864 the old fort lay a mass of ruins, under which its defenders by burrowing through the debris still held to their posts. "Working under almost ceaseless fire, they had converted this wreck of an artillery fort,

without a single gun to reply to her long range assailants, into an infantry post comparatively safe for its defenders, and with which, after one feeble effort, its assailants had never the nerve to grapple in assault."

**395. Life at the Posts.** Through the terrific bombardment of the enemy Fort Sumter had become only a defensive



Monument to General Wade Hampton, Chief in Command of Cavalry of the Confederate Army in 1864 and Governor of the State After Reconstruction.

work. This its garrison made habitable by indomitable energy. Under the debris they had constructed for themselves a well-lighted living place, well ventilated and made cheerful and clean with whitewash. Under the wreck of a fort were barracks for sleeping, with bunks for the men not on duty, hospital quarters, rooms for arms and an office for headquarters.

On the posts on the sea islands, the troops settled themselves for the winter of 1863-64, always on guard from attack by the enemy and yet spending a winter pleasant in many respects. The army commissariat was very poor, but the men were near home and baskets and boxes made up for what they failed to get from the commissary. They were often visited by their friends and relatives, and it was not unusual to see ladies on horseback and in carriages on James Island. It is said that dances were frequently held at posts likely at any minute to be fired upon by the enemy. Horse races were also held for amusement and many were the rabbit hunts and cock fights to lighten the dull hours between the intermittent fire of the Unionists.

**396. Preparations for Campaign of 1864.** Union arms had been so successful in the West and had suffered so disastrously in Virginia that the North came to believe that its leaders in the West were more efficient than those in Virginia. General Ulysses S. Grant, who had victoriously commanded the Western army, was made commander-in-chief of all the forces of the United States, and General Grant himself was to lead the Army of the Potomac. The objective, as at the beginning of the war, was to capture the Confederate capital—Richmond. In each attempt to take Richmond the Union army had been repulsed with tremendous loss by Lee's troops. Another great campaign was now about to be begun in the spring of 1864.

Every effort was put forth to make the campaign a success. Grant was given 150,000 men. These formed a splendid army, organized, well drilled, handsomely clothed, well-fed, and with plenty of arms and ammunition. All that money could accomplish had been lavished in equipping this army. On May 4th it began to move, a brilliant mass of blue, followed by thousands of wagon-trains weighted with luxu-



ries for the soldiers. It is said that this train of wagons in a straight line would have stretched sixty miles.

**397. Condition of the Army of Northern Virginia.** To withstand this gorgeous army of 150,000 men which was crossing the Rapidan to Richmond was a "slender line of grey," Lee's army of less than 60,000 men. These soldiers were unpaid and underfed. Each man was supposed to get a half pound of bacon or salt pork and a pint of cornmeal or flour per day, but it was rare for him to get these full rations. There was very little sugar and coffee, and the soldiers had little foraging from the country, as it had been practically stripped of food supplies. Their clothes were ragged and they were greatly dependent upon capture from the enemy for mounts, saddles and arms. The horses of the army naturally suffered also from the lack of necessary provisions, and to the wounded soldiers only the rudest attention could be given.

In preparation for the campaign several regiments were sent from the sea islands of South Carolina. Of these were the 4th, 5th, and 6th Cavalry, which formed General M. C. Butler's brigade, and the 11th, 21st, and the 25th infantry, which formed General Johnson Hagood's brigade. The campaign of 1864 in Virginia is especially noteworthy to South Carolinians because of the remarkable cavalry feats performed by Wade Hampton.

**398. Grant's Campaign.** General Grant's campaign lasted one month. In conjunction with him, General B. F. Butler, of New Orleans fame, was to approach Richmond from the south, destroy the crops, mills, railroads, and in general devastate the country to the south of the capital. In carrying out this plan, Butler met with opposition. At the battles of Walthal Junction, Swift Creek, and Drury's Bluff we find Generals Hagood and Butler of South Carolina fighting



bravely with their brigades which had but just arrived from the sea islands.

General Grant with his army crossed the Rapidan on the



Monument to the Devoted Women of the Confederacy Erected in Columbia by the People of South Carolina.

4th of May, and the first battle of the campaign took place on the 5th and 6th, in a heavy growth of underbrush, known as the Wilderness. This resulted in victory for the Confederates. On the 12th the battle of Spottsylvania occurred,

the second of the campaign. During the battle Grant captured a part of Lee's breastworks. McGowan's brigade and a Mississippi brigade were ordered to retake this position. The struggle for it lasted twenty hours, during which the men fought in trenches on either side of the breastworks. Kershaw and Jenkins with their commands also fought in the battle of Spottsylvania. General Jenkins was mortally wounded. This battle resulted in victory for neither. The losses on each side were frightful. The week following this battle the two armies remained inactive and then drew together again, meeting on the 3rd of June, at the site of the battleground of Cold Harbor in 1862. Lee was in a very strong position, but Grant ordered an attack despite this. The Charleston Light Dragoons fought here with desperate valor. The assault lasted less than an hour, and in this short period the Union loss reached nearly thirteen thousand. It is said that this is the bloodiest half-hour in American history.

The battle of Cold Harbor ended the campaign. From the Wilderness to Cold Harbor General Grant had lost 60,000 men, a number greater than Lee had had under his command at the beginning of the campaign. Grant had proved that he was no match for Lee as a strategist.

**399. The Siege of Petersburg.** Abandoning the attempt to carry Richmond directly, Grant crossed the James River and took position in front of Petersburg, determining to take this city by storm. Petersburg lies twenty miles directly south of Richmond, and was fortified independently of the capital. Grant immediately began shelling the city and there ensued three days of continuous fighting, which was called the Battle of Petersburg. In this three days fighting the Union loss totaled 12,000 men. The Confederate loss compared to this was inconsiderable. After this unsuccessful

storming, Grant settled himself before the city for a siege which lasted through the summer and the following winter.

The hardships of the poorly equipped Confederates during this long siege can scarcely be imagined. The fighting was done in trenches. No one was allowed to leave his assigned place without permission. From dark until daylight half of the men were permitted to lie down in the bottom of the trenches and sleep. At dawn, day after day, the shelling would commence. No part of the trenches was absolutely safe and there were deaths every day. Aside from the actual danger, the discomfort of the trenches was almost unendurable. With each rain, no matter how slight, the trenches became soggy, and with heavy rains the men stood waist deep in muddy water. In a short time the trenches were noisome and disease became rife. The command was reduced by August to nearly one-half its strength. Such was the life of the Confederate soldier in the trenches of Petersburg in 1864. Among the South Carolina troops at Petersburg were the brigades of Kershaw, Elliott, and Hagood.

**400. The Trevillian Campaign.** While the fighting was going on in the trenches of Petersburg, General Grant formed the plan of reducing Richmond by destroying the railroad connection between Richmond and the fertile Shenandoah Valley in the northwestern part of Virginia, thus cutting the capital off from its food supply. With this commission he entrusted General Sheridan, who slipped away from the army on June 8th and made his way northward to the Charlottesville and Gordonsville railroad.

News of this intended destruction of the railroad being brought by scouts to General Wade Hampton, he applied to General Lee for permission to frustrate Sheridan. Having received permission, with a force only half equal to that of Sheridan, Hampton followed him. Coming upon him at Trevillian Station, he opened attack on the morning of



June 11th. The fighting which lasted three days was a purely cavalry combat, in which Sheridan was entirely outgeneraled by Hampton. Only a few feet of the railroad were destroyed and with a loss of 1,512 men Sheridan retreated. The Confederate loss was under 700. This campaign is of especial interest to South Carolina because of its noteworthy cavalry feats under the direction of Wade Hampton.

**401. Hampton and His Cavalry.** Wade Hampton's services to the army of Northern Virginia in 1864 are inestimable. From the beginning of Grant's campaign, which began in the Wilderness in May, Hampton and his cavalry were continually at work. They were the ears and eyes of the army. It was their business to protect the railway communications from the enemy, to insure Richmond against all raiding parties, to capture wagon-trains of the enemy, destroy their depots, report their movements and ascertain their plans of attack. There was scarcely a day when there was not some cavalry skirmish. Besides these daily skirmishes, we find Hampton in all the large battles—at the Wilderness, Spottsylvania, and fighting bravely at Cold Harbor.

In August, 1864, General Lee placed Hampton in chief command of the cavalry of the army. In the last months of the year 1864 we find him annoying the enemy in every conceivable way. In September, almost within rifle shot of the encampment of the Army of the Potomac, he made a cattle raid and brought off 2,468 beeves. He also captured a large quantity of the enemy's stores, burned three camps and carried off eleven wagons and 304 prisoners, himself losing only 61 in killed and wounded and missing. He had marched 100 miles in three days. The stores and beeves captured were a godsend to the Confederates. This is only one of the many instances of Hampton's services to



the army. He frequently dismounted his men and fought them as infantry, using the carbine, and thus introduced a new method of cavalry fighting.

**402. Sheridan Raids Shenandoah Valley.** On October 5th, Sheridan began a march of destruction through the fertile valley of the Shenandoah. He burned all the mills stocked with wheat and flour, and two thousand well-filled barns. He carried before him all the cattle and left the valley desolate. This destruction meant of course a serious loss to the Confederates.

**403. End of Virginia Campaign—1864.** The year 1864 drew to a close without seeing the accomplishment of the Federal object of the campaign to which they had devoted so many lives and so much money and effort—the capture of Richmond.

**404. Lines of Union Tighten.** While the year 1864 was proving so successful to Confederate arms in Virginia, the South was losing the fight in the West. After the loss of Chattanooga, the Confederates, J. E. Johnston in command, had encamped for the winter at Dalton, Georgia. In the spring of 1864, General Grant planned a campaign to defeat this force and take possession of Atlanta, which was an important military base and railroad center. For this campaign he selected General William T. Sherman, and placed 100,000 men at his disposal. General Johnston had 65,000 men in his command.

The campaign began in May and lasted four months. Sherman steadily, though with great losses, drew nearer Atlanta, held at bay by the master tactician, Johnston. In July, President Davis removed Johnston from command, replacing him with General Hood, who was no match for Sherman. Hood fell back to Atlanta and the Federal coils quickly tightened around the city. Unable to hold the city, Hood escaped with his army and Sherman entered on

September 2nd. The Unionists were now in the very heart of the Confederacy.

**405. War in North Carolina.** The year 1864 closed with the appearance of a large Federal fleet at the mouth of the Cape Fear River in North Carolina, for the reduction of Fort Fisher, which controlled the entrance to the port of Wilmington. The first effort of this fleet, however, was feeble and the campaign of 1864 ended in a Federal reverse. General Hagood says that not realizing the significance of Sherman's approach at this time "on the lines before Richmond to Lee's army, erect and defiant, there appeared no reason why the war should not last another four years." Certainly in the ranks of the Confederates there was no feeling that the South would be defeated.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### DOWNFALL OF THE CONFEDERACY.

**406. Savannah Falls into Federal Hands.** We left Sherman in Atlanta, whence, after wholesale destruction, he began a march to the sea. His army was 52,000 strong. He divided this force into four parts with instructions to march along parallel routes to Savannah and to cover fifteen miles each day. Sherman's force had 65 heavy guns, 600 ambulances and 2,500 wagons. The men were given instructions to destroy all railroads and public property. The path of this army was from forty to sixty miles broad, and when the army passed over the country was desolated. Approaching Savannah, the city was evacuated, and the Federals, entering on Christmas day, took possession. The enemy had now reached the very gateway to South Carolina.

**407. Last Western Reverse of Confederates.** General Hood, after evacuating Atlanta, turned westward to Nashville, with the purpose of deflecting and moving to Virginia to join Lee. At Nashville, however, he met with a superior force of Unionists, and going into battle in an unadvantageous position his army was defeated and thoroughly routed. This was the last of the many Confederate reverses in the West.

**408. The Fall of Fort Fisher.** With the arrival of the Federal fleet in the Cape Fear River, General Lee sent some of his force to the aid of that fort. Among these was General Hagood with his brigade of South Carolinians. The Confederates were fighting against overpowering odds and on the 15th of January the Unionists completed the capture of the fort. This closed the last Confederate port on the Atlantic seaboard and made effectual the blockade of the Southern States, which Lincoln had declared in 1861.

**409. Sherman Unopposed.** Between Sherman, at Savannah, and Charleston and Columbia there was no force of importance to contest his march. After Fort Fisher had fallen, even the limited value of the port of Charleston became of prime necessity, but the available forces that could have been used for the purpose of defending South Carolina were not concentrated. Had Wilmington been evacuated, about 16,000 men would have been released for this purpose. There were approximately 10,000 troops in and around Charleston, and with the remnants of Hood's army it is estimated that about 40,000 men could have been collected to meet Sherman. Nothing was done, however, and Sherman's army had free rein. An ineffective force lay in North Carolina, another in Charleston, and there was still another under General J. E. Johnston, whom Lee had restored to command in spite of the opposition of President Davis.

**410. Dissatisfaction with the Government.** By the end of 1864 there was to be heard on all sides complaints of the management of affairs of the Confederacy. On all sides there were protests against the inefficiency of the commissary department, and there were many who did not scruple to make accusations of systematic peculations. With the naturally fertile soil of the South, there was an abundance of food to supply its armies, when, as a matter of fact, the soldiers from the beginning of the war rarely had the necessary nourishment, and towards the end of the struggle they were actually in a starving condition. The government, among other things, was accused of negligence in control of railroad facilities. One instance related is that when Lee sent General Hagood and his brigade, among other troops, to the relief of Fort Fisher that in going from Danville to Greensboro, a distance of forty-eight miles, the time for the transportation was three and a half days. General Hagood relates that on this journey he met with a party of



Confederate congressmen, from whom for the first time since the commencement of the war he heard expressions of doubt of the success of Confederate arms. General Hagood states that they were demoralized and accuses them of having grossly failed in the discharge of their duties. There was also dissatisfaction with President Davis, who was charged with meddling with the military. It was claimed that if General Lee had from the commencement been put in untrammelled charge of all the forces of the Confederacy, east and west, the result would have been different.

**411. South Carolinians in North Carolina.** After the fall of Fort Fisher, the Confederates for a time retained their lines below the city—at Fort Anderson and at Town Creek. General Hagood of South Carolina, with a force of 2,300, most of whom were South Carolinians, was in command of the Fort Anderson lines. After a stubborn resistance, the Confederates were forced to retire from these lines toward the last of February, upon which the evacuation of Wilmington was determined. On the 22nd of February, the troops marched out after destroying everything that they could not carry away which would be of service to the enemy. As the troops marched out, the vessels in the harbor, the cotton and the naval stores were in flames.

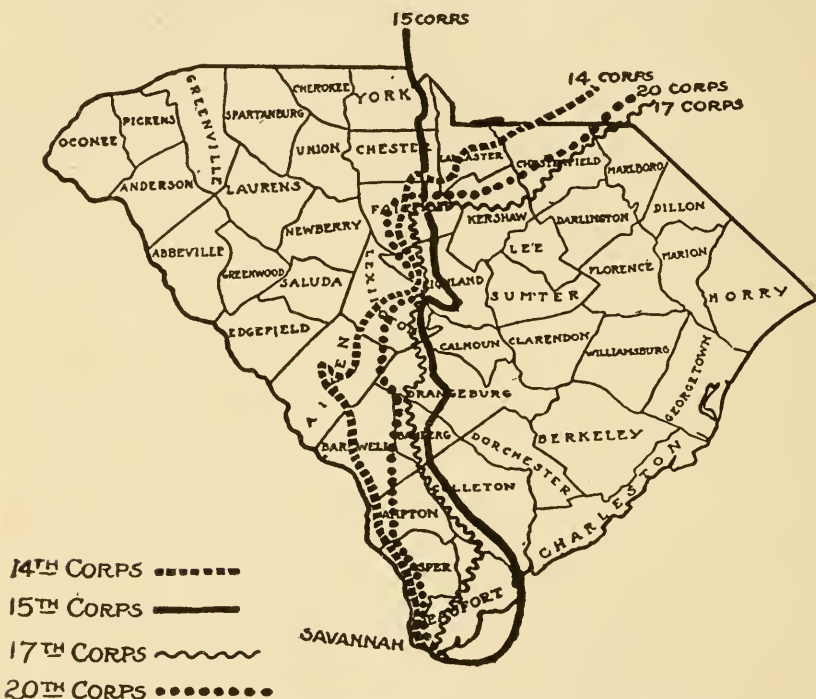
**412. The End in Sight.** It is a curious fact that the South did not realize that the collapse of the Confederacy was in sight. All plans were being made for an extensive spring campaign, when it was the case that the days of the government of the slave-holding States were numbered. The Western army had been practically annihilated, the important North Carolina posts had fallen, Lee's army was in almost starving condition, every Southern port was blockaded, and Sherman stood at the very gateway of South Carolina, and yet the South with indomitable will still fought for a successful issue.

**413. Sherman Marches from Savannah to Columbia.** It is said by many authorities that a decided animus against the "original secessionists," as South Carolinians were called, was exhibited even among the common Federal soldiers, and that in marching through Georgia threats of vengeance against the Palmetto State were heard on all sides. Whatever may be true as to their intentions, however, it was the case that on entering South Carolina a course of wanton destruction and vandalism was pursued.

It was thought that Sherman would move directly toward Charleston, that hotbed of secession, but the course followed lay to Columbia through the towns of Hardeeville, Grahamville, Gillisonville, McPhersonville, Barnwell, Blackville, Midway, and Orangeburgh. The population of the State consisted entirely of old men, women, and children, too helpless to oppose the invader. From Savannah for eighty miles along the route of the army the habitations of but two white families remained. Cotton gins, presses, factories, barns, fences were fired. Provisions were destroyed and cattle driven away and in numerous cases, despite the pleas of the mothers, cows were taken away, upon which helpless babies were dependent for food. On many plantations, in ribald merriment, the soldiers poured on the ground barrels of molasses and then dumped in it sacks of flour, grits, meal, and other provisions so as to spoil it for the use of the owners. The old men were treated with harshness, women suffered indignities, their jewelry and their silver were stolen and divided among the soldiers. Especial vengeance was wreaked upon the plantations of prominent South Carolinians. General Jamison's home, "Burwood," with its magnificent library; "Woodlands," the home of William Gilmore Simms, containing another fine library; "Millwood," Wade Hampton's home, and numerous others were all reduced to ashes. Pursuing this course,

the army reached Lexington, after a small battle near the town of Orangeburg. At Lexington, it was common talk among the soldiers that the city of Columbia was to be burned.

**414. The Burning of Columbia.** On February 16th, Columbians heard the roar of cannon, and the enemy on reaching the river commenced shelling the city. The next day the



Map Showing Counties in South Carolina in 1915 With Routes Taken Through the State by the Devastating Corps of Sherman's Army in 1865.

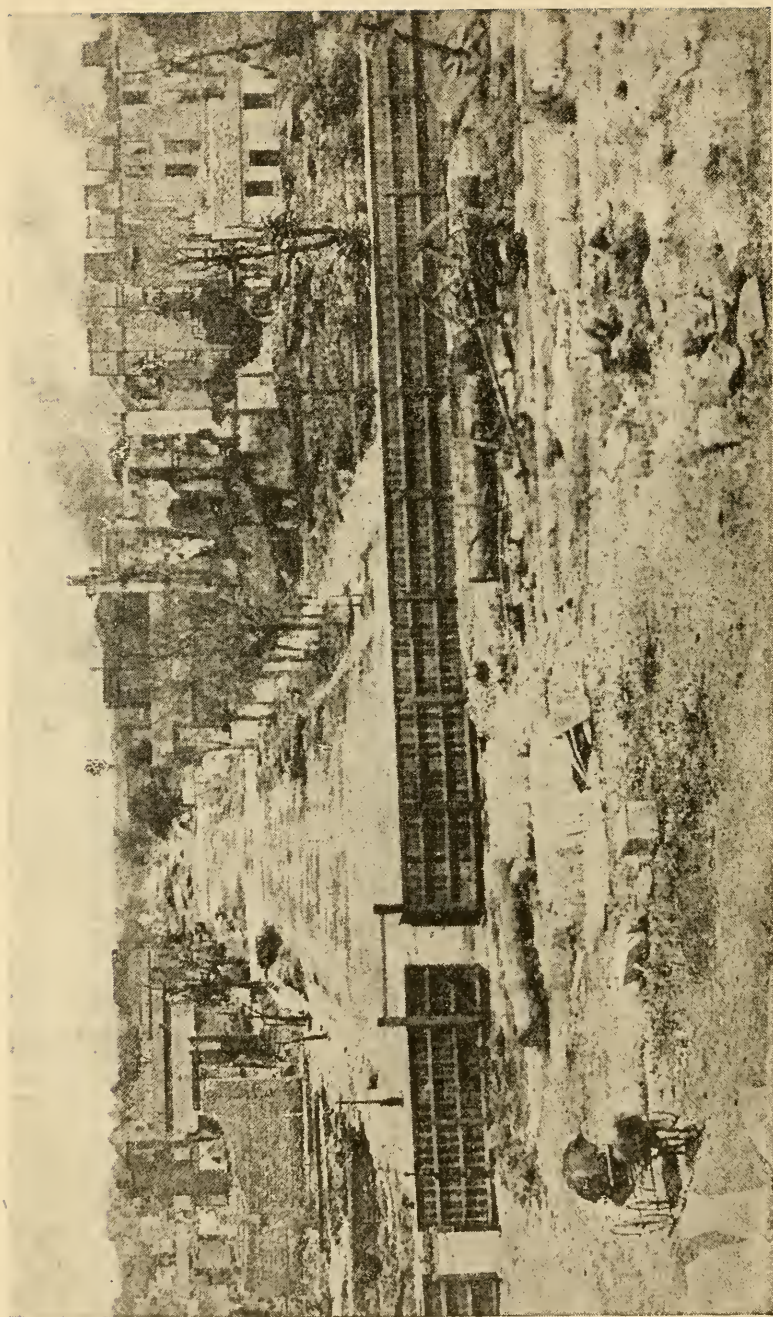
Federals crossed on pontoon bridges and General Hampton with his small force, which had been returned to South Carolina, moved out of the city as the overpowering force of the Federals entered. Mayor Goodwyn met Sherman, surrendered the city to him, and received his promise to protect it with the words, "Go home and rest assured your city will be as safe in my hands as if under your control."

The Federals entered about midday and encamped on the streets and in vacant houses. Almost immediately they began breaking into stores and warehouses, taking from these what gold, money, and jewelry were to be found and scattering the rest of the wares on the streets. The streets of the city were filled with blue-coated soldiers.

Toward evening the soldiers became more and more noisy and unruly in their conduct, and everywhere Columbians were threatened darkly as to their coming fate. In some cases warnings to escape were given citizens by kindly soldiers. Thus it came not entirely as a surprise when, at dark, three rockets went up and at this signal fire broke out almost simultaneously in various quarters of the city. The citizens brought out the fire engines and hose, but the soldiers prevented them from using these by disabling the engines and cutting the hose with their sabres. As the fire made headway, the troops became madder and madder. A perfect carnival of pillage ensued. They made no concealment of setting fire to houses. Some ran in and set fire to the lace curtains, others threw coals of fire into the beds, and others with combustible material fired houses from the outside.

As the fire became general, the streets were filled with terror-stricken women and children, who ran about with clothing and valuables tied up in sheets. These bundles in numerous instances were snatched away from them by the soldiers, great numbers of whom were by this time crazed by liquors, pillaged from the cellars of the city. The Hanoverian consul, who was in Columbia on the terrible night of February 17th, says in recounting the story of the burning of the city that he heard the cries of distress from women and children pursued by the Federal soldiers, saw rings snatched from the women's fingers by the soldiers, earrings pulled out of their ears, and their clothing torn off.





Columbia After Sherman's Army Burned It, Looking North Up Main Street from the State House.

Numbers of the citizens made their way to the State Insane Asylum in the northeastern part of the city, the loyal slaves following them with bundles. Soon the Asylum grounds were dotted with these homeless Columbians, who spent the night under the trees. The morning of February 18th dawned upon a scene of sad devastation in the capital of South Carolina, which lay in ruins.

**415. Sherman Marches from State.** Charleston also suffered heavily as an indirect result of Sherman's march through the State. When he entered South Carolina, the authorities were convinced that his objective was Charleston. It was decided to evacuate the city rather than surrender it. Accordingly, in preparation for evacuation, the South Carolina ironclads in the harbor were blown up. An accidental ignition of some powder at the Northeastern Railroad depot caused a considerable fire.

After burning Columbia, Sherman resumed his march. He went toward North Carolina through Winnsboro, Camden, and Cheraw, leaving behind him a country desolated by fire and the wanton destruction of his troops. From Cheraw he entered North Carolina, where his army was engaged by a Confederate force of 18,000 men under General Johnston at Bentonville. The Confederates were outnumbered and defeated.

**416. Evacuation of Richmond.** At daybreak on the morning of April 2nd, Grant ordered a general assault along the lines at Petersburg. Before night the battle was over, and 12,000 Confederates had been taken prisoners. On the same day Lee sent a dispatch to President Davis which read, "Richmond must be evacuated this evening." Indescribable confusion followed. Nine ships in the river and tobacco and cotton warehouses were burned. All the citizens who could left the city. On the next day Federal troops took possession of the capital of the Confederacy.

**417. Surrender at Appomattox.** Lee made an effort to escape with his army, but he was handicapped by the fact that his men were starving. He was forced to halt and forage. Grant divided his army into three sections for the purpose of capturing Lee, who was finally hemmed in by the Federal forces. In attempting to cross the Appomattox River, on April 9th, 1865, Lee fought a last desperate battle. He had then, at a liberal estimate, only 35,000 men, who were ragged, starved, and weary. Opposed to these tattered heroes were 100,000 well-fed, well-equipped, and fresh troops of the enemy. The battle was fought fiercely, but when reinforcements for the Federals appeared, Lee was obliged to hoist the white flag in token of surrender. The number of Confederate troops he surrendered to General Grant was 28,231. The terms of surrender were agreed to at Appomattox Courthouse. On April 26th following General Johnston surrendered his army to Sherman at Greensboro, North Carolina. The War between the United States and the Confederate States was ended.

**VI.**  
**SOUTH CAROLINA DURING**  
**RECONSTRUCTION**





## CHAPTER XXXI.

### SOUTH CAROLINA UNDER RADICAL GOVERNMENT.

**418. The State in Ruins.** None of the Confederate States paid so dearly in the war, in proportion to its means, as did South Carolina. Out of 146,000 white males of all classes its loss in killed and disabled aggregated 40,000. When it is recollected that South Carolina in 1860 had a white voting population of only 40,000, this loss will be realized in its disastrous extent. Its loss in slave property reached \$200,000,000. The assets of its banks, all of which were lost, amounted to \$5,000,000. The burning and seizure of cotton meant a loss of \$20,000,000. It is estimated that of the \$400,000,000 of property in South Carolina in 1861 little more than \$50,000,000 remained in 1865.

Charleston had been in a state of siege from 1861 to 1865. Large areas of the city were in ruins from the constant shelling. Also portions of the city had taken fire when evacuated at the approach of Sherman. In Columbia 86 squares of the city had been burned, consuming in all 1,386 buildings. The destruction of Columbia had entailed great loss upon the entire State, as, thinking that Columbia, the capital of the State, would be strongly defended, thousands of citizens from various parts of the State had taken up their residence there and brought with them their valuables, which suffered from either pillaging or fire. With Sherman's march through the rural parts of the State, the country had been left destitute. The district around Beaufort had been in the occupation of the enemy since 1862, and had consequently suffered wanton destruction. Large granaries had been burnt and rice fields had been flooded by the enemy so as to destroy the growing crop.

**419. Soldiers Return to Their Homes.** Several days after Lee's surrender rumors began to reach the soldiers in North Carolina of the downfall of the Confederacy. At first they were incredulous, and it was not until the 27th of April that the truth of the rumors was confirmed. Shortly afterwards they returned to their homes. As one poor Confederate remarked dolefully to a Northerner, "We wore ourselves out whipping you."

They were truly worn out. When the South Carolinians reached their homes, ragged and in a starving condition, it was to find their houses in ruins, their larders empty, and their crops destroyed. General Gillmore, with his headquarters at Hilton Head, was in command of the State. Governor Magrath had been imprisoned and was held in Fort Pulaski at Savannah. All civil authorities had been deposed.

**420. President Lincoln's Plan.** It was President Lincoln's idea that the seceding States should be restored to the Union under terms dictated by the President; that is, that they should declare the freedom of the negro, should cease resistance, appoint provisional governors, and take the oath of amnesty, which was to be offered to all but men who had been prominent in the war. On the 14th of April, 1865, Lincoln was assassinated. Andrew Johnson, vice-president of the United States, became president. Johnson set himself to carrying out the restoration plans of Lincoln.

On May 29th, 1865, President Johnson issued a proclamation granting amnesty to the Confederates upon stated terms and conditions. The proclamation granted full pardon and restoration of civil rights except as to slaves. Pardon, however, was denied to thirteen classes of men, among whom were all who had held rank above colonel in the Confederate army, all officers who had received their education at West Point or at the United States Naval Acade-

my, all who had left seats in Congress to aid their States in the war, and all who had voluntarily participated in the war whose taxable property was over \$20,000.

Upon the issuance of this proclamation, meetings were held in South Carolina, at which resolutions were adopted expressing a desire for a place in the Union and for the re-establishment of civil government. Committees were sent to Washington to ask that a provisional governor be appointed, and from among the names President Johnson assented to that of Benjamin F. Perry of Greenville.

**421. Restoration of Civil Government.** Emancipation of the negroes became a recognized fact by June, 1865. What was called the "Freedmen's Bureau" was established by order of General Gillmore for the protection of the rights of the freed negro slaves.

Governor Perry directed civil officers to resume their duties and called for an election of delegates to carry out the plans of President Johnson's proclamation for restoration into the Union. Pardons were granted in large numbers, so that delegates would be eligible to the convention which met in Columbia in September, 1865. This convention prohibited the holding of slaves, prepared for the meeting of the legislature, and called a session of the legislature. The elections were held, and James L. Orr chosen governor.

In November the regular session of the legislature convened. The important work of this body consisted of laws to establish relations between the negro and the white man. By these acts the negro was to have the right to acquire property, to make contracts, and to receive protection under the law in his person and property. [Various acts granting rights were passed and then very severe legislation enacted for the protection of the white man against the negro. This was to be the cause of deep indignation in the North and these laws came to be designated as the "Black Code."



**422. South Carolina's Position.** South Carolina intended, of course, to accept quietly the results of the war, but had no intention of submitting to negro domination. The State was willing to give the negro equal protection under the law, but was decidedly unwilling to give him the ballot with the right to sit on juries. The negroes were in such large majority that the vote for them would mean their supremacy and giving it to them was not to be considered.

It must be realized that the State had a tremendous problem to face in the sudden liberation of thousands of irresponsible, uneducated, unmoral, and, in many cases, brutish Africans. The people of South Carolina felt that were all restraint taken from them they constituted a menace and therefore stringent laws were thought necessary to hold them in bounds.

Refusal to give the negro the ballot was not considered an unjust thing in various parts of the Union. In 1865, negro suffrage was rejected by Connecticut, and in 1867 by Ohio, Kansas, and Minnesota. Thus it was never imagined in the South that negro supremacy would be forced upon them at the point of the bayonet.

**423. Restoration Apparently Complete.** By the time for the convening of Congress in December, 1865, restoration of the Southern States in the Union was apparently complete and it seemed that there was nothing further necessary except representation of the South in Congress.

As was to be expected the year since the defeat of the Confederates had been a very difficult one for South Carolinians. At first Federal garrisons had been composed solely of white men. Soon, however, negro troops came. These troops were for the most part insolent and arrogant and in some cases their conduct was so intolerable that riots seemed inevitable. The presence of negroes in authority so excited the freed slaves that they lost their heads. There

occurred terrible cases of assault and murder. The presence of the negro troops became finally so obnoxious that there was a general feeling of relief when toward the end of 1865 they were removed to the coast. Their removal undoubtedly prevented bloody race riots.

Benjamin F. Perry and John L. Manning were elected to the Senate of the United States.

**424. Congress Voids President's Restoration.** Congress convened in December, 1865. It was immediately apparent that it had no intention of accepting the President's plan of restoration for the seceded States. Congress was determined to teach the South a lesson for its "rebellion," and its policy soon showed that it looked upon the war as one waged by the North, not for the preservation of the Union, but for conquest. President Johnson was severely criticised, and his acts were declared merely provisional by Congress. The credentials of the Southern representatives were laid upon the table. A committee was appointed to investigate the true condition of affairs in the "rebel" States. This committee instead of going to the "rebel" States to investigate, held their inquiries in Washington. These investigations were made through officers of the Freedmen's Bureau. In June, the committee reported to Congress that the bitterness and defiance of the Southern States towards the Union was unparalleled in the history of the world, and that in its opinion the burden rested with these States to show that they had a claim to be reinstated in the Union. Congress then offered to the South for ratification, as a condition to entering the Union, what is known as the fourteenth amendment, by which negroes were allowed the ballot. The seceded States, with the exception of Tennessee, refused to ratify it.

**425. South Under Military Law.** The report of the committee and the refusal of the Southern States to ratify the

fourteenth amendment, led to the passage of an act dividing the Southern States into five military districts, with an officer of the Federal army in charge of each. The act set forth that it was "necessary that peace and good order should be enforced in said States until loyal and republican State governments can be legally established." President Johnson vetoed the act. Congress immediately passed it over his veto and it became a law.

**426. Policy of Restoration.** The Reconstruction Acts of Congress declared that before a person could qualify as a voter it was necessary to swear that he had never been a member of any State legislature, or held any executive or judicial office of any State, or had been a member of Congress, or held any executive office of the United States and afterwards been engaged in "insurrection or rebellion against the United States." The act required that the seceded States should remain under military authority until an election was held calling a convention which should adopt a republican constitution and a legislature should be convened which should ratify the fourteenth amendment to the Constitution. The fourteenth amendment provided that no person should be debarred from the right of suffrage because of color, race or previous condition of servitude. The enforcement of this amendment would mean that negroes would have the full right of suffrage and that they should be entitled to sit on juries.

In March, 1867, Major General Daniel Sickles, U. S. A., under the provisions of the Reconstruction Acts, assumed command of the second military district, made up of North and South Carolina. South Carolina was divided into eleven military divisions, each under the command of an officer of the United States army. In April, General Sickles issued what was called order No. 10, by which negroes were made eligible as jurors. Judge A. P. Aldrich, in holding

court in Edgefield, refused to obey this order and was promptly removed from office. Gradually county officials were removed and replaced by military appointees. In Charleston the city officials were one by one thrown out and replaced by Northerners and negroes. The State was being dealt with as a conquered province, under the sway of absolute militarism.

**427. Coming of the "Carpet Baggers."** With the passing of the State under the control of the army of the United States, South Carolina was overrun with Northern and foreign adventurers, negroes, alleged preachers and missionaries, who came to the conquered province for the "pickings" to be found. So meager were their possessions that it was said that they brought all their belongings in a carpet bag, and were therefore known to the people of the State as "carpet baggers." Like hawks after their prey, they swooped down upon South Carolina, and under the protection of the military authorities usurped the offices of the State and enriched themselves from its coffers by fraud and robbery. With these adventurers some corruptible native whites of the State joined hands. Such men were called "renegades" or "scalawags." The "carpet-baggers" and the "renegades" made common cause in setting the negro up in power with the purpose, not of benefiting the ignorant negro, but of filling their own pockets.

**428. The Republican Convention.** By order of General Sickles, in pursuance of instructions of the Restoration Acts, a general registration of voters was called for. This registration showed 78,982 blacks and only 46,346 whites eligible to vote. So many white South Carolinians were debarred from voting in Beaufort, as a glaring instance, that the registration showed 2,500 negroes allowed the ballot and only 65 whites. An election was held to vote for or against the holding of a State Convention as was directed by the



Reconstruction Acts. Of course, the majority was for the Convention, which met in Charleston in January, 1868. It was said that never in a civilized country was there any equal to this body of law-makers. Of its members there were 73 negroes and 51 whites, the total taxes paid by the delegates was \$359.70, an average of less than three dollars each. It was composed of (1) native whites, many of whom were of ill repute ("scalawags"); (2) Federal officers; (3) former slaves, and (4) "carpet baggers," among whom it is said there were seven preachers. Of the 124 delegates 44 were not natives of the State. Of these were some from Denmark, Ireland, Dutch Guinea, and other foreign countries. There were few white men of good repute in the State who had not borne arms for the Confederacy and in denying a great portion of these the ballot the real intelligence, virtue and wealth of South Carolina was excluded from the Convention.

#### **429. Convention's Constitution Approved by Congress.**

The Convention, after long and heated arguments as to the pay of its mongrel members, drew up a Constitution, by which the right of suffrage was conferred upon every male citizen of 21 years, or over, not debarred by the Reconstruction Acts of Congress. No property or educational qualifications were required for voting. Slavery was prohibited and extensive and costly provision was made for the education of the negro children. In this section the schools for whites were opened to negro children.

Upon the adoption of this Constitution, a convention of conservative Democrats was held in Columbia at which a protest was made to Congress. This convention declared, among other things, that the Constitution excluded the best men of the State from voting, that it forced white children to go to school with negroes, entailed a system of education which the impoverished State could not support

and supplanted intelligence with ignorance. It also declared that South Carolinians would not submit to negro rule.

An election was held for the ratification of the Constitution. A majority of voters having voted for it, Congress was notified. Despite the protest from the Democratic Convention, Congress approved the Constitution.

**430. Radical Supremacy.** The stamp of Federal approval having been given to the Constitution formed by the Republican Convention, there followed an election of a Radical legislature under it. The Democrats only succeeded in choosing twenty members of the body. This Republican legislature was convened in July, 1868. Its first act was to ratify the fourteenth amendment, the 20 Democrats of course voting against the ratification. Upon this action of the legislature, Congress readmitted South Carolina to the Union. The State had been restored to the Union by the vote of the negroes, "carpet-baggers," and "renegades." Governor Orr was removed and General R. K. Scott of Ohio took his place. The Federal military authorities gave over control to the civil, and, passing from under military rule which for a little more than a year had been enforced at the point of the bayonet, South Carolina started upon its dark period.

**431. Radical Legislature of South Carolina.** The legislature elected for the terms 1868-1869 and 1870-1871 was composed of 78 negroes and 46 whites. The amount of taxes paid by all the legislators amounted to \$635.23. The body consisted of "carpet-baggers", "renegades" and negroes. Some members could only write their names in a mechanical fashion, and never as a whole was such gross ignorance displayed in a legislative body.

The results of such an incompetent legislature were exactly what was foreseen. At the end of the second term the State debt had increased from \$5,407,306.27 to

\$14,833,349.17. At the close of the year 1870, all counties were in debt except Anderson and Fairfield. The average annual tax for some years before the war had been less than \$550,000. In 1869, the taxes amounted to \$1,764,357.41. The public school system was grossly inefficient. The selling of votes was common. In the legislature bribery and graft were rife. As the election of 1870 approached, a negro militia was raised and guns issued to them so that they could help the Republicans carry the election. This militia with the aid of the armed constabulary, which had been created in 1869, was very efficient in the campaign. Governor Scott was re-elected.

**432. Two More Years of Radical Rule.** The taste of the second Radical legislature was more luxurious than that of the first. For the session of 1870-1871, the expenses were \$679,071.83. In the journals of the body we find bills for chandeliers, ranging from \$1,500 to \$2,500 apiece; window curtains \$500 to \$1,500; sofas \$150 to \$175; Gothic chairs \$70 to \$90. To cover the cost of such expenditures as these and to perpetrate frauds on a still larger scale, bonds of the State were issued. Proceeds from the sale of the bonds went into the pockets of the members of the legislature and its hangers-on. Public funds failing, the Insane Asylum was maintained with funds donated by private individuals. The legislature did not provide any money to support the elaborate school system which it had created. Some of the schools were kept going by funds given by Northerners. The State debt at the close of the session of 1870 had increased to \$22,371,306.

The increase in the State debt so aroused the taxpayers that they called a convention, which recommended to the people of the State resisting of the payment of the fraudulent bonds. Also an appeal was made to the legislature for the passage of an election law by which the 60,000 tax-

paying voters would have proportionate representation in the legislature with the 90,000 voters who paid no taxes. This appeal had no effect.

**433. Attempt to Enforce Negro Equality.** Early in his first term, Governor Scott started the custom of giving official receptions at the executive mansion, to which blacks and whites of both sexes were invited. Negroes were put on the board of trustees of the South Carolina University, and a new board was created for the Insane Asylum, which adopted the policy of non-separation of the races at the institution.



## CHAPTER XXXII.

### OVERTHROW OF RADICAL GOVERNMENT.

**434. The Ku-Klux Klan.** Shortly after the close of the war with its consequent emancipation of the negro, in almost all of the conquered States there sprang up secret organizations of the white men, who banded together, fearing the evil effect unrestricted freedom would have upon the ignorant, irresponsible slaves. It must be remembered that the State government was hostile to white South Carolinians, and that, although the military had surrendered to the civil authorities, the Federal troops still remained in the State to stand at the back of the weak, corrupt administration, which, as everyone knew, would stand only so long as it had the protection of the United States troops. The Ku-Klux Klan organized secretly for the purpose of opposition and rejection of the Radical party and for the protection of the women of the State. The Ku-Klux were always mounted on horses and wore caps and masks to conceal their identity, and long white coats which covered them and fell down over their horses. The sight of these ghostly riders galloping by in the night was a very terrifying one to the impressionable, superstitious negro. A visit from the Ku-Klux was sufficient in most cases to turn him away from his evil doing.

**435. The Ku-Klux at Work.** In South Carolina, the Ku-Klux Klan was quiet until the latter part of 1870. It would have remained inactive but for the arming of the negroes and the conduct of the negro State militia. The militiamen became more and more intolerable in their bearing. House burning was more frequent and indignities of all kinds were inflicted upon the whites. After the October elections, the conduct of these armed negroes grew worse and worse.

Women were insulted on the streets. In Laurens County there were five or six companies of negro militia, which proved a source of great concern to the white people.

In Union the negroes first called down upon themselves the summary punishment of the Klan. In January, 1871, an ex-Confederate soldier named Stevens was driving a wagon containing barrels of whiskey and was stopped on the public highway by a company of negro militia, who demanded the whiskey. Upon his refusal, he was seized, beaten, and finally shot to death. The whites were naturally alarmed at this open assassination. The Ku-Klux immediately proceeded to disarm the negro militia. The thirteen members of the company which had murdered Stevens were lodged in jail in Union. The demeanor of the negroes in Union became so threatening and so openly sympathetic with the murderers that the Ku-Klux went to the jail on the night of January 4th, seized two of the negroes and shot them. A month later, an order came to remove the prisoners to Columbia, and the Ku-Klux, feeling that it was simply a scheme to get the negroes away, visited the jail again. The negroes were taken from the jail and shot to death.

**436. United States Punishes Ku-Klux.** As the Ku-Klux became active in every county of the State where the negro militia was troublesome, the State government became concerned. Governor Scott offered to co-operate with the whites in restoring order, and all the militia companies in the disturbed counties were finally disbanded.

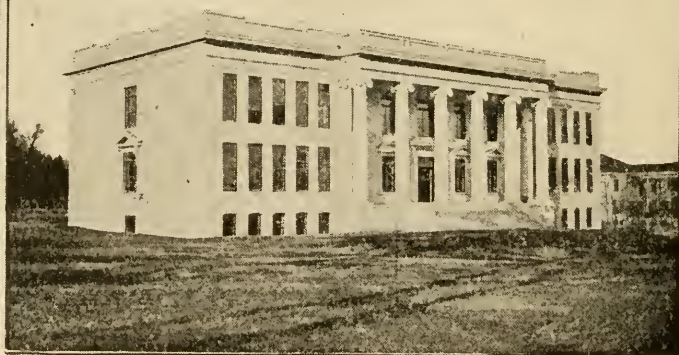
After the Ku-Klux raids had ceased for some months, which they did as soon as the negroes became quiet, Congress instituted an investigation, upon which nine counties of South Carolina were declared in a state of rebellion, and United States troops were sent to occupy them. These counties suffered in some instances more from the tyranny of the Federal authorities than from the brutishness of the

*The Citadel  
The Military College of South Carolina*



*Group of Buildings  
Winthrop College*

*Le Conte College  
University of South Carolina*



Views of Three State Colleges.



negro militia. Without proof in most cases, and always without warrant, citizens were thrown into jail, often on the accusations of negroes that they had been active in the Ku-Klux. In one of the rebellious counties—York—there were 195 citizens confined in jail. In Union there were about two hundred arrests and several hundred in Spartanburg. Some citizens were carried to Columbia for trial. These trials were a travesty on justice. All defendants were declared guilty and subjected to fine. All were given terms of imprisonment ranging from three months to five years.

**437. "The Robber Governor."** In 1872, Franklin J. Moses, Jr., of Sumter, became Radical governor of South Carolina. By this time the State was prostrate. Negroes were in full control of the government. The controlling majority in the legislature was utterly corrupt. Seats in Congress were openly bought. The incompetency and dishonesty of the negro government was manifest to everyone. No white man felt that his life or property was safe. President Grant, who had succeeded Johnson to the presidency, was sympathetic toward the negro government. Federal troops were always at its disposal. The courts of the State were corrupted, the juries packed, and perjury prevalent.

With the election of Moses, the State entered upon a perfect orgy of corruption. Moses was the worst of the Radical governors. He began his administration as a poor man and in two years had enriched himself by the numerous frauds which the government was engaged in. The extravagance of the administration was unsurpassed. For instance, "a room in the State House was fitted up wherein to serve wines, liquors, eatables, and cigars. Liquors and cigars were sent to the houses of members and their friends and also the committee rooms. Bowley, the chairman of the House committee of ways and means, on one occasion



ordered and received one box of champagne, one of port wine, one of brandy, one of whiskey, and three boxes of cigars. There were various bills for furnishing eatables, wines, liquors, and cigars to different legislative committees—one dealer testifying that he presented a single bill for \$1,800. and received therefor a pay certificate.”

During this administration, negroes entered the South Carolina University. There were large deficiencies in the treasuries of the various counties. The penitentiary was in debt \$77,338.40. The asylum was in debt \$60,160.66.

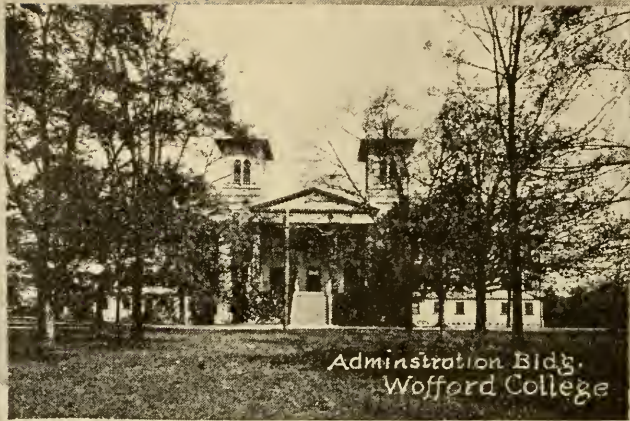
**438. Assembling of Taxpayers.** In February, 1874, the taxpayers of the State assembled again in Columbia. A protest was made against the frauds of the government—which frauds were being paid for by the taxpayers, who had no voice in the government. Another appeal for redress was made to Congress. A careful statement of the unlawful expenditures of the legislature was made and an account was given of the frauds and plundering. It was stated that prominent members of the legislature had openly avowed that the taxes would be raised so high that the land would have to be sold at public auction.

A committee of prominent South Carolinians were sent to Washington to lay this appeal before President Grant. The president received these gentlemen with unpardonable rudeness, and Congress, with its usual hostility, afforded no redress. A minority of Congressmen, however, protested against the action of Congress. This minority begged Congress at least to send a committee to investigate conditions in South Carolina. Concluding, the minority said “the cry of that outraged, helpless and suffering people has reached our hearts as well as our understanding. That once prosperous and beautiful State is on the verge of ruin. A horde of thieves and robbers, worse than any that ever infested any civilized community on earth, have

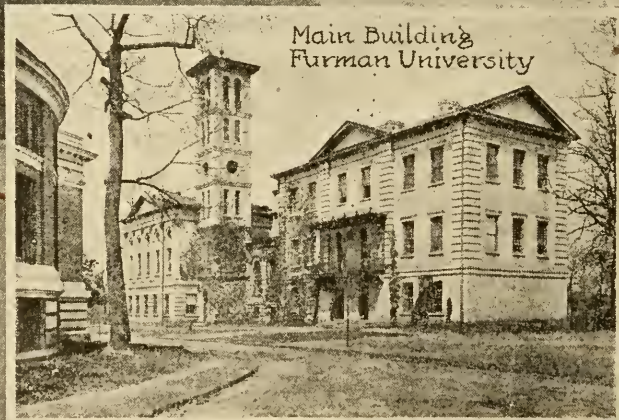
her by the throat and are fast sucking her life-blood. Three hundred thousand of her citizens, descendants of those who fought and won with our fathers the battles of American liberty, are crying to Congress for redress—for help. To refuse their request is to drive them to despair and ruin.”

**439. Chamberlain Made Governor.** In 1874, Daniel H. Chamberlain was elected to succeed Moses as governor. His administration was the best of the Radical governors. He openly accused the legislature of corruption and called for the betterment of conditions in the penitentiary and asylum. He warned the counties against further deficiencies in their treasuries, and instituted an investigation into the condition of the State treasury. He urged reform of the trial justice system, by the appointment of honest, competent men. In December, 1875, the legislature chose Franklin J. Moses, Jr., former governor, and W. J. Whipper, a Northern negro of bad repute, as circuit judges. The election of these two men was condemned throughout the State. There was universal indignation expressed. All over the State public meetings were held in condemnation of the legislature, and at these meetings it was declared that seating of the infamous men on the bench would be resisted to the end. Governor Chamberlain refused to sign the commissions of Whipper and Moses. For this the governor was commended by the Democrats of the State. It looked as if in the coming election of 1876, he would have the support of the Democrats for re-election to the gubernatorial chair.

**440. The Democrats Organize.** In January, 1876, the central committee of the Democratic party met in Columbia and issued an address to the Democrats of the State. The address called for organization of the Democrats for the campaign of 1876, and begged that they apply themselves to politics and save the State from the Radicals. Upon this call a Democratic club was organized in each county



Holland Hall Newberry College



Views of Three Denominational Colleges.



and before election day these organizations embraced the Democracy of South Carolina.

Among the Democrats there were two distinct views about the Democratic nominee for governor. Some thought that the organization should support Chamberlain, as with him at the head of the ticket there would be a better chance of electing Democrats to the other offices. Others thought that the nominations should be for straight-out "Democrats from governor to coroners." Notwithstanding this division of opinion concerning the nominee there was general agreement in the determination to deliver the State at any cost from the control of the negroes and Radicals.

**441. The Hamburg Riot.** In July, 1876, an incident occurred which settled the question of the Democratic nominee for governor. The village of Hamburg, in Aiken County, was in control of the negro, and for several years had had enrolled at it a company of negro militia, who were well provided with arms and ammunition. On riding through the streets of Hamburg one day in July, two citizens of Edgefield were insulted by these negro soldiers and when a warrant was taken out for their arrest, they threatened to lynch the citizens whom they had insulted. On the day fixed for the trial, the whites, with General Matthew C. Butler of Edgefield as spokesman, asked the negroes to apologize for their conduct and disarm. The negroes refused and began firing. They fortified themselves in a small brick drill hall and before any of their number was hurt, young McKie Meriwether, a citizen of Edgefield, was killed. A small cannon was brought from Augusta. The negroes were forced from the building, one of their number being killed. The rest were captured and that night five of them were shot to death as an example to the remainder. This summary proceeding was the culmination, in General Butler's language, of the practice "of insulting and outraging



white people, which the negroes had adopted there for several years."

There were several other riots in various parts of the State in which the negroes were dealt with in like manner. The white people, now fully aroused, recognized nothing but the necessity of bringing them to order.

Upon the statement of the negroes of the district, Governor Chamberlain formed his judgment of the riot. He appealed to the president for troops. This action had a decided effect in the determination of the Democrats not to support him for re-election.

**442. Democrats at Work.** In August, at the Democratic convention, General Matthew C. Butler nominated General Wade Hampton for governor. General Hampton was then unanimously chosen by acclamation. We have told of the nominee's exploits during the War between the Sections. With the question of the nomination settled, the Democrats all over the State went to work. Every man enrolled and great efforts were made to enroll all the negro men who had been loyal to the whites into clubs officered by negro men. It was announced that any oppression of these negro Democrats by the Republicans would surely lead to bloodshed. Knowing that the Republicans would stoop to anything to gain the election, the Democratic clubs provided themselves with arms, and careful plans were made for the protection of sparsely settled neighborhoods of whites. Some military organizations were formed, called rifle and sabre clubs. The white people, with the State government hostile, were forced to look to these clubs for protection.

**443. Opening of Campaign.** The campaign opened on September 2nd, at Anderson. There followed enthusiastic meetings in each county. The women of the State made for the men of their families red shirts, which were worn at these meetings. The clubs came to the meetings in military

order, each man mounted and wearing a red shirt. General Hampton was escorted to flower-decked stands by the red-shirted committeemen, while young women sang songs and scattered flowers in his path. Every man, woman, and child felt that in Hampton was the deliverance of the State.

As election day approached, the Democrats became more and more active. Getting Hampton elected was the business of the worthy citizens of South Carolina. Farms were left untended, stores were closed, and every Democrat went to work for the redemption of the State. Each one set himself the task of winning as many negro votes for Hampton as possible. Even the children took up the slogan of "Hurrah for Hampton" and this call became the "battle cry of the white people of South Carolina in the fight to rid the State of negro rule."

The Democrats were aided in their fight by the fact that the Republican candidates were of such notoriously bad character. In some counties white Republicans refused to run because of the character of the Republican State ticket.

Many of the negroes were armed for the election, which resulted in several serious riots. In Charleston, a white man was killed and five wounded in protecting some negro Democrats from a party of Republicans, who were trying to break up the meeting. Again the negroes tried to interfere at the joint Democratic and Republican meeting at Cainhoy in Charleston County. The negroes began firing and six white men were killed and sixteen wounded. Only one negro was killed. At Ellenton, in Barnwell County, the most serious riot occurred. Two negro burglars entered a home in the owner's absence and in meeting resistance from the lady of the house, beat her and her little son severely. One of the negroes was caught, confessed and told who the other negro was. A constable with a posse began a search for the negro, whereupon the negroes of the district massed

in a swamp. Matters went from bad to worse, and in three days two whites were killed and eight wounded. The number of negroes killed is not known, but it is estimated that between 80 and 125 lost their lives. After the appearance of a company of United States infantry, it was agreed that the whites and the negroes were to disperse.

**444. Federal Troops Again in the State.** Governor Chamberlain himself admitted that the responsibility for the riots was upon the Republicans, but despite this, he ordered the disbanding of the rifle and sabre clubs formed among the Democrats. It must be remembered that these clubs were the only protection of the white people. President Grant laid the responsibility of the riots upon the clubs and also ordered their dispersion. He further ordered the available force (which was about 5,000 men) of the military division of the Atlantic to report to Columbia. A company or more of these United States troops were placed at each county seat. In Barnwell and Aiken alone there were upwards of two hundred arrests of Democrats made by the Federal authorities. Only a few of these ever came to trial and those tried were not convicted.

**445. Hampton Elected.** There was no blood shed on election day. The polls were in control of the Republican party. The troops remained inactive in their camps. The Democrats worked unceasingly all day, chiefly concerning themselves with getting the negro men to vote for Hampton, and with seeing that they were not molested for so doing. Conditions in the State were so frightful that the Democrats were determined to get the government back into their hands by any means. It must be confessed that in many cases the means used could be justified only by the ends sought.

The count of the ballots showed Hampton elected governor. The elections for the House of Representatives returned

64 Democrats and 60 Republicans; for the Senate, 15 Democrats and 18 Republicans, thus giving the Democrats a majority of one vote on joint ballot. The news arrived shortly after that Rutherford B. Hayes had been elected President of the United States to succeed U. S. Grant.

There was great rejoicing among the Democrats over the outcome of the State election, while the Republicans declared that the Democrats had won by fraud.

**446. The Dual Government.** The Republicans asserted that there had been frauds in the Edgefield and Laurens County elections. The object of this was to throw out these counties which would give the majority in the House and Senate to the Republicans. Governor Chamberlain declared that he had been re-elected.

The General Assembly convened on November 28, 1876. At Governor Chamberlain's request President Grant ordered troops sent for use in the State House. These troops were placed under the command of John B. Dennis, a corrupt individual who had been connected with some of the most brazen frauds of the State. A list of members who should be allowed to enter was given Dennis—this list excluding the Edgefield and Laurens delegates.

The sixty-four Democratic delegates marched in a body to the House, the Edgefield members leading and the Laurens members coming next. These were refused admittance. Whereupon, the entire body of Democrats retired.

There was naturally great excitement among the people. From the steps of the State House General Hampton begged the crowd to keep quiet and to preserve the peace. The Democratic members proceeded to Carolina Hall, where they organized. William H. Wallace of Union was made speaker, and the body of Democratic legislators was known as the "Wallace House."



**447. Court Decides for Democrats.** The Wallace House on November 30th marched boldly into the State House. The Republicans had organized with E. W. M. Mackey as speaker. This body was known as the "Mackey House." For several days the two houses remained seated day and night, both claiming rightful possession. On Sunday night, December 3rd, the Democrats learned that a plot was on foot to bring what was known as the "Hunkidori Club", composed of about a hundred negroes and low whites into the hall of the House and eject the Democratic members from Laurens and Edgefield. Telegrams were sent all over the State, and by Monday night 5,000 Democrats had arrived in Columbia. To prevent bloodshed, the Wallace House withdrew from the State House.

Proceedings were instituted in the Supreme Court to decide which was the lawful House. The Court declared for the Democrats. Despite this decision, the Republicans held on. They held an inauguration and proclaimed Chamberlain governor.

**448. The State Redeemed.** In the spring of 1877, the contest was transferred to Washington. Committees from the Chamberlain contingent and from the lawful Democratic House presented a memorial to President Hayes (who had been inaugurated on March 4) and to Congress. President Hayes declared Hampton governor and the Democratic House lawfully constituted. The Federal troops were removed from the State House on April 10, 1877, and the Wallace House took possession. Governor Hampton was inaugurated governor.

After eight years of negro and Radical supremacy, backed by Federal troops, South Carolina had overthrown the usurpers and taken possession of the government.

**VII.**  
**SOUTH CAROLINA IN RECENT YEARS**



## CHAPTER XXXIII.

### RETRENCHMENT AND REFORM.

**449. Readjustment.** There was naturally great rejoicing throughout the State over the overthrow of the negro government and the subsequent withdrawal of the United States troops from the State House. A session of the legislature was called to convene on April 24, 1877. It will be recalled that there was a majority of radical members in the Senate. These tried to give trouble in every conceivable way, but it was soon found that many of them were so manifestly corrupt that proceedings could be instituted against them. It was discovered that Senators Gleaves, Whittemore, Nash, and Woodruff had purchased thousands of dollars' worth of liquors at the expense of the State for private use and various charges of fraud were brought against the different Radical Senators. Some fled the State, and it was not long before the Democrats had unhampered control of the government.

A tremendous work of readjustment confronted the State. Despite the high price of cotton, many of its citizens who could not adjust themselves to the change in conditions brought by the abolition of slavery were almost bankrupt. Nothing was left them but their lands, with no money to pay for cultivating them. The homes lay in ruins where Sherman had passed, and a pathetically large portion of the male population was physically disabled from wounds received in the war. The State was deeply in debt, large deficits showed in the treasuries of the various counties, the Penitentiary and the Asylum were heavily involved, the school teachers unpaid, the colleges closed, the Citadel still in the hands of the Federal government, the professors of the



State University (which was also closed now) with their salaries unpaid.

South Carolina had to face these conditions in taking charge of the government in 1877. The law-makers set themselves to the rehabilitation of the government, the citizens to the rebuilding of their homes and depleted fortunes. With fresh courage and renewed hope South Carolinians began the work of reorganization and readjustment.

**450. Hampton's Message.** At the special session of the legislature, in April, 1877, Governor Hampton had cause for congratulation in his message to the General Assembly for the return of peace and for the general improvement of conditions within the State. Governor Hampton urged strongly that the debt of the State be not repudiated and suggested a small tax for the payment thereof. He recommended to their earnest attention the free schools and urged that claims of teachers against the State during Radical misrule should be promptly paid and that also the salaries of the professors of the University be paid. Governor Hampton recommended that support be given to the State's charitable and penal institutions and that the labor of convicts be utilized for the support of the Penitentiary, so that the institution would no longer be a drain on the already impoverished State. In conclusion, he recommended that relief be given to those taxpayers who had suffered so from the war and reconstruction as to be unable to pay taxes.


**451. Constructive Legislation.** The legislature went to work with zeal and produced some notably constructive legislation. Of sweeping result was the enactment of the stock law, which required the fencing of pastures. Prior to this cattle had run at large, and the farmers had had to fence in their farms, which of course meant a considerable curtailment of their farm profits. There was a great deal of opposition to this law, but it was not long before its

advantages were evident. For the aid of the farmer, what was known as the lien law was passed, which enabled the farmers to obtain credit for the running of their farms. The legislature authorized the employment of convicts in the Penitentiary by private persons or corporations, following

the recommendations to that effect in Governor Hampton's message. Committees were appointed for the investigation of frauds and a bill was passed for a levy for the support of the free schools.

#### 452. Reorganization.

In January, 1877, Governor Hampton presented to the General Assembly in a message a petition to Congress asking for the restoration of the Citadel to the State and for the reopening of its doors. The General

A black and white portrait of John C. Sheppard, a man with a full beard and mustache, wearing a dark suit, white shirt, and a dark tie. The portrait is oval-shaped and positioned on the left side of the page.

John C. Sheppard, Member of the Wallace House and Afterward Governor of South Carolina.

Assembly passed a law for the reopening of the South Carolina University. Among other legislation was an act creating a commission on claims. A South Carolina Immigration Association was incorporated. An inspector of the phosphate industries of the State was appointed. Various bills incorporating manufactories were passed. This legislation was indicative of the spirit of the State in its work of rapid reorganization.

**453. Early History of Schools.** It may be well to give here a short account of education in South Carolina. When

the first settlers came to Charles Town in 1670, their entire attention was given to the building of homes, protection from the Indians, and the struggle for food. Schools were a manifest impossibility. As early as 1710, however, we find an act passed to establish a free school in Charles Town. Generous citizens donated sums to the educational fund, and soon schools were established in the various parishes. As the province became wealthier and more prosperous, greater efforts were made in the interests of education and numerous charitable societies undertook educational work for the poor. All this effort in education, it must be understood, was expressly for the poor. No one went to a free school unless too poor to receive an education otherwise. The families of the well-to-do had tutors for their children, and as soon as their sons arrived at the proper age many of them were sent to England for higher education.

After the Revolution, the province of South Carolina became the State of South Carolina and State pride militated against the sending of the sons of the State to England. Hence, an effort was made to establish higher institutions of learning. In 1790, the College of Charleston was opened and in 1801 the South Carolina College at Columbia was established. A few years later—1817—the first college for women was founded near Columbia at Barhamville and called South Carolina Female Collegiate Institute. The Medical College of South Carolina in Charleston was started in 1823. In 1839, Erskine College was founded at Due West. In 1842, The South Carolina Military Academy was established in Charleston. In 1845, Limestone—another college for women—and in 1849, at Cedar Springs, the South Carolina School for the Deaf and Blind, were established, the former in what is now Cherokee County and the latter in Spartanburg County.

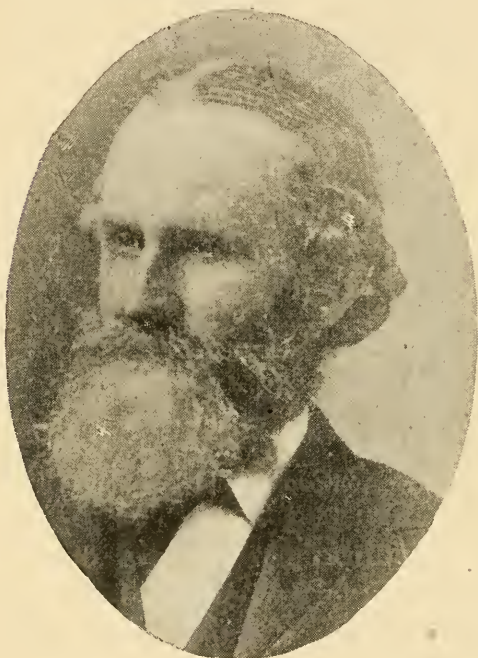
During the ten years preceding the War Between the States there was a general advance along educational lines. Furman College at Greenville, Wofford College at Spartanburg, Newberry College, Greenville Female College, Columbia Female College, and Due West Female College, were established in this period. There was also a wonderful growth of private schools and academies. These private schools, however, retarded the advancement of the free schools. The legislature made increasingly large appropriations for the free schools and in 1860 the attendance at them was 18,915. The free school system, despite active legislative efforts, was not a great success then. The white population was scattered. The wealthy landowners lived secluded lives on their large plantations and would not patronize the public schools. The free schools were rather regarded as pauper institutions and the poor felt that a stigma rested upon them for attending.

**454. Effects of War Upon Education.** In 1860, South Carolina ranked fifth in the list of States in the amount of college endowments. As the war progressed one by one the colleges, academies, private schools, and free schools suspended. The doors of the Citadel closed and of the 226 Citadel graduates living at the beginning of the war 200 were officers in the Confederate army.

Despite the crushing blow of defeat in 1865, the State began in 1866 to rehabilitate its educational system. South Carolina College was reopened as the South Carolina University. Its buildings which had been converted into hospitals were restored. Academies and private schools were opened and the free schools reorganized for work. In 1868, however, these efforts were stopped. The Radicals took control of the State. One of the prominent features of their Constitution of 1868, it will be remembered, was an elaborate system of free schools for rich and poor alike



and for whites and negroes. The schools were a dismal failure, because of the corrupt nature of the Republican administration. Great sums were appropriated for the schools, which through brazen fraud went into the pockets of Radical officials. The teachers' salaries were not paid, and before the end of Radical rule a majority of the schools were forced to close.



Thomas B. Jeter, Governor of South Carolina.

The youths of the State were debarred from the University, because the Republicans opened its doors to negroes and employed negro professors. By the end of 1876, the free school system of South Carolina under Radical mismanagement was a recognized failure and farce.

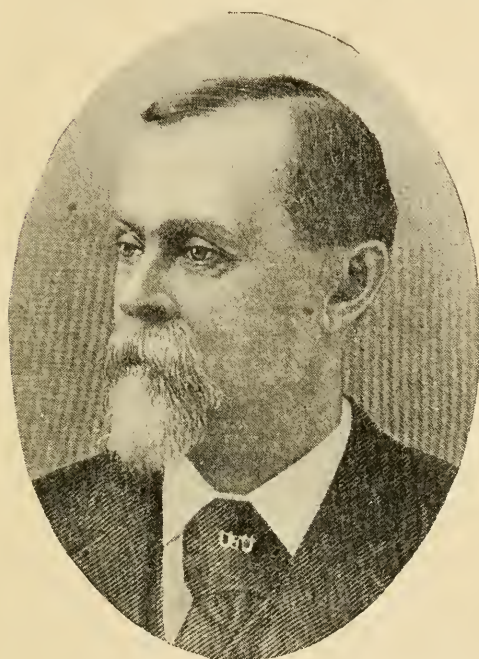
**455. Reorganization of School System After 1876.** The free school system created by the Radical Constitution

of 1868 was the real beginning of our present school system. The system provides for a State Superintendent of Education and for County Boards of Education. Each county is divided into school districts managed by a local board of trustees. The State Superintendent exercises general supervision.

Disgusted with Radical misrule, the people of the State in 1876 were anxious to wipe out every trace of it, but

Governor Hampton, the idol of the State as its greatest war hero, used all his influence to preserve the free school system. The legislature of 1877 passed the levy for free school support and the system was retained.

Even under Radical control, the people had made an



General Johnson Hagood, a Distinguished Confederate Officer and Governor of South Carolina.

effort to keep up the schools. The Confederate Home and School in Charleston for the education of the daughters of Confederate veterans had been established in 1867, through the efforts of Mrs. M. A. Snowden, a public-spirited woman of Charleston, and in 1872, during the administration of the "robber governor," Williamston Female College was started at Williamston. Its name was changed to Lander College when it moved to Greenwood in 1904. In

1880, Clinton College was opened. It became the Presbyterian College of South Carolina in 1893.

After Reconstruction, there was for a long time a strong prejudice against the free schools and the private schools flourished, but gradually the feeling died away and rich and poor alike attended the public schools.

**456. Progress.** In 1878 Governor Hampton was re-elected governor. Soon afterward he was elected to the United States Senate and resigned as governor in February,

1879. Lieutenant Governor W. D. Simpson succeeded him. Governor Simpson in his message to the General Assembly said that the people were beginning to diversify crops, and more small grain, especially oats and wheat, was being planted. There had been greater attention to grasses and cattle, and the stock law had worked well. The new governor congratulated the State upon the reduction of expenses and upon the great development of State industries, including the building of railroads, the successful operation of factories, reclamation of land in the lower portion of the State, the deepening of rivers, the draining of swamps, and, lastly, upon the extension of education and upon the fair and impartial administration of laws.

**457. Four Years of Development.** In four years of Democratic government the State had made remarkable strides. The government had been organized upon a substantial and economic basis, the schools were efficiently conducted, and the condition of the Penitentiary and of the Insane Asylum was improved. There was general improvement in agricultural pursuits. A Department of Agriculture had been created to inspect the phosphate industries of the State and to regulate sales of commercial fertilizers. Attention was given to public roads and many new highways were opened. New towns were incorporated and new industries begun. An era of prosperity was dawning in South Carolina after the dark period of the war and Reconstruction.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

### REBUILDING THE STATE.

**458. School Development.** Upon the resignation of Governor W. D. Simpson to take the office of Chief Justice of the State Supreme Court, Lieutenant Governor Thomas B. Jeter of Union succeeded to the gubernatorial chair for the unexpired term. In his message to the General Assembly, Governor Jeter spoke of the general betterment of conditions within the State. He stated that the credit of the State was improving, the railroads developing and that great strides were being made along educational lines.

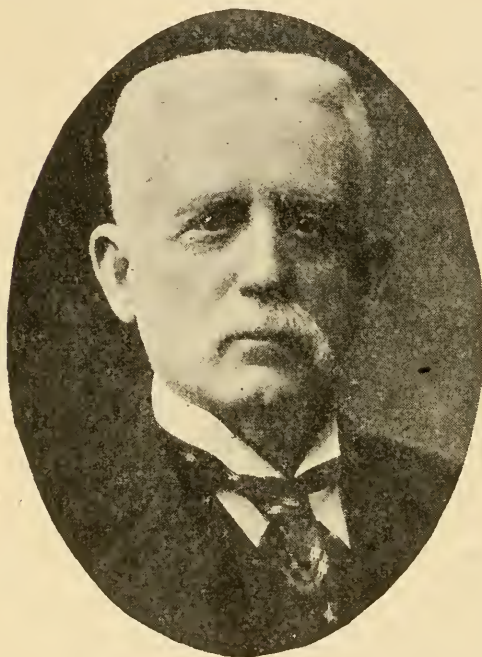
**459. Hagood's Inauguration.** In the summer of 1880, General Johnson Hagood, whom we remember as fighting bravely during the War Between the Sections, was elected governor of South Carolina. Governor Hagood had efficiently filled the office of comptroller-general and was in a position to speak authoritatively of the financial condition of the State. In his message to the General Assembly, he stated that the expenses of the government had been reduced to one-fourth of what they were under Republican rule. There were now no deficiencies and all obligations had been met. Many factories and railroads had been incorporated.

At this time the royalty from the phosphate mines amounted to \$121,541 a year, and this with a small general tax was sufficient to meet the expenses of the government. The Penitentiary, because of the new system of working the convicts, was not only self-sustaining, but had money in its treasury. Two large summer schools for the benefit of teachers had been established in the summer of 1880—one for the whites and one for the negroes.

**460. General Development.** We find a reminder now and then among the general prosperity of the tragedies of the



war. In the session of the legislature of 1881 an act was passed to provide artificial limbs for all soldiers of the State who had lost legs or arms in military service in 1861-65. In 1881, the Penitentiary paid into the State treasury \$40,000 and the phosphate royalty amounted to \$138,254. Con-



Governor Hugh S. Thompson.

victs from the Penitentiary had been leased to phosphate mines, railroads, and farms. Within the prison, some had been employed in making hosiery and others had been occupied in digging the Columbia Canal. The condition of the Penitentiary contrasted favorably with conditions in 1868-1876.

**461. Agricultural and Industrial Development.** The farmers of the State, recovering from the effects of the

war, were producing larger crops. In 1880, 522,548 bales of cotton were raised in South Carolina against 353,412 bales in 1860, an increase of 169,136 bales.

In manufacturing, there was also marked increase in South Carolina between 1860 and 1880. In the latter year the amount of capital invested in manufactories had risen to \$11,205,892 from \$6,931,756 in 1860.

The Department of Agriculture showed in 1882 a tremendous development in the phosphate industry. In 1870,

1,987 tons had been mined; in 1876, 132,625 tons; in 1882, 140,772; and the next year, 1883, there was an astounding increase to 355,333 tons. On every ton mined from public lands and waters a royalty was paid to the State. During this period, the granite quarries of South Carolina were developed and



Administration Building at Clemson College.

also the fisheries of the State. There was also quite an increase of interest in mining.

These statistics serve to show that South Carolinians were rapidly becoming alive to the possibilities of their native State. Before the war the one absorbing interest was cotton. Cotton still was the staple crop, but there was diversification of crops, and an encouraging interest displayed in manufactures.

**462. Governor Thompson's Administration.** In the autumn of 1882, Hugh S. Thompson, former State Superintendent of Education, was elected governor, and inaugurated

in December, 1882. In Governor Thompson's inaugural address he urged that the tax system of the State be revised, as much property had never been returned, and that consequently the taxes were higher than they should be. In 1884, Governor Thompson was re-elected to the gubernatorial chair.

**463. Close of 1886.** In July, 1886, Governor Thompson resigned, having been appointed Assistant Secretary of the Treasury of the United States. Lieutenant Governor John C. Sheppard of Edgefield succeeded to the office.

In August, 1886, a terrible earthquake occurred, the center of which was near Charleston. Between sixty and eighty lives were lost. The property damage amounted to \$6,000,000. The sympathy of the whole nation was aroused and help poured in from all sides.

The close of the year 1886, marked ten years since the end of the Reconstruction period. A study of the events of these ten years show the remarkable strides made by the State in every direction. Governor Sheppard, during his administration, urged the establishment of an agricultural college for the purpose of correcting unprofitable methods of farming.

## CHAPTER XXXV.

### DEVELOPMENT: POLITICAL AND AGRICULTURAL.

**464. The Farmers' Movement.** In 1886, John Peter Richardson, son of the John Peter Richardson, who was governor of South Carolina from 1840-1842, was elected to the gubernatorial chair. In Governor Richardson's administration political and economic unrest throughout the State crystallized into a movement of far-reaching effects.

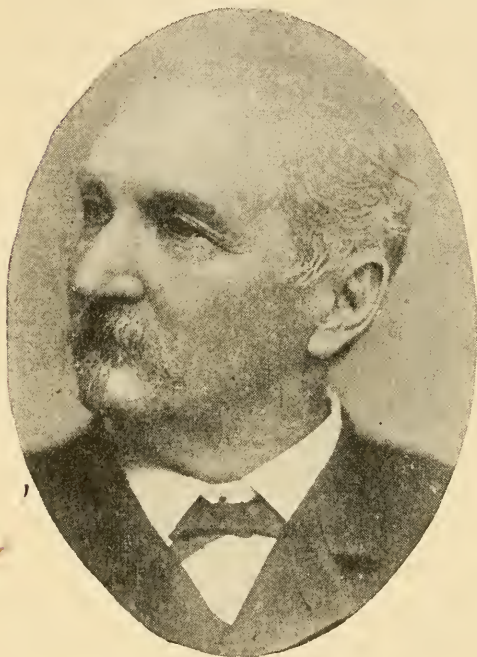
During the decade 1870-1880, cotton had brought from 16 to 18 cents a pound. South Carolinians, who had never been trained to economy, began to feel pinched after this period of high-priced cotton, when the price of the staple dropped first to about 10 cents a pound, and then steadily declined until it hardly paid the cost of production. There developed during this period of low-priced cotton discontent among the farmers. There had for some time been an agitation for an agricultural college and for a convention to form a new Constitution to take the place of the Radical Constitution of 1868. There was much talk of a farmers' movement and meetings were held at which there finally developed what was known as the "Farmers' Movement." At the outset, this movement was not of a political character. Merchants, lawyers, and other professional men were interested as well as the farmers in the welfare of the chief industry of the State—agriculture.

**465. Governor Richardson's Administration.** In May, 1886, the first meeting of the Farmers' Association was held, the leading spirit of which was Captain Benjamin R. Tillman of Edgefield. The Association demanded a separate farmers' college. South Carolina College had been reopened in 1886 as the South Carolina University, with a college of agriculture and mechanics as a division of it.



In 1886, the Winthrop Training School for girls had been established by a private fund. The legislature gave one free scholarship to Winthrop from each county. This was the first money of the State appropriated for the higher education of women.

In 1888, Governor Richardson was re-elected. Much talk occurred during the campaign of the mismanagement of the State government, of extravagance and economy. The farmers of the State were rapidly arraying themselves against the administration. During this year Thomas G. Clemson made a bequest to the State of some property, which included the old home of John C. Calhoun. The bequest was for the purpose of founding a farmers' college for boys. The Clemson gift was accepted and in 1889 an act was passed to establish an agricultural college on the property.



John Peter Richardson, Governor of  
South Carolina.

In his first message to the General Assembly in 1890, Governor Richardson made a report of the condition of the schools of the State. There had been an increase since 1886 of 288 schools, an increase of 17,294 in the enrollment, and 297 schoolhouses had been built. Many towns had erected costly school buildings. Clemson, the new agricultural college, named after Thomas G. Clemson, was in

process of construction. Governor Richardson urged some better provision for the education of the women of the State, and suggested that Winthrop Training School be taken over by the State and enlarged for that purpose. In 1889, Converse College was established at Spartanburg, for the higher education of women, by D. E. Converse, a wealthy cotton manufacturer.

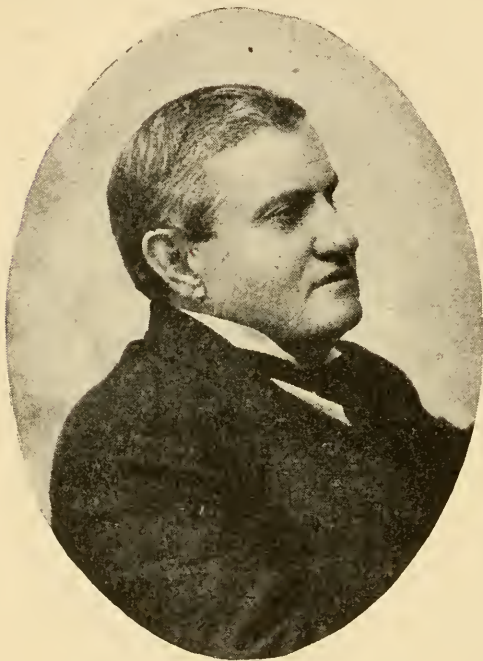
**466. Tillman Becomes Governor.** In 1890, Richardson was succeeded as governor by Captain Benjamin R. Tillman, the leading spirit of the "Farmers' Movement." In his inaugural address, Governor Tillman declared that he came as a reformer. He urged the calling of a Constitutional Convention and recommended the removal of the college of agriculture and mechanics of the South Carolina University to Clemson. Governor Tillman strongly urged the establishment of an industrial college for women.

In his message, Governor Tillman stated the need for a reform of the taxing system, and declared that the phosphate lands, which were of great value, were returned only as agricultural lands. Governor Tillman urged that a survey be made of the phosphate territory with a view to imposing the proper assessment.

The legislature passed an act creating a Phosphate Commission, and an act to reorganize the State University, taking away from it the agricultural and mechanical college and giving it to Clemson College. A commission was appointed to inquire into the establishment of an industrial school for women.

**467. Establishment of the Dispensary.** Among other sources of unrest, at this time in South Carolina, was the liquor question. At this period there were between seven and eight hundred barrooms in the State. These barrooms were paying licenses to the towns. There was a large prohibition party within the State who demanded a prohibition

law. In 1892, an election was held to ascertain the sentiment of the people on the question of prohibition. A majority of voters favored it, but it was found that so many had not voted that this majority was really a minority of the white vote of the State. When the legislature met in



Benjamin R. Tillman, Governor of South Carolina and United States Senator.

December 1892, Governor Tillman said that instead of passing a prohibition law the legislature might better carry out the will of the people by establishing a State Dispensary to control the liquor traffic. All of the legal whiskey traffic would then be turned into one channel. At Columbia, he proposed to locate the central distributing depot. Dispensaries were to be established in the counties, which would be supplied by the central Dispensary.

Governor Tillman recommended this as the best plan of controlling the sale of liquor. His suggestion was adopted by the General Assembly, and the Dispensary established. Through the insistence of State Senator W. D. Evans, Marlboro County, which had had prohibition for over thirty years, was exempted from the operation of the law.

**468. Clemson Opened—Winthrop Established.** The work of construction being sufficiently completed, Clemson College

was opened in July, 1892, with over 400 boys in attendance. The legislative commission, having reported favorably upon the industrial college for women, the South Carolina Industrial and Winthrop Normal College was located at Rock Hill, under the terms of an act passed by the General Assembly.

**469. The "Darlington War."** The law which provided for the establishment of the State Dispensary made provision for the appointment of a force of constables. The duty of this force was to detect any illegal sale of liquor. The constables were armed and the act gave them the power of searching without warrant private houses where liquors were suspected of being concealed for unlawful purposes. There was great opposition in the State to this feature of the law, which resulted in violence in different portions of the State. The most serious trouble resulting from the search warrant law occurred in Darlington in March, 1894. Two citizens were killed and two wounded. The search without warrant feature of the dispensary law was finally modified.

**470. The Storm of 1893.** In August, 1893, a storm raged over the whole State, inflicting immense damage. The most damage was done on the coast. A thousand lives were lost. The crops were ruined and houses blown down. Governor Tillman recommended to the legislature that aid be given the devastated region.

**471. General Business Depression.** In 1894, John Gary Evans was elected governor of South Carolina to succeed Governor Tillman, who was elected to the United States Senate. The price of cotton was low, and this always meant the depression of business. Also the period of political unrest was not over. There was a growing demand for a Constitutional Convention. There were protests throughout the State against the system of hiring out convicts to private individuals and corporations. Governor Evans urged that



the convicts be put to work upon the public roads of the State.

**472. Constitution of 1895.** The legislature, in the session of 1894, called for an election of delegates to form a Constitutional Convention. The election was held and the convention met in Columbia in September, 1895. There were reforms needed in many directions, but the first object of the convention was to redraft the election laws so as to give the white people protection against an overwhelming, but illiterate, negro majority. The convention opened, committees were appointed, and a Constitution framed. The last Constitution, the one of 1868, had been the work chiefly of aliens and negroes without character. The Constitution framed in 1895 is the one under which we live today.

**473. Ellerbe's Administration.** In 1896, W. H. Ellerbe, the great-great-grandson of Captain Thomas Ellerbe, who served with Marion's brigade in the Revolution, was elected governor of South Carolina. At this time the State was still in its slough of business depression. The low price of cotton caused a great inactivity in mercantile and industrial lines. Taxes were a burden. In his message to the General Assembly in 1898, Governor Ellerbe called upon the law-makers to practice the strictest economy.

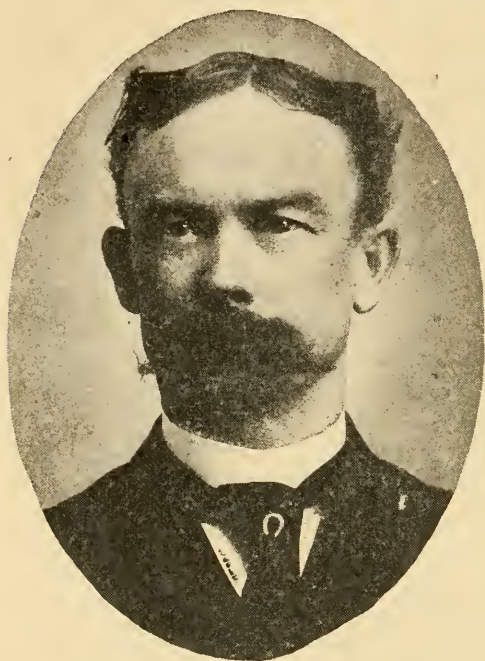
The problem of the sale of liquor still remained unsolved and this was a constant source of irritation and trouble to the people of the State. The State Dispensary law was continually being violated by the illicit sale of liquor. The sentiment of the people in favor of the Dispensary system was not strong enough to admit the enforcement of its law.

**474. The Spanish-American War.** South Carolina was aroused from her depression by affairs of national interest. The island of Cuba, under the dominion of Spain, had for many years been in a state of revolt against the mother

country. There were large American interests in the island, which of course were suffering great injury from the unsettled affairs. Cuba was in a distressing condition. The farms had been destroyed and the people were on the verge of starvation. The tyranny and cruelty of the Spaniards toward the Cubans aroused the indignation of Americans. Spain was not able to subdue the island and force its population to loyalty, and neither would she relinquish control. In February, 1898, the president of the United States sent the battleship *Maine* to Cuban waters to protect our interests. On the night of February 15th, the *Maine* was blown up in Havana harbor and 226 of her crew perished. The people of the United States were roused to a fever heat of wrath. On the 25th of April war against Spain was declared. The president issued a call for 125,000 volunteers. South Carolina responded to the call and gave her full quota. The demand upon her was for one regiment of infantry, one battalion of infantry, and one battery of heavy artillery.

**475. South Carolina in the War.** Upon the call for volunteers, the Darlington Guards, the Sumter Light Infantry, the Edisto Rifles, and the Manning Guards formed what was known as the Independent Battalion, with Lieutenant Colonel Henry T. Thompson in command. This was the first organization in the State to be mustered into service for war with Spain. A heavy battery was formed and sent to Sullivan's Island. The First Regiment, South Carolina Volunteer Infantry, under Colonel Joseph K. Alston of Columbia, was organized and sent to a camp in Tennessee and then to Florida. The Second South Carolina regiment was organized under Colonel Willie Jones of Columbia. Colonel Alston died before the war ended and was succeeded in command of the First Regiment by Lieutenant Colonel James H. Tillman.

**476. War Ends Quickly.** The only South Carolina organization which reached Cuba was the Second S. C. V. I., under Colonel Willie Jones, which was sent first to Savannah and from thence to Cuba on the transport Roumanian. As this regiment marched through the streets of Havana it



Governor Miles B. McSweeney.

was cheered by the Cubans, who waved United States and Cuban flags. The South Carolina troops encamped about five miles from Havana and participated in no engagements. Colonel Jones, through his careful attention to camp sanitation and his kindly consideration of his men, lost only three of his force by sickness, though the death rate from illness was very high in many commands.

The war was short and consisted of several engagements in Cuba, the sinking of the small Spanish fleet off Santiago, and the important naval battle of Manila Bay, in the Philippine Islands, where the natives were trying to throw off the heavy yoke of Spain. The war ended in success for American arms.

Among those South Carolinians who saw service was Lieutenant Victor Blue of the navy, who distinguished himself by a brilliant reconnaissance at Santiago.

**477. Revival of Prosperity.** Almost immediately after the war with Spain, the price of cotton began to rise and a revival of industry was begun in South Carolina. Governor Ellerbe died in office in 1899, and Miles B. McSweeney of Hampton, lieutenant governor, became governor of the State. Governor McSweeney, in his message to the General Assembly, told of the great activity in railroad building, 237 miles having just been completed in the State. There was also a marked activity in the cotton seed oil and lumber industries. At this time, South Carolina was leading all the Southern States in cotton manufacturing and stood second only to Massachusetts in its number of spindles. In 1899, eleven new cotton mills were organized and sixteen old mills enlarged.

In 1900, Governor McSweeney was elected to succeed himself.

With proper reverence for her great men, South Carolina, with the return of prosperity, began to talk of appropriating a sum to mark the position of South Carolina troops at the battle of Chickamauga. The legislature of 1901 appropriated \$10,000 for this purpose. The monument erected to those who died at Chickamauga was made of South Carolina granite, and placed upon the spot which was held by the men of Kershaw's Brigade.

**478. Development of the Staple Crop.** Cotton has for a long time been the staple crop of South Carolina. Before and during the Revolution, the cultivation of cotton was so popular that even though the lint had to be separated from the seed by hand, the families of planters and their slaves were clothed in homespuns made in the State. Before the invention of the cotton gin, a large number of the big plantations had their private manufactories. The invention of the cotton gin in 1792 gave a wonderful impetus to the cotton industry. Soon after, cotton planting became the leading in-



dustry in nearly every county in the State. In 1801, the General Assembly appropriated \$50,000 for the purchase of the patent rights for the Whitney gin. From this time the chief interest of South Carolina lay in the cultivation of cotton.

In 1880, the crop amounted to 522,548 bales. In 1902, it rose to 962,017 bales. These statistics serve to show the tremendous advance in what is still the chief crop of the State. The value of the 1915 crop was estimated at \$81,960,000.

**479. Diversification of Crops.** Next to cotton, corn has for a long time been the staple crop of South Carolina. When the first colony settled on the Ashley in 1670, they tried to raise European grains, but with little success, and soon they resorted to the cultivation of Indian corn. Each year corn was planted more extensively, until in 1880 we find a yield of 11,767,099 bushels. This increased in 1900 to 17,429,610 bushels and in 1916 rose to 32,008,000 bushels. Although cotton has remained the chief crop each year, there has been greater diversification in planting. We find a great increase in the wheat crop. In 1880, the yield was 962,358 bushels, while in 1916 it was 2,226,000 bushels.

**480. Rice Planting.** It will be recollected that rice was almost the first staple crop of South Carolina. It continued to be one of the chief crops of the State until the time of the War Between the Sections, when Louisiana and Texas began the cultivation of this cereal on a large scale and at a much less cost of production. This competition injured the industry in this State to such an extent that it never recovered and has practically been suspended.

**481. Trucking Industry.** At first the trucking industry was confined practically to the counties of Charleston, Colleton, Beaufort, Horry, and Berkeley. When it is known that in 1907 the acreage in the Charleston section alone was

estimated at 24,200 it will be realized what a remarkable business has developed. Truck growing for market began in 1868, on Yonge's Island. Cabbage and Irish potatoes were first tried and gradually other vegetables. In 1899, a colony of people from the Middle West settled in Horry County and began trucking. Today the growing of strawberries, Irish potatoes, and other truck has developed into a splendid industry there.

**482. Tea and Tobacco.** The Pinehurst tea garden at Summerville, South Carolina, is the only producing commercial tea garden in America. Over a hundred years ago tea plants were introduced into America and were planted at Middleton Place, on the Ashley River near Charleston. The planting is credited to the French botanist Michaux. At various times the United States made attempts at the cultivation of the tea plant. In 1887, the Pinehurst tea garden was started by Dr. Charles U. Shepard.

Tobacco was here when South Carolina was discovered by Europeans, and has nearly always been an important industry of the State. This has been especially true in recent years, as newspaper enterprise gave the industry a new impetus early in the nineties. The principal tobacco growing counties today are Florence, Dillon, Darlington, Marion, Williamsburg, Sumter, Horry, and Clarendon. Each of these counties sells yearly tobacco by the million pounds.

**483. Horticulture in South Carolina.** From mountains to seaboard, South Carolina is well adapted for fruit growing. The Sand Hill belt produces delightful peaches, and the Piedmont belt fruits of all kinds. In the Coastal Region, oranges are brought to perfection. The wild grapes which excited the admiration of the first French colonists, under Ribault in 1562, still abound. It is said that the first olives in America were grown in South Carolina, and that at the time of the Revolution there was a ten-acre olive grove on

the south shore of the Port Royal entrance. In Beaufort today are found olive and camphor trees and oranges are raised for market on the islands. There are beautiful pecan groves in several counties.

**484. Exposition Displays Resources of State.** In 1901, with the opening of the new century, the South Carolina and West Indian Exposition was held in Charleston. This exposition served as an illustration to the people of the State of its wonderful resources and remarkable development since the War Between the Sections. The exposition was a concrete presentment of what South Carolina had done, and what she was at that time.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

### DEVELOPMENT: SOCIAL AND INDUSTRIAL.

**485. Heyward's Administration.** In 1902, Duncan Clinch Heyward of Colleton was elected governor of South Carolina, which office he held for two terms. Governor Heyward in his message to the General Assembly in 1904 pointed out that South Carolina was going forward along all lines—agricultural and commercial and industrial. Governor Heyward directed attention to the decline in the phosphate industry. The State royalty in 1893 had been \$249,338.02, but in 1903 it had fallen to \$15,815.22, as the phosphate could be mined more profitably in Florida.

The State Dispensary system at this time was a source of great dissatisfaction. There were grave charges of mismanagement. Confidence in the system began to wane. This was due largely to abuses connected with its operation. The enforcement of prohibition in the various counties which had voted out whiskey presented a serious problem.

**486. Development of Cotton Manufacturing.** The cotton manufacturing industry continued to grow almost like magic. In 1860, the products of the cotton mills of the State were of comparatively little value. A large proportion of the total value of the manufactured products of South Carolina in 1905 came from the cotton mills.

There were cotton mills in the State owned by private individuals as early as 1790. Until the close of the War Between the Sections the cotton mills were operated largely by slave labor. The War and Reconstruction, of course, retarded the industry, but it soon recuperated and in 1880 there were 18 cotton mills in the State with 95,938 spindles.

In 1909, the number of cotton mills in the State had reached 147. The value of the manufactured products amounted to



\$65,930,000. The cotton mill industry is by far the most important manufacturing industry in the State. A great variety of cotton goods are produced in these mills.

**487. Manufactories in General.** After cotton manufactures, lumber and timber products and planing mill products rank highest in the State's manufacturing industries. Next comes fertilizer manufacturing, then the cotton seed oil industry, which has made great strides. In the State are hosiery mills, press cloth works, bleachery and dyeing works, and many other special manufactories.



Governor Duncan C. Heyward

Mill life is an entirely new phase of life in South Carolina, as until after the War Between the Sections the State

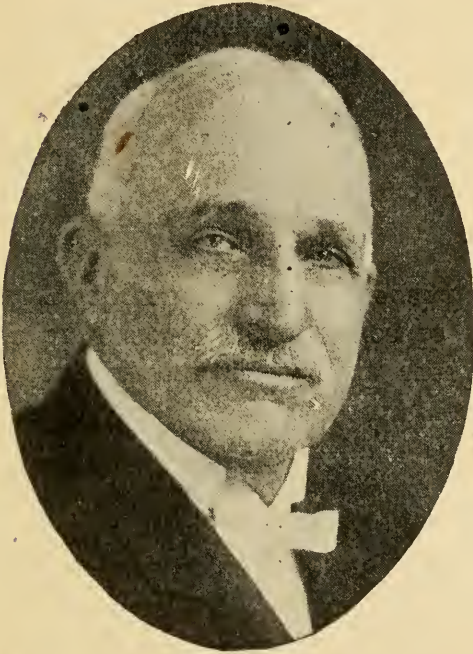
was strictly an agricultural district.

**488. Governor Ansel's Administration.** Martin F. Ansel of Greenville succeeded Heyward in the gubernatorial chair in 1907. The Audubon Society for the protection of birds was chartered by the General Assembly in 1907. In 1908, the General Assembly provided for an old soldiers' home to care for Confederate veterans. It was established at Columbia.

**489. Dispensary System Uprooted.** After long dissatisfaction in regard to the State Dispensary system and the prosecution in the courts of some of its officials, it was changed to a local option Dispensary system, under which

the citizens in each county were privileged to decide by vote whether or not they desired a County Dispensary. In 1909, there were 21 counties with Dispensaries and 21 in which the sale of liquor was forbidden. In 1909, elections were held in the 21 Dispensary counties and 15 of the 21 voted out the Dispensary.

In 1914, the qualified electors of the State voted for State-wide prohibition. In 1916, the law went into effect prohibiting the receipt of more than one gallon of whiskey a month by the same person. The General Assembly of 1917 still further restricted the shipment of liquor into the State by passing a law to the effect that not more than one quart of liquor could be shipped to one person in a month, and then only for certain specified purposes. Prohibition has



Governor Martin F. Ansel.

played a large part in politics in South Carolina in recent years.

**490. Penal Development.** In 1900, a reformatory for youthful male criminals was established in connection with the State Penitentiary. In 1906, the South Carolina Industrial School at Florence, a State reformatory for white boys, was founded. It is not connected with the Penitentiary. The negro boys convicted of crime were left at the

reformatory first established, and under the control of the Board of Directors of the Penitentiary. The chain-gang system, under which convicts are worked on public roads under the control of the counties or municipalities, had its beginning in 1885. The system, however, has been greatly expanded since then, notably by an act of 1911, providing that counties might work all persons convicted of crime in their courts on the chain-gangs.

**491. Commerce.** South Carolina is steadily and rapidly developing her facilities for commerce. This State, it will be remembered, was the first in the United States to operate a railroad by steam power. In 1833, there were 136 miles of railroad in the State. At the time of the War Between the Sections there were nearly a thousand miles in operation. In 1907, the official mileage reached a total of 3,207.71 miles. There is now scarcely a section of South Carolina which is without railroad facilities. The advent of the electric railway is of importance. About 1870, street cars drawn by horses were introduced into Charleston. The electric street railway, the beginning of which was about 1896, was a development of the old horse car railway. Beginning with street railway cars in 1896 interurban electric lines were constructed. At the present time there are electric lines running from Augusta to Aiken, Anderson to Belton, Greenville to Spartanburg, and Greenville to Greenwood.

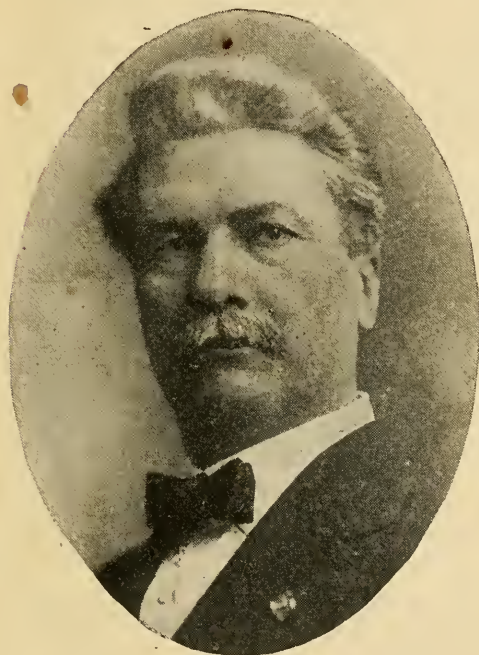
The coastwise shipping service is worthy of mention. A steamship company maintains a regular freight and passenger service between Charleston and New York, also a freight service between Georgetown and New York. Charleston is growing in importance as a port, having greatly improved its harbor and developed coaling facilities.

It is regrettable that the ports of South Carolina have as yet no regular Trans-Atlantic service. Charleston has a superb harbor, also Port Royal, and there is no reason why



the State should not have the advantage of direct trade with European and South American countries.

**492. Governor Blease's Administration.** In the summer of 1910, Coleman L. Blease of Newberry was elected governor of South Carolina to succeed Governor Ansel. Governor Blease in his message to the General Assembly pointed out that



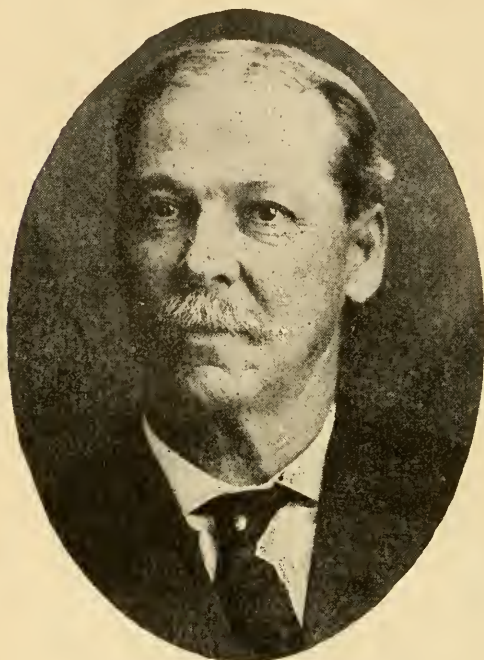
Governor Coleman L. Blease.

water power developments were progressing, new electric interurban lines were in process of construction, many modern steel frame buildings were being erected, there was progress in agriculture, the mills, and in all lines. In 1911, electrocution was substituted for hanging. In 1912, Governor Blease was re-elected. In 1913, the hosiery mill at the Penitentiary was abolished by act of the General Assembly, be-

cause of the extreme danger of contracting tuberculosis within its walls. This step was recommended both by Governor Blease and the State Board of Health. The governor recommended more money for free school development and urged the building of the State tuberculosis hospital, which has been erected near Columbia. In January, 1915, Governor Blease resigned and Lieutenant Governor Charles A. Smith of Florence County became governor.



Governor Smith held office for only five days, when the office was assumed by Richard I. Manning of Sumter, who had been elected governor in 1914.



Governor Charles A. Smith.

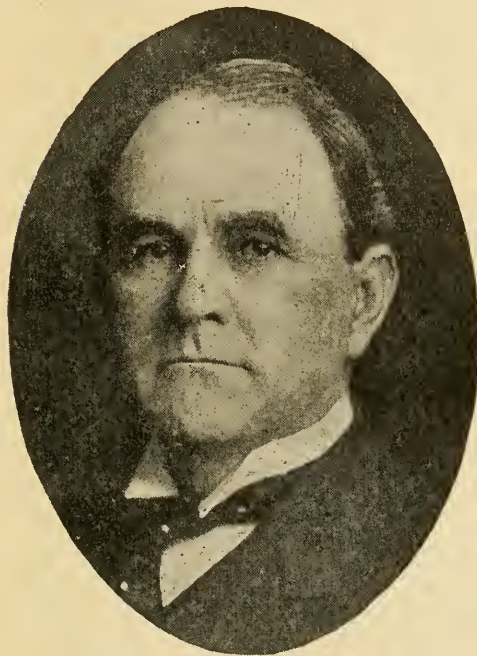
#### **493. Governor Manning's Administration.**

During Governor Manning's administration, and under his leadership, the management of the State Hospital for the Insane was re-organized and notable improvements made in the hospital plant. The State Tax Commission was created and given power to equalize the tax system. The State Board of Charities and Corrections was established. This Board has visitorial and advisory

powers over penal and charitable institutions in South Carolina. The State Tuberculosis Hospital was opened under the direction of the State Board of Health. Governor Manning was re-elected governor in 1916. His administration has been marked by reforms and progress along many social lines.

In the summer of 1916, the two regiments and the troop of cavalry of the National Guard of South Carolina were among the troops sent to guard the Mexican border against bandit raids. After being on duty near El Paso, Texas, for several months, these troops were withdrawn as conditions in Mexico were more settled.

**494. The Great War.** In 1917, the State was confronted with another crisis—the World War. Each period in the history of South Carolina has produced its great men. No doubt new heroes will arise. “Hitherto, South Carolina



Governor Richard I. Manning.

has always been strong in her strong men! It is with a mournful pride that we refer to the great names, in recent periods, which she has possessed and lost” . . . “names of men equal to all the exigencies of a people, and capable of conferring fame upon any annals. They are gone! And South Carolina stands upon the threshold of a new era, and, we trust in God, a yet superior progress! Let us hope

that each season shall produce its proper men. May that Providence that has great states and cities in its keeping crown her with increase, and raise her to heights, in the future, commensurate with the noble elevations of the past; to all virtuous achievements; to all grandeur, consistent with what is good, and noble, and pure, and true, and wise and honorable!”

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

### THE WORLD WAR.

**495. Germany's Desire for World Conquest.** The World War began in Europe in August, 1914. It came seemingly out of a clear sky. But by looking backward we can easily find its cause. For more than forty years Germany had been openly preparing for war. Under the iron rule of its Kaiser, William II, the children in the schools had been taught to worship the German government, which is a government based on military power, a government which believes that might makes right. The Kaiser's government built up the best trained army on the globe for the purpose of conquering the world and bringing all the other nations under his rule. In 1914, when Germany was in perfect readiness for carrying out its plan of world conquest, none of the other nations of Europe were prepared for war. France and England were having troubles at home and the governments of both these countries were in the hands of men who opposed war and who were thus negligent about making any preparations for war. Russia also was in no condition to fight in 1914. The time was so favorable then for the Kaiser's plan that Germany eagerly awaited some excuse to declare war.

**496. Germany's Excuse.** An excuse to bring on a great war was offered in July, 1914, when the heir to the throne of Austria-Hungary, the Archduke Ferdinand, and his wife while traveling in Sarajevo, Bosnia, were murdered by a half-crazed Serbian boy. Austria-Hungary, urged on by her ally, Germany, which saw in this incident an opportunity to bring on war, pretended to think that the murder was done for political reasons and that the Serbian government was responsible for it. In holding Serbia responsible for the murder Austria made outrageous demands upon

this little country, knowing that no self-respecting nation could comply with some of them. Serbia, being under the protection of Russia, was supported by this country in its refusal to grant some of the demands of Austria. Then, the Kaiser, pretending to believe that Russia was arming to fight Germany, declared war upon Russia. France and Russia were allies and thus the French were drawn into the war. In this way Germany brought about the struggle in which the Kaiser expected to conquer the world.

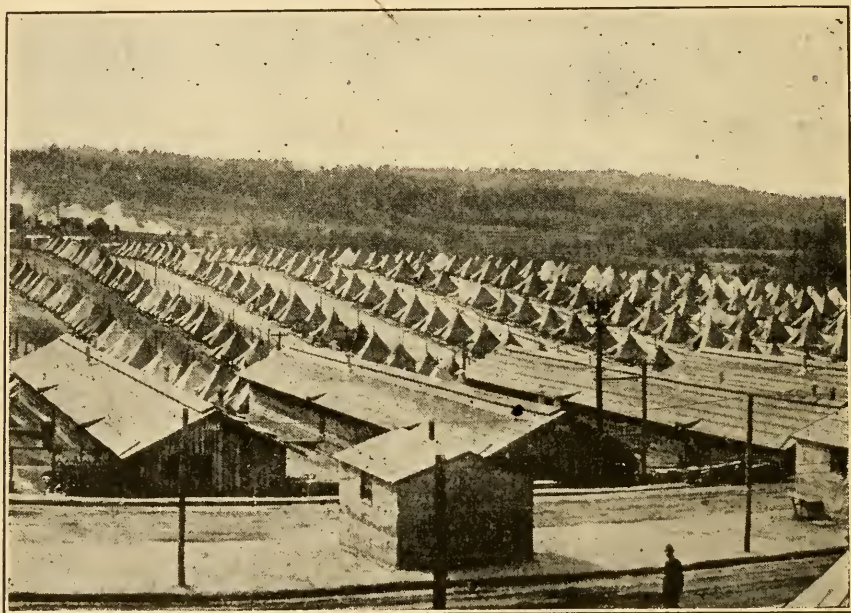
**497. The Despoiling of Belgium.** Germany decided to take Paris with one swift blow and from the great French capital to carry on the plan of world conquest. What Germany considered the easiest route to Paris ran through Belgium, which had not as yet been drawn into the war. It is a well recognized right of neutral nations to forbid an invading army to pass over its soil. Besides, England, France and Germany had all solemnly promised to protect the neutrality of Belgium.

At the beginning of the war Germany demanded of Belgium permission to send an army over its soil. Belgium refused, and Germany, calling its written promise to respect the neutrality of Belgium a "scrap of paper," began the march to Paris. Belgium threw its army in the path of Germany. With the resistance of Belgium began the most barbarous invasion known to the civilized world. All the recognized laws of modern warfare were disregarded by Germany. Innocent Belgium was ruthlessly despoiled, her crops laid waste, her cathedrals destroyed, and her women and children treated by the German soldiers with a cruelty which would have shamed savages. Step by step the Belgian army was driven back and one by one the Germans captured the Belgian forts.

**498. England Enters the War.** The heroic resistance of Belgium gave France valuable time to make preparations



to meet the enemy. But for the gallant fight of Belgium, Paris would surely have been taken. In the meantime, England, aroused by Germany's breach of faith in invading Belgium and realizing the menace to all nations if Germany should be victorious in defeating France, declared war upon Germany. The great countries of Europe were now all at war with Germany and Austria-Hungary.



Copyright Peden.

A View of Part of Camp Sevier at Greenville.

**499. The United States and the War.** It has always been the policy of the United States to keep free from any entangling alliances such as those which had drawn all the great European countries into the World War. We had thought that America, being separated from Europe by the Atlantic Ocean, could keep free from foreign wars. We had no wish to conquer smaller and weaker nations, nor to increase our territory. Thus, when the war commenced in

1914, we looked upon it as a struggle not our own and expressed no definite sympathy with the Allies—France, England, Russia, Belgium and Serbia, nor with the Central Powers—Germany and Austria-Hungary. Later, Rumania and Italy joined the Allies and Turkey and Bulgaria the Central Powers.

When the stories of the brutalities and outrages of German soldiers in the occupied parts of France and Belgium began to reach the United States our people heard them with doubt, but when shortly afterwards proofs of these atrocities arrived all America was shocked. We began to realize what a military nation with the ideals of Germany would do to attain its ends. The military authorities of Germany had deliberately planned the war and were prepared to win it by breach of faith, savagery and any unfair means which might gain their ends. Along with the tales of the devastation of Belgium and part of France came accounts of like horrors in Poland and Serbia, the German soldier carrying destruction wherever he went. The common promptings of humanity aroused our sympathies for these suffering peoples. •

#### **500. The United States in Sympathy With the Allies.**

The people of the United States showed their sympathy for the inhabitants of the devastated parts of Belgium, Serbia, France and Poland by sending them money and ships loaded with food, clothing and other necessities. For two years the struggle continued, the horrors of warfare as waged by the Germans becoming so terrible that our sympathies were drawn more and more to the Allies with each new outrage. We did not believe that the United States would be forced into the war, however. President Woodrow Wilson constantly urged our people to keep a neutral attitude so that at the end of the war this country as the one great neutral nation could act without prejudice as peace-maker for the world.

**501. The German Submarine Campaign.** As the war went on, however, a neutral attitude became more and more impossible. Germany began a barbarous submarine campaign against our ships in which every recognized law of the seas was disregarded. Our ships were sunk without warning by German submarines miles from land where there was little chance of passengers being rescued. Relief ships from America carrying food for the starving Belgians, hospital ships carrying Red Cross nurses and wounded soldiers, and merchant ships flying the American flag and manned by American seamen were torpedoed and sunk without warning by the submarines, frequently with great loss of life. President Wilson made protest after protest to the German government, reminding it of its promises and appealing to it in the name of humanity to discontinue this inhuman use of the submarine, but to no avail.

**502. The United States Declares War Against Germany.** On April 6th, 1917, the United States declared war against Germany. The truth was forced upon us that the freedom of the world was menaced. If the free peoples of Europe were crushed by Germany the people of America were in danger. Already Germany had made war upon us by sinking our ships and murdering our countrymen upon them. With Europe conquered Germany's next step would be to try to crush the United States. A nation with no respect for its written word nor for the common laws of humanity could not be allowed to become powerful enough to wage a successful war against America. In joining the Allies we were fighting for our own safety and for the freedom of mankind.

**503. The First Year of the War. The Selective Draft.** The part played by the United States during the first year after its entry into the World War may be grouped under the following four heads: the creation of an army, the work



of the navy, the raising of money, and the production and saving of food.

Foremost among these was the creation and equipping of an army. Six weeks after war was declared upon Germany President Wilson signed a compulsory military service bill passed by Congress. On June 5th, 1917, all men in the United States between the ages of 21 and 31 years were



A Section of Camp Jackson, the Cantonment Built Near Columbia by the United States Government.

required to register for service in the National Army. On this day 9,586,508 men registered. Sixteen training camps, called cantonments, were established in various parts of the United States to prepare the drafted men for military service. The militia of the country was taken into the National Army. Camps were also provided for those who volunteered for training as officers of the National Army.



While these preparations were being made for the making of a great army from the civil population, a detachment from the regular army was sent to Europe to assist the Allies. In October, 1917, some American troops for the first time were put into the trenches on the French front.

**504. The Military Organizations of South Carolina.** When war began on April 6th, 1917, the armed forces of South Carolina, under the name of the National Guard, consisted of the First and Second Regiments of infantry; Troop A, Cavalry (the Charleston Light Dragoons); Company A, Engineers; a battalion of Coast Artillery consisting of five companies; and a field hospital unit.

After war was declared against Germany the First Regiment, South Carolina Infantry, was mustered into the National Army of the United States, renamed the 118th Infantry National Guard and placed in the 30th Division. The Second Regiment became the 105th Ammunition Train of the 30th Division, a part of it also being placed in other organizations. The Charleston Light Dragoons became headquarters troop for the 30th Division. Two companies of Engineers were recruited in South Carolina and with the old Company A, Engineers, combined into a battalion which was mustered into the Rainbow Division. The field hospital unit was mustered into Federal service and attached to the 30th Division. The battalion of Coast Artillery was also mustered into Federal service. In addition to these organizations an ambulance company was recruited in the State. All of these State forces were drafted into Federal service on August 5th, 1917.

**505. Three Military Camps in South Carolina.** Of the sixteen cantonments provided for the training of the drafted men three were built in South Carolina. One was placed near Columbia and called Camp Jackson, in honor of General Andrew Jackson, a native of South Carolina. The second

camp was located near Greenville and named Camp Sevier, in honor of the Revolutionary soldier who fought so bravely at the battle of King's Mountain. The third camp was at Spartanburg. It was called Camp Wadsworth. These three camps, a larger number than in any other State in

the Union, were placed in South Carolina because of its temperate climate and other natural advantages.

**506. The Work of the Navy.** The United States Navy was prepared to fight at the beginning of the war. Months had to be given to the training of a land force, but at the first call the Navy was in readiness. During the first year of the war the Navy protected our own coasts, convoyed troops and food to our Allies, and worked in co-operation with the



Woodrow Wilson, President of the United States, to Whom Free Men Everywhere Looked for Leadership During the World War.

sea forces of the Allies. The war on the sea, however, has centered chiefly around the efforts to destroy the German submarines. The first fight on the water occurred on April 19th, 1917, twelve days after the United States declared war, between the American steamship Mongolia and a German submarine, in which encounter the Mongolia is said to have sunk the submarine. During the year only two United States troop ships were sunk, the Antilles and the Tuscania the loss of life in both cases being compara-

tively small. The navy bore its part in the war work of the year.

Plans for enlarging the navy yard at Charleston were set on foot during 1918, and the Marine Corps' training station at Port Royal was greatly expanded.

**507. The Liberty Loans.** The expense of carrying on a great war is enormous. The United States consequently asked its people for loans. The loans were made by buying Liberty Bonds and War Savings Stamps. During the first year of the war two Liberty Loans were floated by the Treasury Department. South Carolina largely oversubscribed its allotment in the second of these loans.

**508. The Council of Defense.** The Council of National Defense was created under an act of Congress in August, 1916. It was soon found that to keep in close touch with the different States that State Councils of Defense were necessary. In a very short time State Councils of Defense were organized in every State in the Union. The most important duties of these councils are to direct the war activities of the States, to give the National Council any needed information and to carry on a publicity campaign to keep the people in touch with the progress and aims of the war.

The South Carolina State Council of Defense was organized in June, 1917. South Carolina was one of the first six states in the Union to complete its organization. The Council of Defense of this State soon took high rank.

The organization of the South Carolina Division of the Women's Council of Defense was perfected in July, 1917.

**509. The Conservation of Food.** After being informed that victory in the World War depended largely upon our ability to supply not only ourselves, but our Allies with food, the people of the United States responded enthusiastically to the call of the government during the first year

of the war to save and produce food. The United States Food Administration was established. To this organization the food control act, passed by Congress in August, 1917, gave power which it used during the first year of the war to stabilize the prices of food, to prevent speculation in food, and to secure the voluntary co-operation of the people of the United States in the tremendous campaign to save and produce food. South Carolina in common with all the other States was organized to carry on the work of the United States Food Administration.

**510. The American Red Cross.** The American Red Cross, an organization which serves the soldiers and sailors of our country and their dependents, grew tremendously during the first year after the United States entered the World War. It employed a large body of trained nurses to care for our soldiers who might be wounded on the field of battle. It built hospitals in the rear of the trenches on the battle fronts and organized a great ambulance service to carry the wounded from the battle field to the hospitals. The Red Cross also took upon itself the duty of looking after the families of those of our men who were fighting in Europe or training in the cantonments. South Carolinians aided the Red Cross during the first year of the war by contributions of money and services. Every county in the State had at least one Red Cross chapter. In June, 1917, the first great drive for funds for carrying on the work of the Red Cross was made. South Carolinians contributed the sum of \$420,000, although the allotment of the State was only \$300,000.

**511. The Nation in Arms.** Though the United States rendered great aid to the Allies in the first twelve months after it declared war on Germany, this was entirely overshadowed by what our country was preparing to do in putting soldiers on the battle fronts in Europe, battleships



and merchant ships on the seas and aeroplanes in the air. In fact, our first year in the World War was given mainly to making preparations to do our part in wiping out of existence the government of Kaiser William II.

On April 6th, 1918, President Wilson delivered an address at Baltimore on the occasion of the opening of the third Liberty Loan campaign in which he spoke for the people of the United States when he declared that they were willing to give all that they loved and all that they held dear to redeem the world and make it fit for free men like themselves to live in. Germany, President Wilson asserted, had once more said that "force, and force alone, shall decide whether Justice and peace shall reign in the affairs of men." To this outrageous assertion by Germany, President Wilson declared that there was only one answer possible from the United States and that was: "Force, Force to the utmost, Force without stint or limit, the righteous and triumphant Force which shall make Right the law of the world, and cast every selfish dominion down in the dust."

## INDEX

Albemarle, Duke of, 24.  
 Albert, Captain, 19, 21.  
 Allston, Gov. R. F. W., 257.  
 Anderson, Gen. R. H., 265.  
 Appomattox, 306.  
 Archdale, John, 46.  
 Articles of association, 119.  
 Ashley, Lord, 24, 29.  
 Attakullakulla, 72, 87, 91.

"Back Country", 71, 107, 110.  
 Barnwell, Col. John, 54, 67.  
 Beauguard, General, 266.  
 Bee, Gen. Barnard E., 270.  
 Berkeley, Lord, 24.  
 Berkley, Sir Wm., 24.  
 Blake, Gov. Joseph, 54.  
 Board of Trade, 56, 92.  
 Bonham, Gen. M. L., 367.  
 Bonnett, Steed, 59.  
 Boone, Gov. Thos., 92.  
 Bratton, Colonel, 159.  
 Breach Inlet, 130, 154.  
 Broughton, Thos., 52, 80.  
 Bull, Gen. Stephen, 144.  
 Bull, Wm., 80, 87, 110.  
 Bullman, Rev. John, 114.  
 Butler, Gen. M. C., 280.

Calhoun, John C., 223, 253.  
 Calhoun, Patrick, 89.  
 Campbell, Lord, 116, 131.  
 Cape Lucerne, 19.  
 Capers, Ellison, 277.  
 Cardross, Lord, 39, 43.  
 "Carpet Baggers", 314.  
 Carteret, Sir John, 24.  
 Cassiques, 25.  
 Chambersburg raid, 280.  
 Charleston harbor, 286, 362.  
 Charles Town: founded, 26; moved, 29;  
   growth, 35, 94; hurricane, 47, 82; French  
   attack, 50; fire, 81; life in, 94, 99; "tea  
   party", 114; taken by British, 163; evac-  
   uated by British, 200.  
 Cheraws, 110.  
 Cherokees, 71, 85-91.  
 Cheves, Langdon, 223.  
 Churubusco, 247.  
 Circular Letter, 109.  
 Clarendon, Earl of, 24, 44.  
 Clemson, Thos. G., 348.  
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 129, 150.  
 Colleges, 338-339.  
 Colleton, James, 43.  
 Columbia, 87, 205, 302.  
 Commons House, 67, 123.  
 Confederacy, 262-306.  
 Cornwallis, Lord, 151, 171.

Cotton Growing, 212, 355.  
 Council, 67.  
 Courts, 110.  
 Craven, Gov. Charles, 54, 57.  
 Craven, Earl of, 24.  
 Cuninghame, Robt., 174.

Daniel, Colonel, 48, 57.  
 "Darlington War", 351.  
 Davis, Jefferson, 262.  
 Declaration of Independence, 134.  
 deGraffenreid, Baron, 53.  
 DeKalb, Baron, 155, 164.  
 Dispensary, State, 349, 360.  
 Dissenters, 33.  
 Dog Days, Raid of, 185.  
 Drayton, Wm. Henry, 97, 126.

Electrocution, 363.  
 Episcopal churches, 93.  
 Eutaw Springs, 190.  
 Evans, Gen. N. G., 270.  
 Exposition, Charleston, 353.

"Farmers' Movement", 347.  
 Florida expeditions, 43, 135.  
 Fort: Balfour, 178; Caroline, 23; Charles,  
   19, 23; Charlotte, 119; Johnson, 123;  
   Loudoun, 85, 121; Moultrie, 147; Prince  
   George, 85; on Sullivan's Island, 125,  
   134; Sumter, 266, 288; Watson, 177, 180.  
 "Free States", 252.  
 Friendly Society, 99.  
 Fundamental Constitutions: Adopted, 24;  
   modified, 38; proclaimed, 31; suspended,  
   27; trouble over, 33.

Gadsden, Christopher, 87, 168.  
 Gates, General, 155, 173.  
 Gettysburg, 283.  
 Gibbes, Robert, 52, 54.  
 Glen, James, 81.  
 Godfrey, Col. John, 31.  
 Granby, 176, 182.  
 Greene, General, 173, 190.  
 Gregg, Gen. Maxcy, 265.

Haddrell's Point, 125.  
 Hagood, Gen. Johnson, 270.  
 Hamburg riot, 327.  
 Hammond, Col. Leroy, 183.  
 Hampton, Col. Wade, 185, 192.  
 Hampton, Gen. Wade, 270, 330.  
 Harden, Wm., 178, 189.  
 Hayne, Isaac, 185, 189.  
 Hayne, Robt. Y., 232.  
 Heath, Sir Robt., 24.

Heyward, Thos., Jr., 134.  
 High Hills of Santee, 163.  
 Horse stealing, 101, 107.  
 Howe, Gen. Robt., 140.  
 Huguenot churches, 93.  
 Huguenots, 17, 44.

Indian trade, 35, 71-72.  
 Indian tribes, 26.  
 Irish colony, 84.

Jacksonborough Assembly, 194.  
 Jails, 110.  
 Jasper, Sergeant, 132, 146.  
 Jenkins, Gen. Micah, 270.  
 Johnson, Gov. Robt., 58, 80.

Kershaw, Gen. J. B., 270.  
 Ku-Klux Klan, 320-323.  
 Kussoe Indians, 28.  
 Kyrle, Sir Richard, 39.

La Chere, 21, 23.  
 Landgraves, 25.  
 Laurens, Henry, 97, 138.  
 Laurens, John, 97, 197.  
 Lee, Gen. Charles, 129, 135.  
 Lee, Gen. Robt. E., 285.  
 Le Feboure, 50, 137.  
 Liberty Party, 107.  
 Lincoln, General, 145.  
 Lords Proprietors: Created, 24; discontent with, 45; Indian lands, 34; messenger to, 61; niggardliness of, 34; overthrown, 60-65; relations with, 60; rents, 40; repeal laws, 61; sell shares to King, 64.  
 Lotteries, 217.  
 Lowndes, Rawlins, 137, 143.  
 Lowndes, Wm., 223.  
 Ludwell, Colonel, 44.  
 Lunatics, 99.  
 Lutheran churches, 93.  
 Lynch, Thos., 105, 134.  
 Lyttelton, Governor, 86.

"Maham Tower", 180.  
 Manassas, 271.  
 Manufactures, 215, 344, 359.  
 Marion, Gen. Francis, 87, 176.  
 Mathews, John, 150, 197.  
 Middleton, Arthur, 68, 134.  
 Middleton, Henry, 115.  
 Militia system, 36.  
 Missouri compromise, 231.  
 Montagu, Lord, 106, 111.  
 Moore, Col. James, 54.  
 Morgan, Henry, 40.  
 Morton, Gov. Joseph, 37, 41.  
 Motte's, post at, 181.  
 Moultrie, Gen. Wm., 87, 118, 143.

Newspapers, 97, 99.  
 Nicholson, General, 67.

Ninety Six, 89, 183.  
 Non-importation, 110.  
 Nullification Ordinance, 234.

Oglethorpe, James Edward, 79.  
 Orange Quarter, 45.  
 O'Sullivan riot, 29.  
 Oyster Point, 28.

Palmetto regiment, 243-251.  
 Parker, Sir Peter, 129.  
 Partisan militia, 154.  
 Petersburg, 293.  
 Phosphate royalty, 344.  
 Pickens, Gen. Andrew, 150, 183.  
 Pinckney, Charles, 208.  
 Pinckney, Charles Cotesworth, 116.  
 Pinckney, Thomas, 205.  
 Pirates, 40, 47, 58.  
 Presbyterian churches, 93.  
 Prevost, General, 140, 144.  
 Primogeniture, 97, 214.  
 Prison ships, 167, 189.  
 Provincial Congress, 115, 126.  
 Pulaski, Count, 140.

Quary, Gov. Robt., 40.  
 Quenby Bridge, 186.  
 Quit rents, 60, 74.

Railway, first, 236.  
 Randolph, Edward, 46, 102.  
 Rawdon, Lord, 151, 183.  
 Rawdowntown, 181.  
 Reconstruction, 309-332.  
 Regulators, The, 101, 107.  
 Revolutionary War, 129-200.  
 Rhett, Col. Wm., 51, 59.  
 Ribault, Jean, 17, 23.  
 Rice Growing, 212, 356.  
 Rutledge, John, 105, 143, 210.  
 Rutledge, Edward, 168.

Santee Canal, 214.  
 Sayle, Gov. Win., 25, 75.  
 Schools, free, 218, 238.  
 School system, 340.  
 Secession Ordinance, 259.  
 Secessionville, 277.  
 Sherman's march, 301-305.  
 Slaves, Indian, 36, 51.  
 Slaves, negro: Abolitionists, 236; and State's Rights, 231; brought to province, 26, 75; Christianizing, 75, 79; code for, 79; duties on, 76; exchanged for Indians, 36; number of, 51; status of, 75, 239-240, 255-256; trade regulated, 67; uprising of, 76.  
 "Slave States", 252.  
 Smith, Gov. Thos., 44.  
 "Snow Camp", 125, 154.  
 Spanish-American War, 352.  
 St. Augustine, 30, 48, 168.  
 Stamp Act, 104, 106.

State flag, 123.  
State President, 126.  
State Senate, 136.  
States' Rights, 229-236.  
Stono Indians, 27.  
Sumter, Gen. Thos., 154, 173, 176.  
Swiss settlers, 53, 74.

Tarleton, Colonel, 151, 172.  
Temporary Laws, 27.  
Tennent, Rev. Wm., 120.  
Theatres, 95.  
Thomson, Col. Wm., 118, 130.  
Tories, 157, 175.  
Trade restrictions, 102.  
Tuscarora Indians, 53.  
Tynte, Gov. Edward, 52.

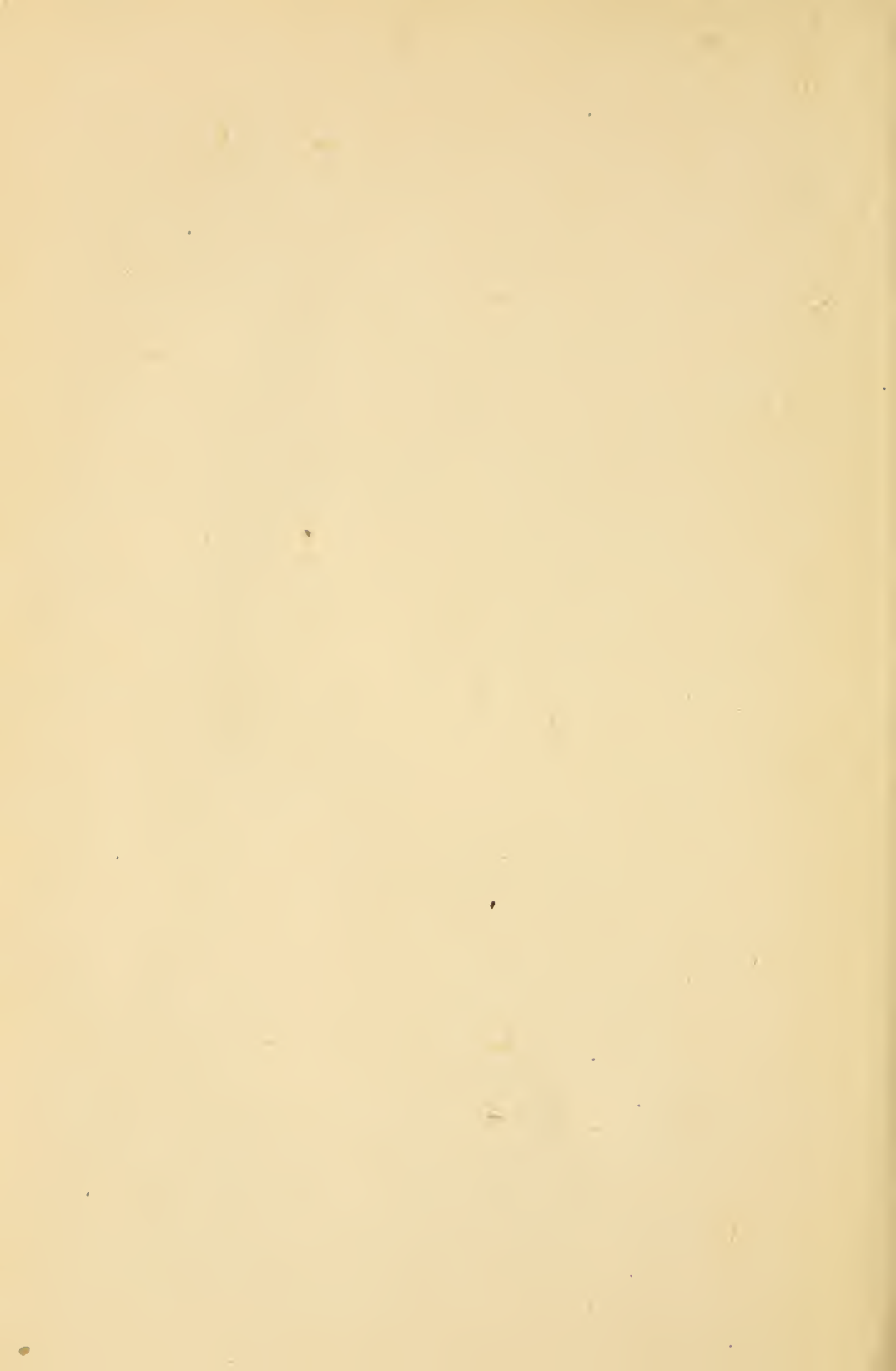
Up-Country, people of, 84.

Vaccination, 218.

War Between the Sections, 265-306.  
War of 1812, 220-228.  
War with: Appalachians, 49; Cherokees, 85-91, 133, 155; Germany, 366-376; Great Britain, 129-200, 220-228; Mexico, 243-251; Seminoles, 238; Spain, 352-354; Spaniards, 48; Tuscaroras, 53; United States, 365-306; Yemassee, 54-57.  
Washington, Col. Wm., 174, 181.  
Washington, Gen. George, 118, 211.  
West, Gov. Joseph, 25, 37, 39.  
West Indians, 25, 27.  
Williamson, Gen. Andrew, 150.  
World War, 265, 366-376.  
Worley, Richard, 59.

Yeamans, Sir John, 25, 28.  
Yellow fever, 50, 69.  
Yemassee Indians, 54-57, 68.  
Yonge, Francis, 97.  
Yorktown, surrender at, 194.













LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 418 384 8 ●